

A Study of the Prehistory of the Roanoke Rapids
Basin

Stanley A. South
(M.A. Thesis)

third copy



ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

In the preparation of this thesis, in the field and in the laboratory, I am indebted to a number of people for the assistance they have given. I am especially grateful to Joffre Coe of the Research Laboratory of Anthropology at the University of North Carolina for guidance, encouragement, supervision, for making the funds available that made this project possible, and for placing the resources of the Research Laboratory of Anthropology at my disposal.

For help in conducting the archaeological survey and excavation, surveying sites and drawing maps, analysis of chip material, and for many weeks of back breaking work, I am indebted to Lewis Binford who gave up a semester of summer school work in order to help with the project.

I am particularly indebted to my wife, Jewell, who walked many miles with me looking for sites, for days of shaking the sifter and excavating pits and burials, for preparing three meals a day, spending the summer in a tent, for cataloging the entire mass of material collected during the survey and excavation, and for constant encouragement and good humor.

I am extremely grateful for the help given the

project by Allen Hills who volunteered his services for ten hours a day for an entire month and shoveled and sifted many tons of sand, greatly adding to the success of the project.

Others whose contributions made the venture more of a success than it would otherwise have been, and to whom I am grateful are:

Mrs. Lewis Binford, for two weeks of digging and sifting, and for aid in preparing the meals.

Mr. and Mrs. Glenn L. Fulcher, for inviting us to many enjoyable meals, and allowing us the use of their shower, which was quite a luxury after our baths in the Roanoke River.

Mr. and Mrs. Frank Hills and Mr. and Mrs. Julian Vaughn, for bringing us suppers in the field on several occasions, giving us a pleasant change from corned beef hash and beans.

Mr. Williams, of Williams Funeral Home, for making an awning available, giving us the only shade we had in the basin.

Mr. C. F. Gore, for cooperation in use of road graders.

Mr. Glenn Fulcher, for use of bulldozers.

Mr. George Trexler, for operating the bulldozers.

Mr. McCord, of Stone-Webster Corporation, for medical aid, maps of the basin, and for cooperation in every way.

Mr. and Mrs. J. H. Barnhardt, for baby-sitting with our son for the summer while my wife and I were excavating.

During the preparation of this report, I have received help from various specialists whose reports are included in the appendixes. To these men who spent considerable time and expense in preparation of their reports, I want to express my sincerest appreciation.

Dr. F. S. Barkalow, head of the Zoology Department at North Carolina State College in Raleigh, with graduate students identified the large amount of animal bone recovered from pits. Dr. Roy Ingram, head of the Geology Department at the University of North Carolina, loaned a boat for use in the project, and identified certain rock specimens. Dr. Edison Adams, head of the Botany Department at the University of North Carolina, conducted an analysis of ethno-botanical material found during excavation. Dr. Marshall T. Newmann, associate curator of physical anthropology at the Smithsonian Institution in Washington, D. C., analyzed the human skeletal material from the two major sites excavated. Dr. James B. Griffin is responsible for the radiocarbon dates obtained from charcoal associated with various culture complexes. To these men for their contribution toward the completeness of this report, I am extremely grateful.

I want to thank Mrs. James M. Storie for taking

time out from her family duties to do the formidable job of typing the manuscript, and Ross Scroggs for cooperation in the making of duplicate copies of the report.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. INTRODUCTION	1
Theoretical Assumptions	5
Documentary Notes on the Basin	9
II. THE AREAL SURVEY	13
Description of the Basin	13
Locating the Sites in the Surface Survey	19
Description of the Sites in Halifax County	21
Description of the Sites in Northampton County	29
III. THE ARTIFACT TYPES	48
The Method of Establishing the Ceramic Types	48
The Ceramic Type Description	62
The Method of Establishing the Projectile	
Point and Blade Types	141
Description of the Projectile Point and	
Blade Types	144
Description of Objects of Stone Recovered	
During the Survey and Excavation	173
Description of Objects of Clay	204
Description of Objects of Bone	208
Description of Ethno-Botanical Objects	217
IV. THE INTERPRETIVE ANALYSIS OF THE AREAL SURVEY	221
Assumptions Underlying the Use of the Seriation	
Technique in the Ceramic Analysis	221

CHAPTER

PAGE

The Method of the Ceramic Seriation Analysis	
of the Sites	226
A Summary of the Pottery Type Relationships	
From the Sites in the Surface Survey	229
The Relationship Between the Artifacts and	
Ceramic Types From the Areal Survey	233
The Interpretive Summary of the Areal Survey . .	236
V. EXCAVATION OF THE GASTON SITE	244
Description of the Gaston Site	244
The Method of Excavating the Ceramic Level	
Control Squares at the Gaston Site	249
Method Used in Excavating With Bulldozers	
and Road Graders at the Gaston Site	252
The Method of Excavating the Features Exposed by	
Road Graders and Bulldozers at the Gaston Site	259
Method of Excavating the Stockade Wall	
Postmold Pattern at the Gaston Site	280
The Method of Excavating the Burials at	
the Gaston Site	284
Description of the Burials at the Gaston Site . .	285
Summary of the Burials and Associated Material	
at the Gaston Site	297
The Method of Excavating the Pre-ceramic Levels	
at the Gaston Site	299

CHAPTER	PAGE
VI. THE INTERPRETIVE ANALYSIS OF THE GASTON SITE . . .	332
The Method of the Ceramic Seriation Analysis of the Features at the Gaston Site	332
Pottery Type Relationships from the Seriated Sequence of the Features at the Gaston Site. . .	335
Stratigraphic Relationship of the Pottery Types at the Gaston Site	336
The Relationship Between the Artifacts and Ceramic Types from the Features at the Gaston Site	341
Analysis of Bone Material from Features at the Gaston Site	351
Interpretive Summary of Projectile Point Relationships in the Ceramic Levels at the Gaston Site	354
The Interpretive Summary of the Artifact Relationships in the Pre-Ceramic Levels at the Gaston Site	359
A Statement Regarding the Radioactive Carbon (C^{14}) Method of Dating Charcoal	379
Radiocarbon Dates for Ceramic Associated Charcoal from Features at the Gaston Site	380
Radiocarbon Dates for the Charcoal from Hearths at the Pre-ceramic Levels at the Gaston Site . . .	386

CHAPTER	PAGE
An Interpretive Summary of the Archaeological Complexes at the Gaston Site	388
VII. THE EXCAVATION OF THE THELMA SITE	396
Description of the Thelma Site	396
The Method of Excavating the Thelma Site	397
Excavation of Features at the Thelma Site	399
Method of Excavating the Flexed Burial and Ossuary in Square 65 at the Thelma Site	403
The Artifact Relationships at the Thelma Site.	409
Stratigraphic Pottery Type Relationships at the Thelma Site	412
An Interpretive Summary of the Archaeological Complexes at the Thelma Site	412
VIII. AN INTERPRETATION OF THE CULTURAL HISTORY OF THE ROANOKE RAPIDS BASIN	419
A Comparative Summary of the Archaeological Complexes in the Roanoke Rapids Basin	419
An Inferential Summary of the Prehistoric Cultures in the Roanoke Rapids Basin	435
APPENDIX A. Report of the Skeletal Material	447
APPENDIX B. Report of the Animal Bone	450
BIBLIOGRAPHY	458

LIST OF TABLES

TABLE	PAGE
I. Percentage Totals for the Sites in the Ceramic Seriation	231
II. Artifacts from Sites Having High Percentage of Gaston Pottery	239
III. Artifacts from Sites Having High Percentage of Clement Pottery	240
IV. Artifacts from Sites Having High Percentage of Vincent Pottery	241
V. Artifacts from Sites with Vincent-Clement Pottery Not Included in the Ceramic Seriation Chart	242
VI. Projectile Points from Surface Survey of Sites in the Basin According to the Type of Stone. .	243
VII. Objects from the Burial Fill Dirt at the Gaston Site	298
VIII. Percentage Totals for the Features in the Ceramic Seriation	334
IX. Sherd Count by Type for Each Level of the Ceramic Control Squares at the Gaston Site . .	340
X. Artifacts from Features at the Gaston Site Having a High Percentage of Gaston Type Pottery	343

TABLE

PAGE

XI.	Artifacts from Features at the Gaston Site Having a High Percentage of Clement Series Pottery	344
XII.	Artifacts from Features at the Gaston Site Having a High Percentage of Vincent Series Pottery	345
XIII.	Artifacts from Features not Included in the Ceramic Seriation Chart and Containing Clement-Vincent Type Pottery	347
XIV.	Projectile Points from Features at the Gaston Site According to the Type of Stone	348
XV.	Areal Distribution on the Gaston Site of the Seriated Features According to the Ceramic Type Predominate in the Feature	350
XVI.	Animal Bone from the Seriated Features at the Gaston Site According to the Predominate Ceramic Type in the Feature	353
XVII.	Projectile Points from Ceramic Levels at the Gaston Site	356
XVIII.	Artifacts from Ceramic Levels at the Gaston Site	360
XIX.	Artifacts from Squares With Levels 3 and 4 Only, after Scraper, and Slump off the Bank at Square 60R5 at the Gaston Site	361

TABLE	PAGE
XX. Projectile Points from Pre-ceramic Levels at the Gaston Site	365
XXI. Artifacts from Pre-ceramic Levels at the Gaston Site	370
XXII. Table of Radiocarbon Dates from the Gaston Site.	385
XXIII. Projectile Points from Ceramic Levels at the Thelma Site (Hx v8)	410
XXIV. Artifacts from Ceramic Levels at the Thelma Site (Hx v8)	411
XXV. Sherd Count by Type for Each Level of the Ceramic Control Squares at the Thelma Site . .	414

LIST OF FIGURES

FIGURE	PAGE
1. Rim Profiles for Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds . . .	79
2. Rim Profiles of Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds . . .	80
3. Rim Profiles of Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds . . .	81
4. Rim Profiles of Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds . . .	82
5. Rim Profiles of Clement Cord-marked Sherds	87
6. Rim Profiles of Clement Fabric Impressed Sherds. .	90
7. Rim Profiles of Vincent Cord and Fabric Impressed Sherds	98
8. The Suggested Evolutionary Development of the Jar Forms from Vincent to Gaston Types	107
9. Rim Profiles of Type I Cord-marked Sherds	110
10. Rim Profiles of Type I Fabric Impressed Rims . . .	115
11. Suggested Vessel Forms of Type I Ceramics	118
12. Rim Profiles and Suggested Vessel Form for Type II Ceramics	122
13. Rim Profiles and Suggested Vessel Form for Net I Ceramics	124
14. Rim Profiles and Suggested Vessel Form for Net II Ceramics	130
15. Rim Profiles and Suggested Vessel Form for Plain Type Ceramics, and Rim Profiles for Corncob and Chickahominy Ceramics	133

FIGURE	PAGE
16. Seriated Pottery Type Sequence of the Sites in the Roanoke Rapids Basin	230
17. Control Square Profiles at the Gaston Site	253
18. Control Squares at the Gaston Site (Hx v7)	255
19. Area A at the Gaston Site (Hx v7)	266
20. Area B at the Gaston Site (Hx v7)	267
21. Areas C, D, and E at the Gaston Site (Hx v7)	268
22. Area F at the Gaston Site (Hx v7)	269
23. Area G at the Gaston Site (Hx v7)	270
24. Area H at the Gaston Site (Hx v7)	271
25. Burials 1, 2, and 3 at the Gaston Site (Hx v7)	289
26. Burials 4, 5, and 6 at the Gaston Site (Hx v7)	291
27. Burials 7 and 8 at the Gaston Site (Hx v7)	293
28. Burials 9, 10, 11, 12, and 13 at the Gaston Site (Hx v7)	295
29. Profile of Bank at Zero Line, Square 60R5 Hx v7.	303
30. Stratigraphic Relationship of Projectile Points, Square 55L25 Hx v7	306
31. Stratigraphic Relationship of Projectile Points, Square -28L76 Hx v7	309
32. Stratigraphic Relationship of Projectile Points, Square -60L60 Hx v7	311
33. Stratigraphic Relationship of Projectile Points, Square -70L60 Hx v7	317

FIGURE	PAGE
34. Stratigraphic Relationship of Projectile Points, Square -105R50 Hx v7	321
35. Stratigraphic Relationship of Projectile Points, Square 10L20 Hx v7	323
36. Stratigraphic Relationship of Projectile Points, Square 60L10 Hx v7	328
37. Seriated Pottery Type Sequence of the Features at the Gaston Site	333
38. Pottery Type Percentages from Squares at the Gaston Site	338
39. Percentage Occurrence of Projectile Point and Blade Types from Squares at Hx v7	366
40. Comparison of Blade and Projectile Point Type and Material with Chip Concentration in Four 10 foot Squares	372
41. Vertical Scale for Profiles of Excavated Squares at the Thelma Site (Hx v8)	398
42. Cross Sections of Square 65 at the Thelma Site (Hx v8)	406
43. Pottery Type Percentages from Squares at the Thelma Site (Hx v8)	413

LIST OF PLATES

PLATE	PAGE
1. Terrace at Np v2	31
2. Typical Site Area, Profile of Stratified Layers, and Shell Midden	45
3. Cross-section Views of Sherds of Various Series Showing Temper	62
4. Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds	72
5. Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds	74
6. Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds	76
7. Miniature Bowl Fragments	78
8. Clement Cord-marked Sherds	86
9. Clement Fabric Impressed Sherds	91
10. Large Pot Fragment of Clement Fabric Impressed . .	93
11. Sherds of the Type Vincent Cord-marked	97
12. Vincent Fabric Impressed Sherds	102
13. Large Sherd of Vincent Fabric Impressed Type . . .	104
14. Miniature Vessel of Vincent Fabric Impressed . . .	106
15. Type I Cord-marked Sherds	112
16. Type I Fabric Impressed Sherds	117
17. Type II Cord-marked and Type Net I Sherds	126
18. Net Impressed Rim Sherds of the Net II Type . . .	131
19. Corncob Impressed, Check Stamped, and Chickahominy Fabric Impressed Sherds	138

PLATE	PAGE
20. Triangle Projectile Point Types	150
21. Projectile Point Types	155
22. Savannah River Projectile Points	159
23. Halifax and Guilford Projectile Points	166
24. Oval Blade Types	170
25. Stone Projectile Points, Drills, and Gorgets . . .	172
26. Pecked, Roughly-grooved Axes	175
27. Guilford Chipped, Notched Axes	177
28. Miscellaneous Stone Artifacts	183
29. Polished Stone Celts	187
30. Atlatl Weights and Fragments, and Steatite Gorget.	189
31. Polished Stone Pipes	193
32. Worked Rocks of the Abraded Stone Type	196
33. Pecked Stone and Center Pecked Stone	198
34. Worked Stone of the Pecked Stone and Pitted Stone Types	201
35. Steatite Sherds	203
36. Clay Pipes	207
37. Bone Artifacts	211
38. Bone Awls, Fishhooks and Worked Antler	213
39. Bone Awls, Projectile Points and Beavers	216
40. Shell, Daub, Ochre, and Ethno-botanical Objects. .	220
41. Gaston Site Looking West, and Rapids and Canal Lock	247

PLATE	PAGE
42. Using Bulldozers and Road Graders at the Gaston Site	258
43. Bulldozed Area and Trowelled Square	260
44. Pottery, Turtle Shell, and Burial	264
45. The Stockade Wall Postmold Pattern	283
46. Burial Seven	287
47. Profile of the Stratigraphy at the Gaston Site . .	308
48. Pre-ceramic Squares Before Excavation	316
49. Hearth at the Halifax Level in Square -70L60 . . .	319
50. Hearths at the Halifax Level in Square 10L20 . . .	326
51. Hearths in Squares -60L60 and 60L10	331
52. Scenes at the Thelma Site	402
53. Ossuary at the Thelma Site	405
54. Skulls from the Gaston and Thelma Sites	407

LIST OF MAPS

MAP	PAGE
1. The Eastern North Carolina-Virginia Area Showing the Relationship of the Roanoke Rapids Basin and the Position of the Indian Towns and Settlers in 1675	14
2. The Roanoke Rapids Basin Showing the Location of Indian Sites Found During the Survey	22
3. Sketch Map of Site Hx v10	26
4. Sketch Map of Site Np v2	33
5. Sketch Map of Site Np v24	39
6. Sketch Map of Site Np v46	44
7. The Gaston Site Showing the Bulldozed and Excavated Areas	248
8. The Thelma Site Showing the Excavated Squares . .	400

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

The archaeological survey of the Roanoke Rapids Basin was undertaken primarily as a salvage program designed to secure as much information as possible of the prehistory of the area before it was lost by flooding. The Virginia Electric and Power Company dam was being built at Roanoke Rapids, and would form a lake nine miles long and from one to two miles wide.

The project was financed jointly by the Virginia Electric and Power Company and the Research Laboratory of Anthropology at the University of North Carolina. Supervision of the project was by the Research Laboratory of Anthropology, Joffre L. Coe, Director.

Since this was a salvage project, the boundary of the survey was not a matter of choice, but was limited by the area to be flooded. However, no archaeological work had been done in this area, and this was looked upon as an excellent opportunity to round out the incomplete archaeological picture.

Joffre Coe had conducted excavations at Clarksville, Virginia, further up the Roanoke in the Piedmont, and had outlined the net-impressed, incised, and notched-rim ceramics found there. Through his excavations at Clarksville and on

the Dan River, he had presented a picture of the development of the Siouan cultural tradition in the Piedmont.¹ Clifford Evans had conducted a ceramic study of Virginia, and had described the cord and fabric impressed, simple stamped and shell tempered ceramics of the Southeastern and coastal Virginia areas.²

With the piedmont Siouan tradition to the west, and the coastal Algonquian tradition to the east during historic times, the Roanoke Rapids survey was seen as an excellent opportunity to see how these two traditions were manifested at this point midway between the two culture areas. The answering of this question was one of the purposes of the present survey. This question of Algonquian-Siouan relationships is based on the historic presence of these groups in their respective areas. Did these known archaeological complexes represent a continuous developmental occupation within the basin, or would it be found that different cultural groups occupied the area at different times? This was another question upon which it was hoped the survey would shed some light.

¹Joffre L. Coe, "The Cultural Sequence of the Carolina Piedmont," Archaeology of Eastern United States (Chicago, 1952), pp. 301-11.

²Clifford Evans, "A Ceramic Study of Virginia Archaeology," Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 160 (Washington: Government Printing Office, 1955).

Also in mind was the question of very early pre-ceramic occupations in the area. Joffre Coe had found pre-ceramic stratified cultural material dating back eight thousand years in piedmont North Carolina.³ Would the present survey indicate that there had been such early occupations within this area also? Perhaps a stratified site could be found in the Roanoke Rapids basin. Coe firmly believed that stratified archaeological sites of considerable depth exist in the southeast as well as in the west if the archaeologist would pick likely sites and continue digging below the later midden accumulation. He had proved this point at three sites in the Piedmont, and gave advice as to what to look for in locating such sites. Would Coe's success with stratified sites be repeated in this survey? This was a possibility when the survey began.

The archaeologist is an anthropologist who prefers to pursue his study of culture by examining the non-perishable remains of prehistoric cultures, and reconstructing from these clues a picture of the way of life of the people who left them. Therefore, one of the primary objectives of the present study was to recover as much as possible of the cultural remains of the people who once lived in the basin, and then to reconstruct from this a picture of the cultures

³Joffre Coe, personal communication.

represented. In order to do this a surface survey of the sites within the basin was conducted. Areas of concentration of cultural materials were called sites. Seventy-three of such sites were discovered in the survey conducted on weekends during April, 1955.

In order to be able to correlate this material with a control, six sites were excavated. Four are reported in the surface survey section of this report. These four had only four five-foot squares dug on each. Two other sites are reported in individual sections of this survey. One of these is the Thelma site (Hx v8) at which eight five-foot squares were dug during a series of weekends in May. On June 1, 1955, excavation of the Gaston site (Hx v7) was begun, and continued without interruption for thirty days, at which time the water backing up behind the new dam forced the abandonment of the basin.

This thesis is a descriptive report of the methodology and findings of the survey and the excavation, along with a description of the cultures represented in the basin through time, with their relationship to adjoining areas. It presents answers, to some degree, to the questions in mind when the survey was begun. These questions were:

- (1) What culture complexes had once existed in the area?
- (2) What was their relative and absolute chronology?
- (3) How do they fit into the overall picture of aboriginal

cultural development in the area?

I. THEORETICAL ASSUMPTIONS

Before the archaeologist launches into a presentation of his methodology and data, he should present, to some degree at least, the theoretical assumptions upon which the study was undertaken and interpreted. Too often nothing is said in regard to these assumptions, and the reader is left to wonder if the writer fully realized the implications of his procedure. For this reason the various sections on methodology in this study deal in some respect with the assumptions underlying the use of that particular technique or method. However, there are some assumptions which are basic to the archaeological process itself, that are seldom stated. A short statement of these assumptions is presented here.

Leslie White says that anthropology, and therefore archaeology, interprets its data in terms of three concepts: the historical, the evolutionary, and the formal-functional. He says that the historical process is concerned with a chronological sequence of events unique in time and space. The formal-functional process is characterized by chronological sequences and by a concern with formal-functional processes. The evolutionist process is concerned with

progression of forms through time.⁴

The archaeologist does not often utilize the historical approach because his data are not suited to a study of a particular series of unique events in time and space. Rather, he must deal in groups of similar things which he calls "types".⁵ These types are usually based on form. The archaeologist may take one type of bone splinter and from comparison with similar splinters used for boring holes by some living group today, conclude that such splinters were used as awls. When he does this he is using the formal-functional process to interpret his data. He may also establish a series of bone awl forms in a chronological sequence according to form, and still be using the formal-functional process. If, however, he concerns himself with the progression of these forms through time, he is using the process that is evolution.

Archaeologists base their interpretations on the relationship of various types based on form. They discuss these forms in terms of their chronological and areal significance. They note the changes in forms that take

⁴Leslie A. White, "Diffusion vs. Evolution: An Anti-Evolutionist Fallacy," American Anthropologist, Vol. 47, (1945), p. 230.

⁵A discussion of the concept of types is found in Alex Krieger, "The Typological Concept," American Antiquity, Vol. IX (1944), pp. 271-88.

place through time, and attribute these to changing ideas within the culture as a result of independent innovation within, or ideas from outside, the culture. They conduct ceramic seriation studies designed to show the change of forms through time. In doing these things, the archaeologist is using evolutionary theory because he is dealing with the progression of forms through time.

We are born into a cultural milieu which is not of our own creation, therefore, we are molded by our culture as we mature. The ideas prevalent in our culture in regard to the proper method of making pottery will be the influential factor in determining how we make a pot. The archaeologist is interested in how the people in various cultures made pottery so that he can interpret this information in terms of ideas prevalent at various periods in culture history. He is not particularly interested in the unique event that a Catawba Indian named Mary Blue made a pot three inches high in 1902. This would be of interest to the historian, or perhaps the psychologist, who is interested in unique events and individuals. The anthropologist would be interested in how the Catawba Indians made pottery in the early part of the twentieth century. This is the basis of why Leslie White says that culture can be studied as a thing apart from the individual, as if the

individual did not exist.⁶ Underlying the approach of the archaeologist to the study of culture, therefore, is the assumption stated by James A. Ford:

The best thinkers in the field have long been aware that culture derives from preceding culture and, is not exuded by the human animal that carries it.⁷

Because of this, and the influence of diffusion, there is a changing stream of ideas that are reflected in changing artifact forms through time which the archaeologist uses to interpret his picture of culture change.

The archaeologist may use the historical approach, but his basic assumptions are closer related to the formal-functional and evolutionary approaches to the study of cultural data.

Some archaeologists have criticized evolutionary theory while at the same time utilizing method and interpretation that is basically evolutionary in nature. A paper by the present writer deals with evolutionary theory in archaeology, and no further discussion of the point will

⁶Leslie A. White, "The Individual and the Culture Process," Centennial, American Association for the Advancement of Science (1948), p. 80.

⁷James A. Ford, "Measurements of Some Prehistoric Design Developments in the Southeastern States," Anthropological Papers, American Museum of Natural History, Vol. XLIV (1952), P. 319.

be made here.⁸ In this study, the fact that evolutionary theory underlies many of the assumptions is recognized. It is thought that if those archaeologists who are anti-evolutionist in their theoretical views will examine the assumptions upon which their archaeological practices are based, they will find that they owe no little debt to evolutionary theory.

II. DOCUMENTARY NOTES ON THE BASIN

A detailed history of the settlement of Halifax and Northampton counties is outside the scope of this study, however, a few comments should be made in regard to some of the history of the basin.

During the nineteenth century the Roanoke River was an important means of transportation for those farmers along the river. The rapids constituted a major barrier for the barges of cotton and other goods that were being taken down the river. In order to by-pass the rapids, a series of canals were built along the southern bank of the Roanoke at the rapids. Remains of these structures were seen during the survey of the basin. At the Gaston site a lock was standing, and a view of this lock and the rapids from the bank at the Gaston site is seen in Plate 41b.

⁸Stanley South, "Evolutionary Theory in Archaeology," Southern Indian Studies, Vol. VII (1957), pp. 10-32.

Throughout the nineteenth century the basin was the scene of much more activity than has been the case in recent years. Below the Thelma site are the remains of a railway trestle across the river. This trestle is said to have been for the Gaston railroad. On the opposite shore of the river, on the downstream side of the trestle, a concentration of bricks and historic material was found. Local residents say this was the site of the Gaston Hotel that once did a thriving business in the basin, and near here is said to be the site of the old town of Gaston.

During the surface survey some European trade pipe fragments were found, indicating possible trade with Indians in the basin during historic times. Measurement of the holes in the stems of these pipe fragments indicate that they were made during the period between 1710 and 1750 A. D.⁹ Also found were pipe fragments of the type used during the nineteenth century. These, and the trade pipe fragments, are shown in Plate 36a and 36b.

The earliest reference to the rapids on the Roanoke River is made in a report of a trip made by Edward Bland, Abraham Wood, Elias Pennant, and Sackford Brewster in August, 1650. They say that the Tuscarora king had invited

⁹J. C. Harrington, "Dating Stem Fragments of Seventeenth and Eighteenth Century Clay Tobacco Pipes," Quarterly Bulletin, Archaeological Society of Virginia, Vol. IX, No. 1 (September, 1954), unpagged.

them to trade, so they were headed for the Tuscarora nation. Paschal thinks they left Fort Henry and traveled along the Occaneechee path and arrived at the Roanoke at Clarksville, Virginia.¹⁰ It would seem, however, that if they were headed for the Tuscarora villages they would have traveled further toward the east than Clarksville. This is further borne out by a comparison of the description of the area around the Roanoke made by these early observers.

...we about eight set forward to goe view the place where they kill sturgeon, which was some six miles from the place where we quartered at night...this river was by us named Blandina river [Roanoke] from where we quartered to the place where they kill sturgeon is six miles up the river running northerly, and all exceeding rich land....at this place where they kill sturgeon also are the falls, and at the foot of these falls also lies two islands in a great bay, the uppermost whereof Mr. Bland named Charles Island and the lowermost captaine Wood named Berkely Island: on the further side of these islands the bay runs navigable by the two islands sides, Charles Island is three miles broad, and foure miles long, and Berkely Island almost as big, both in a manner impregnable: by nature being fortified with high clefts of rocky stone, and hardly passeable,...¹¹

This description fits the topography of the land and river situation at and below the rapids where the

¹⁰Herbert Paschal, "The Tuscarora Indians in North Carolina," (Master's thesis, Sociology Library, University of North Carolina), p. 23.

¹¹Clarence W. Alvord and Lee Bidgood, "The Discovery of New Britaine," The First Exploration of the Trans-Allegheny Region by the Virginians, (Cleveland: 1912).

present survey was conducted. The islands at Clarksville do not fit the description of these two described in this early account, being composed of sand,¹² while the two islands below Roanoke Rapids are said to be rocky on the northern edge, fitting the description exactly.¹³

If the Roanoke Rapids was the place "where they kill sturgeon," then the area was evidently occupied by the Tuscarora, to some extent at least, in 1650, and an archaeological survey of the area would possibly recover artifacts of Tuscarora manufacture. However, identifying them as such would be a more difficult task.

¹²Joffre Coe, personal interview.

¹³Lewis Binford, personal interview.

CHAPTER II

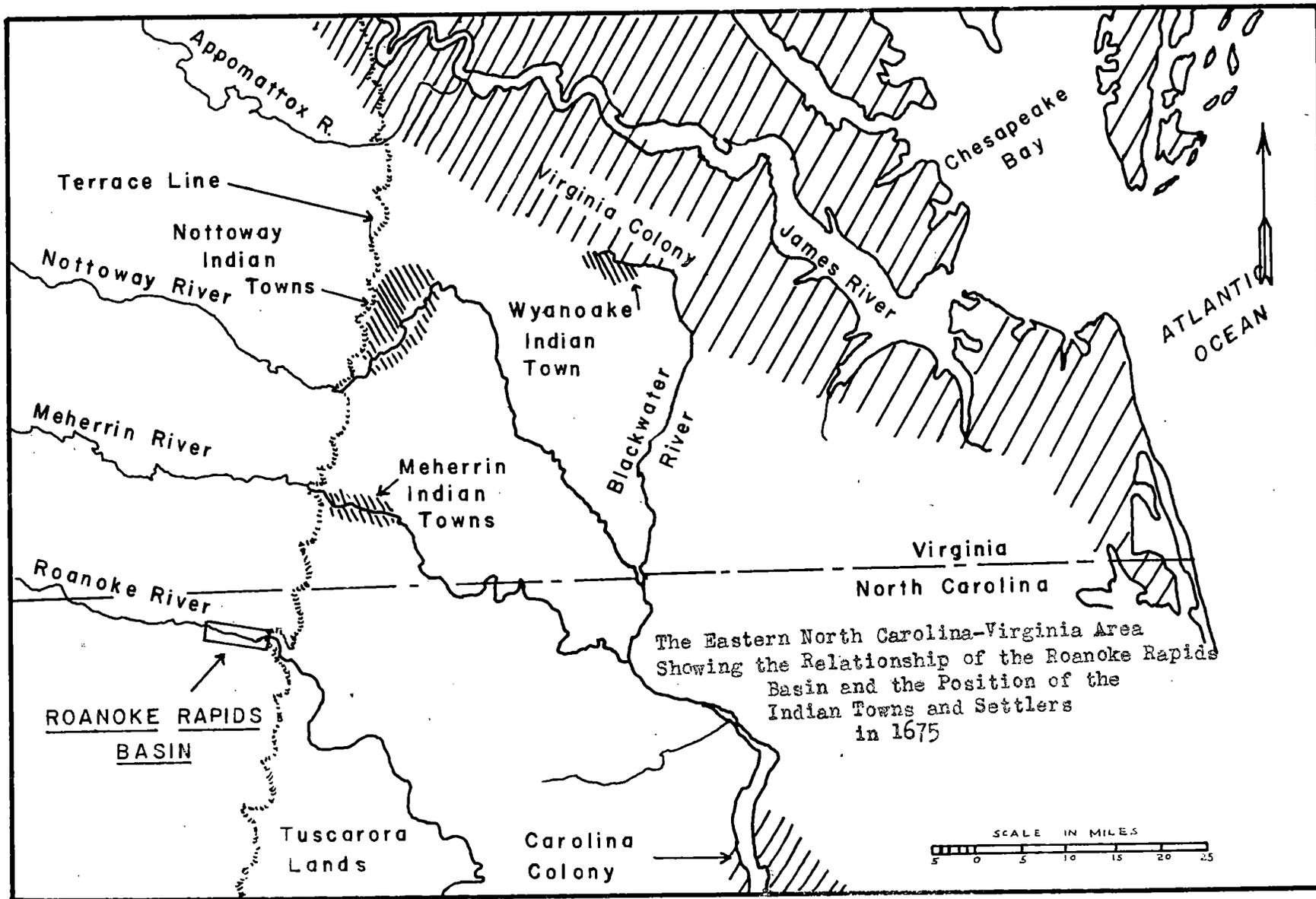
THE AREAL SURVEY

I. DESCRIPTION OF THE BASIN

The Roanoke Rapids Dam was built on the Roanoke River at Roanoke Rapids, North Carolina, in the northeastern section of the state near the Virginia line (Map 1 and Map 2). The area covered in this survey was a distance of nine miles upstream from the dam, and a width of from one to two miles. This was the area to be flooded, so the site survey and excavation was conducted entirely within this area.

The Roanoke River at this point flows from west to east, with Northampton County to the north and Halifax County to the south. Just below the dam the river turns toward the southeast and flows into Albemarle Sound at Plymouth, North Carolina.

Near the dam the sides of the basin are steep and come directly down to the river's edge with no bottom land capable of containing archaeological sites. The river is rapid at this end of the basin for a distance of two miles from the dam, and many boulders and small islands are seen at this point. At a distance of one and one-half miles from the dam, a narrow tapering end of a large island extends into the rapids. On this tapering end of the island were



Map I

found many signs of Indian occupation. This is Vincent's Island, which is four miles long, and at the widest part is almost a mile wide. To the south of Vincent's Island the branch of the Roanoke River is called Little River. This branch is not as wide as the main body of the river. A large number of Indian occupation sites were located on this island.

To the northwest of Vincent's Island is Tiller's Island formed by a stream that leaves the Roanoke at a group of rapids at the western tip of the island, and rejoins it two miles further downstream. This stream appeared to be a comparatively recent addition to the geographic picture of the basin. The natural river levee on the south side of this island was low, and only four sites were found on it, these being at the southwestern edge where the elevation is highest above the river.

A mile and one-half further upstream from Tiller's Island is the eastern tip of Clement's Island. This island is one and one-half miles long, and one-fourth of a mile wide. As was true of Vincent's Island, this island has a high terrace extending along the south side at a distance of two hundred feet from the present river. The height of this terrace is from ten to twenty feet high above the level of the river. Along these terraces were located the large percentage of the sites on these two islands. The

basin survey did not extend beyond a quarter mile above the western tip of Clement's Island.

The southern side of the basin as a rule, dropped from the high rim of the basin down to a bottom land of not more than a hundred yards wide, at the most, while on the northern shore the bottom land was sometimes a mile wide.

The basin was characterized by having a series of high rock ridges extending from the rim of the basin out to the water's edge. These ridges of rock, or points of land that extend like fingers out into the basin, were left by the river in its meandering and cutting of the basin. Beyond these points of land, in the river, were rapids which are a result of the remnants of the points of land being cut into by the river. These points of rock are an important feature in the archaeological study of the basin. In times of flood they act as barriers or jetties to the rushing water, and as the flooding waters swirl around these barriers the sediment they are carrying is deposited on the downstream side, and if an Indian occupation site was located on the area below these points, it would be buried by the sand.

As a result of this action of the ridges on the flooding river, the bottom land on the downstream side of these ridges is almost always higher than that on the upstream side. This factor helped to influence the selection

of these sites for occupation by the Indians. Another factor which no doubt influenced the choice of these areas as occupation sites, is that where these ridges of rock extend to the water's edge, there are also the rapids. If water was used as the means of travel, these rapids would have to be by-passed by land, and these high areas would offer convenient camp sites. These combined factors must have influenced travel along the river for thousands of years, because it is at these points below the ridges that have the widest variety of Indian cultural material. Sites Hx v7, Hx v8, Hx v10, and Np v20 are such sites, containing cultural material covering at least a period of six thousand years.

Another feature characteristic of the basin was the levee and terrace situation. Along the banks of the present river is a natural levee formed by the flooding and depositing by the river of soil at the edge of the bank. This situation was characteristic of the river throughout the basin. No cultural material was found along this levee. Further from the river than this levee, was an older levee or terrace that is much higher than the banks of the present river. This terrace varies from ten to twenty feet high, and it was along this terrace that the most cultural material was found. In the map of the basin (Map 2) the series of sites on Clement's Island were on this levee, as well as

those on Vincent's Island along the southern and northern edge of the island. The center of Vincent's Island and the northern edge of Clement's and Tiller's Islands were low and swampy and contained no cultural material.

When the survey of the basin was begun, the trees and undergrowth had been removed and burned. The bulldozers used to clear the basin had disturbed the ground in many places, and resulted in disturbance of Indian sites. The major portion of the basin had been in trees and bushes. The bottom land on the northern edge of the basin had been cultivated, as had a small section of the high ridge on the southern edge of Vincent's Island. Several of the high areas below rock ridges had been cultivated, as was the case at the Gaston site (Hx v7). The use of the basin for agricultural purposes was kept to a minimum, and some areas previously cultivated had been used recently for grazing cattle. The bottom land to the north of the river opposite the north side of Clement's Island had been cultivated continuously since the Civil War according to local informants. They say the high terrace along which the series of sites was located at this section of the basin, was made higher by the use of slaves to prevent flooding of the bottom land. The levee had been cut through at this point recently, and the residents say they found a quantity of bones and artifacts around the levee area.

In prehistoric times the area must have abounded in a variety of wild life as evidenced by the variety of animals represented in excavated pits, as well as the different types still present in the area. Since the basin had been cleared of all brush, the animals had probably moved to the higher ground for cover. The area must have been a feeding ground for deer before the cover was removed, as evidenced by frequent tracks and an occasional jumping of a deer on the islands during the survey. Although all cover was gone they seemed to continue to swim or wade to the islands. The presence of raccoons was noticed from raids on the camp site. Wild turkeys were seen, and occasionally a group of wild ducks, cranes and a few blue heron.

Muskrats, rabbits, quail and opossum were seen or their spoor observed. No live snakes were seen during the entire stay in the basin, although two dead cotton mouth moccasins were found.

A variety of fish are caught by the fishermen along the river, and below the dam the rockfish are caught and sold commercially. In fact, special oxygenation of the water leaving the dam was necessary to insure the successful love life of the rockfish below the dam.

II. LOCATING THE SITES IN THE SURFACE SURVEY

There were three persons making the survey. The

shoreline was walked on both sides of the basin and the islands were well covered. One person walked along the small natural levee near the present river, while another walked on the second, or older and higher, levee further inland. The third person walked on the bottom land behind this levee. When a potsherd was found, each was signaled and began to approach the area where the sherd was found. In this manner the outer edges of the concentration of sherds and artifacts was determined. Collection was made for several minutes, whereupon one person drew a sketch map of the area and located it on a map of the basin, then took a photograph of the site (Plate 2a) while the others continued to look for specimens. These sherd concentrations were considered a site although at times such concentrations were found within a few hundred feet of each other. Material collected was placed in a paper bag and marked with the site number. The system of numbering the sites is the one used by the Research Laboratory of Anthropology at the University of North Carolina. Two letters are used to designate the county in which the site is located. A small "v" is used to refer to the village or site, and its consecutive number follows. Thus, Hx v4 designates Halifax County and village or site 4. The two counties in this survey are Halifax (Hx) on the south side of the river, and Northampton (Np) on the north, including all islands. At the beginning of the

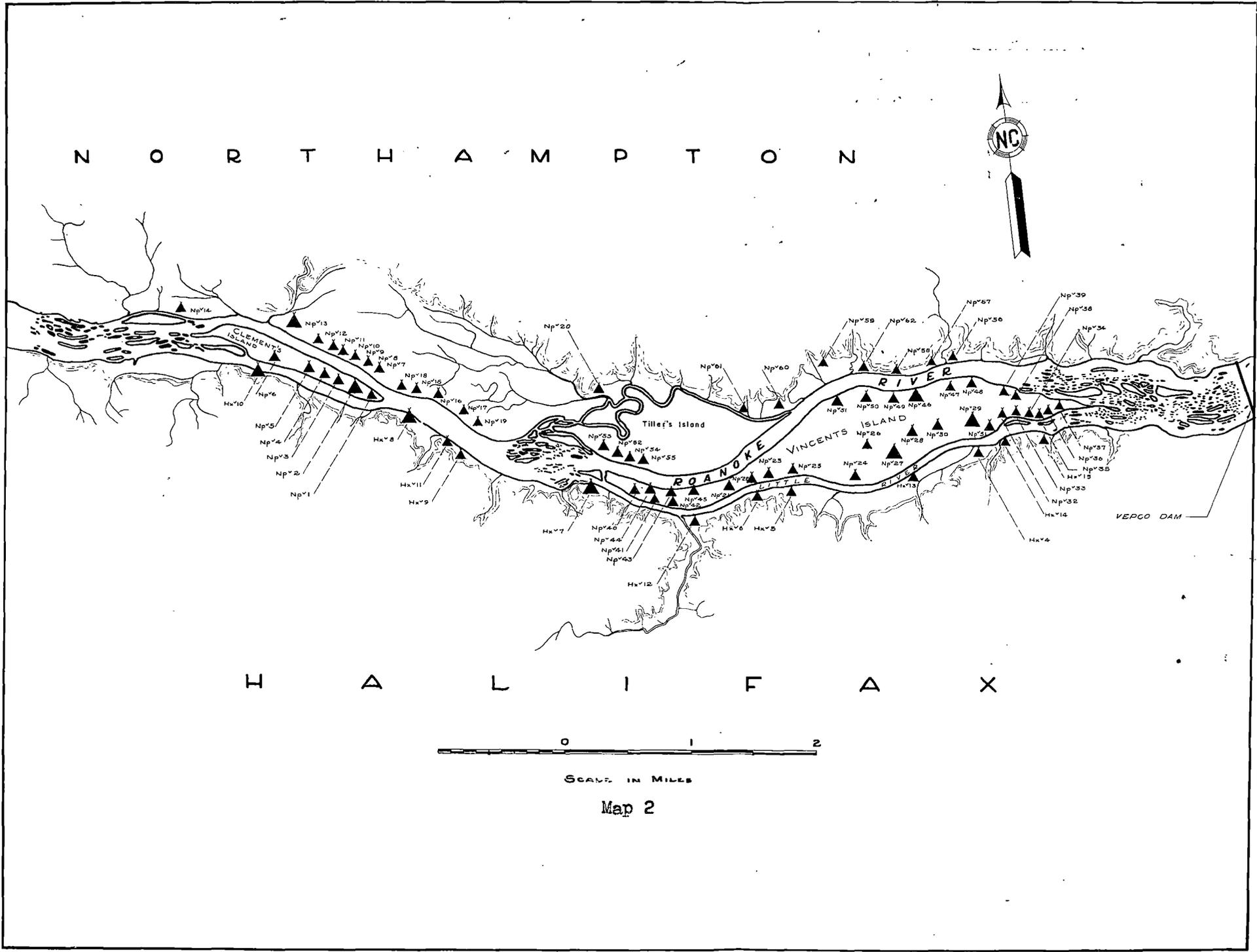
survey three sites were already known from Halifax County, so the basin sites in Halifax County begin with Hx v4. No sites were recorded for Northampton County previous to this survey, so the basin sites in that county begin with Np v1.

It was soon discovered that no sites were to be found on the small levee near the river, and none in the low bottom land behind the second levee. The persons walking in these positions were then moved in nearer the second levee, one taking a position along the base of the levee on the river side, and the other near it in the bottom land. The third continued on top of this terrace. At frequent intervals the persons in the outside positions would wander from this course in order to check any likely looking areas further inland or nearer the river.

Almost all the sites were located on higher terraces between the bottom land and the river. Much of the bottom land was in swamp, and sherds were rarely found away from the higher areas.

III. DESCRIPTION OF THE SITES IN HALIFAX COUNTY

Hx v4. This site is on the upstream side of a ridge of rock that extends from the rim of the basin to the edge of Little River. There is a gradual decline in elevation from the natural levee along the river, to the foot of the basin rim where there is a swamp. River deposited sand



The Roanoke Rapids Basin Showing the Location of Indian Sites Found During the Survey

extends to this swampy area where it is replaced by clay deposited from the steep sides of the basin. The site extends for about three hundred feet along the foot of the basin rim in the swampy area where the sand meets the clay. Before being cleared, the area had been a thick growth of trees and underbrush. Some bulldozer activity in the area of the site had exposed the cultural material.

Hx v5. A mile and one-half further upstream from Hx v4, near the downstream tip of a ridge of rock extending to the river's edge, is site Hx v5. The bottom land on the downstream side of this ridge of rock was once a cultivated field. In the edge of this field, near the river and along the access road at the tip of the ridge where bulldozers cut into the natural levee of the river, is where the artifacts were found. The soil is composed of river deposited sand. The site covers an area of about one hundred feet along the access road and the base of the ridge.

Hx v6. One quarter of a mile further upstream from site Hx v5 the bottom land narrows to a width of about one hundred feet. The access road cuts into the natural levee for several hundred feet at this point. As the road approaches a ridge of rock, it turns away from the river and crosses this ridge. The site is located along this road as it cut into the levee on the downstream side of the ridge.

The soil is sand, and at this point the river is only about ten feet above the level of the water. Before the access road was cut, the area was in trees and underbrush.

Hx v7 The Gaston Site. This site was chosen for excavation, and the report of this work is presented in a later section of this study. The site description is included in that section.

Hx v8 The Thelma Site. This site was also excavated and is reported in detail in a later section. The site report is included in that section.

Hx v9. This site is located about one-half mile downstream from site Hx v8 on the natural levee. The soil here is alluvial clay, and sand. The site is only about fifty feet in extent, being confined to an area of the levee torn up by bulldozers making a parking lot for a boat landing.

Hx v10. One mile upstream from Hx v8, between Indian Creek on the downstream side and a ridge of land on the upstream side, is site Hx v10. It is on a river deposited sand terrace, fifteen feet above the present level of the water. This terrace is located about one hundred feet from the present river, and rises abruptly from a swampy area immediately behind the present river

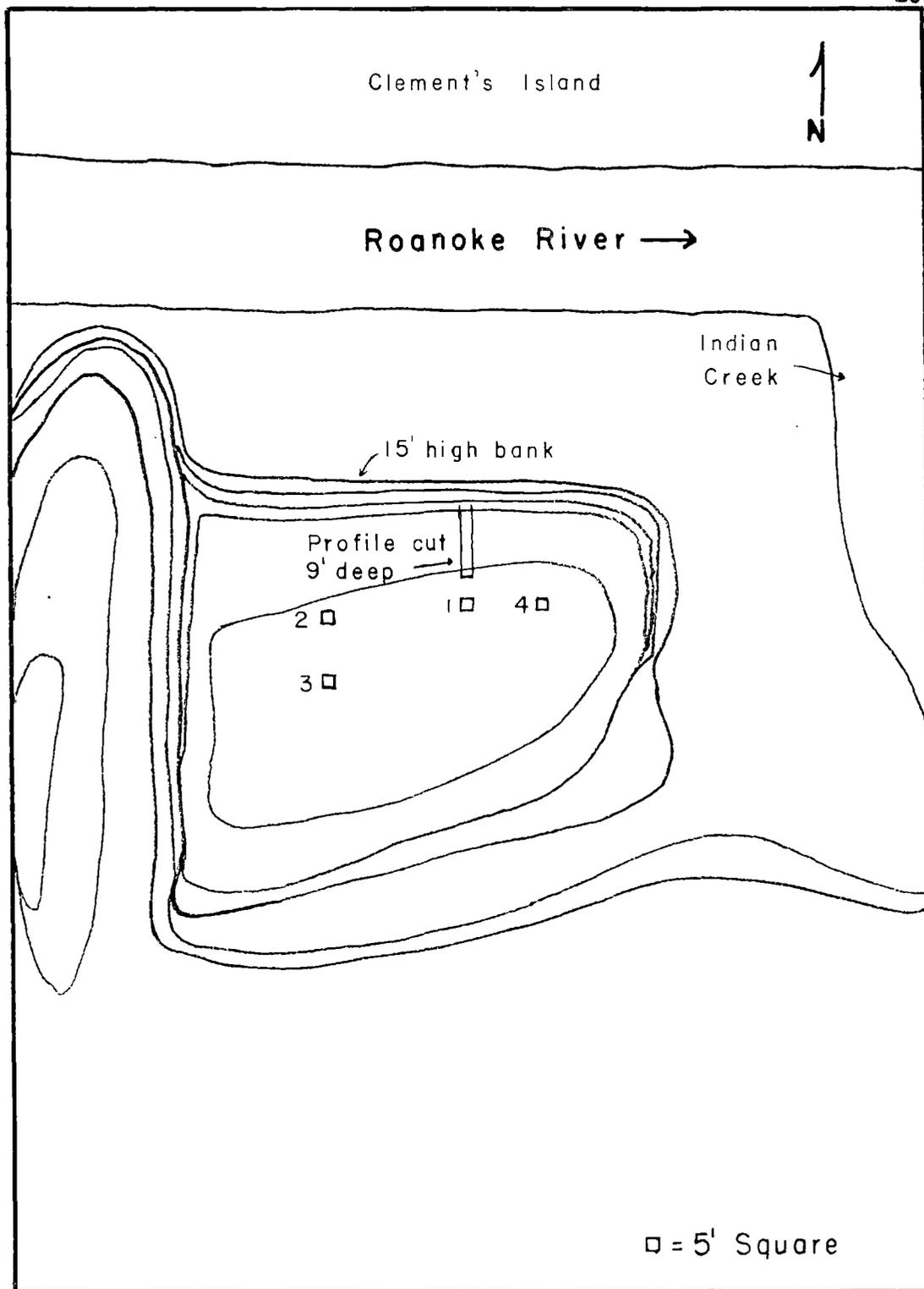
levee. A large quantity of sherds was found on this high terrace, and this, plus the high elevation from the river and the location near a stream below the ridge of land, were factors influencing a decision to dig some test pits on this site. The area had been in forest before it was cleared.

Excavations at Hx v10. Because of the profusion of sherds on the high bank, it was thought that some midden accumulation might be present at this site. Four five-foot squares were dug, but only square #2 had any depth below the first eight inches (see Map 3).

A profile trench was dug on the edge of the bank to a depth of nine feet in an effort to determine if any stratigraphy was present. No visual layer of occupation could be seen, and in sifting all the soil from this profile, no chips were found. It is thought that if a ten foot wide square were excavated to a depth of fifteen feet some artifacts could perhaps be found stratigraphically.

In square # 1, a chipped and pecked grooved ax was found (Plate 26a). Since square #2 was the only one in which any depth was found, and which contained sherds in any quantity, this square was the only one for which percentage relationships could be computed.

In this square only the Clement and Vincent ceramic types (described later in this report) were found. There



Sketch Map of Site Hx v10

Map 3

was an inverse ratio between these types by levels. Of the Vincent series, 42.9 per cent were found in the 0-12in. level, and 57 per cent in the 12-22 in. level. Of the Clement series, 63.8 per cent were found in the 0-12 in. level, and 36.1 per cent in the 12-22 in. level. This evidence tends to substantiate the position of the Hx v10 site in the seriation graph (Fig. 16), and also the relative positions of the Clement and Vincent types in relation to one another as found in other squares at other sites.

Hx v11. A few hundred yards above site Hx v9 is site Hx v11, located on the second river terrace below a ridge of rock. There is a small stream entering the river on the upstream side of this ridge. The soil is sand deposited by the river, and before being cleared the area was in trees and underbrush.

Hx v12. One mile downstream from site Hx v7, on the downstream side of Deep Creek as it enters Little River, is site Hx v12. The site is located in the corner of land formed by the junction of Deep Creek with Little River, which is about ten feet directly above the level of the river. The soil here is yellow sand, and has been considerably disturbed by bulldozers.

Hx v13. Site Hx v13 is located on the levee directly

beside the present Little River position. The site is one-half mile upstream from site Hx v4 at the point where an old bridge to Vincent's Island was destroyed. The area around the destroyed bridge had been considerably disturbed by bulldozer activity. The potsherds were found scattered over an area of about three hundred feet along the disturbed levee. The soil is coarse sand deposited by the river. The vegetation was previously in forest and underbrush before being cleared.

Hx v14. On the downstream side of the ridge of land below site Hx v4 is site Hx v14. There is a small area around the access road, and on each side of a small stream that enters the river at this point there were potsherds, steatite sherds and others. The distance between two ridges on each side of the site is not over two hundred feet, so there was not room for an extensive village at this site. This was a funnelling area for portage around the rapids which are just below this site, since the bottom land here is almost non-existent. The area was heavily forested before clearing.

Hx v15. This is the site nearest the dam in the basin, except for some on Vincent's Island, because of the narrowing of the bottom land. There are rapids immediately below this site, which is located on the downstream side of

a rock point of land, which is lower than many of the other such ridges. This has resulted in the site being nearer the water level. The soil here is alluvial clay mixed with some sand. The potsherds were found quite near the ridge of land in an area where the bulldozers had been uprooting brush. The area covered only about a hundred feet along the ridge, at its base.

IV. DESCRIPTION OF THE SITES IN NORTHAMPTON COUNTY

Np v1, v2, v3. These three sites are located on the southeastern edge of Clement's Island, which is near the western end of the basin. They are located on a high terrace, which is about fifteen feet high above the level of the river and runs parallel to the river at a distance of about two hundred feet from it. This old terrace is highest on the southern edge of the island, declining in elevation toward the northern side to an elevation of about six feet above the level of the water. No sherds were found on this low side of the island.

Np v1 is located on the extreme southeastern tip of this terrace, as it decreases in elevation near the tip of the island. This area had been in thick underbrush before being cleared by bulldozers that had also caused considerable disturbance of the terrace at this point.

Np v2 (Plate 1, Map 4) is about a hundred feet above

Np v1 and had abundant midden and potsherds scattered over the crest of the terrace. The remains of a burial (Plate 1b) were found eroding from the steep terrace bank (Plate 1a). The soil here is a black sand, the midden depth is about 12 inches. A small profile cut was made to determine the depth of the midden, and in this cut was found an antler celt (Plate 37e).

Np v3 is located along the terrace about two hundred feet upstream from Np v2. The midden here is very thin, and the color of the soil is more yellow. In the side of the eroding terrace a concentration of sherds was found which was later assembled into a large vessel fragment of the type II Net Impressed.

Excavations at Np v2. The finding of a burial washing out of the bank at this site, plus the presence of sherds in considerable numbers, caused this site to be considered for excavation of a few five foot squares. Four squares were taken out here on the high ridge that ran along the southern side of Clement's Island. A sketch map is shown in Map 4, and a photograph of the ridge in Plate 1a.

Near the edge of the ridge, in squares one and three, the midden accumulation was 12 inches in depth. In square two, the depth was 14 inches, and in square four, the depth was 21 inches. Because this square was the only one from



a.

Terrace at Site Np v2



b

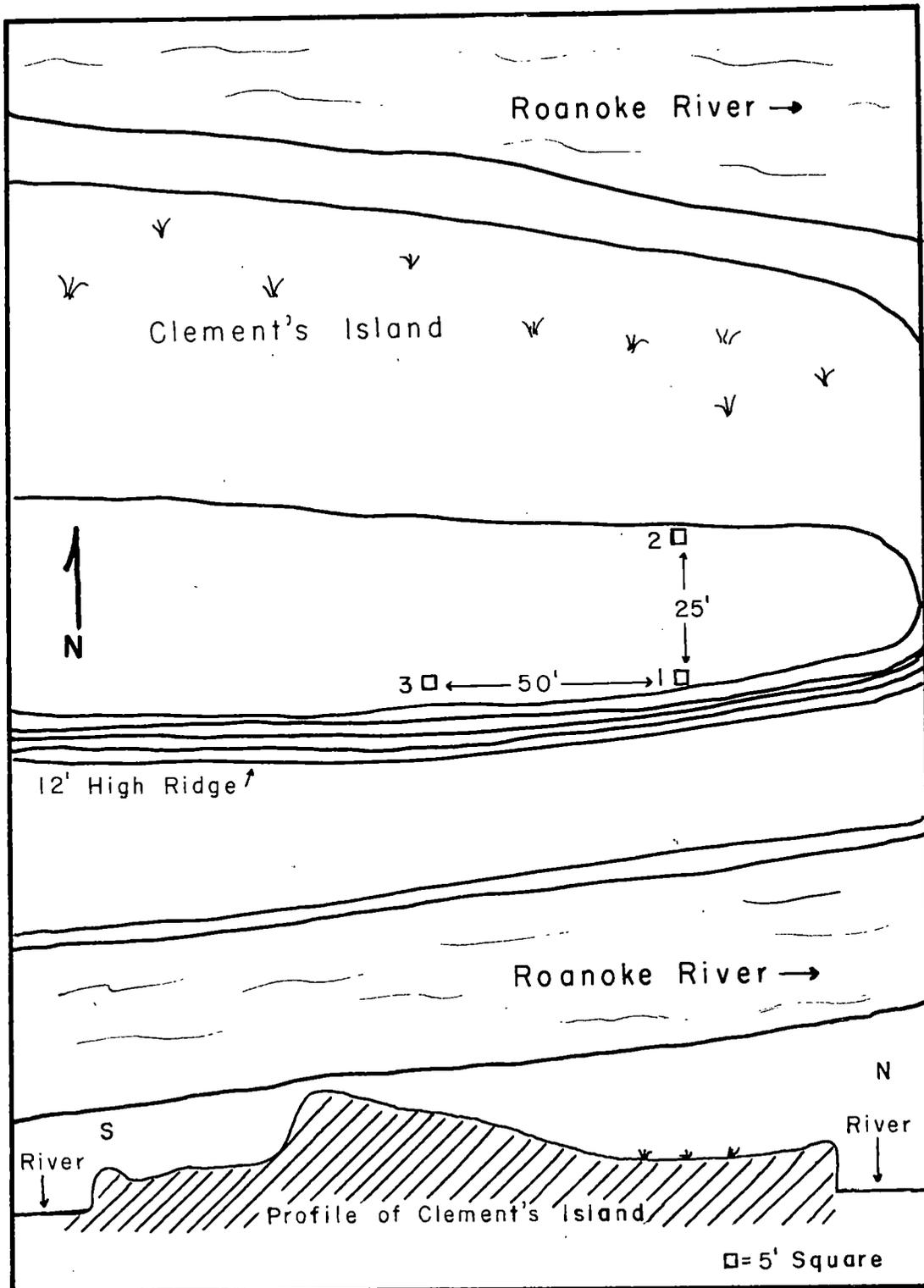
Burial Eroding from the Terrace at Np v2
Plate 1

which two levels could be taken, the relationship of the pottery types from it will be described.

Of the sherds found in this square, 58.7 per cent were of the Vincent Series. Of the sherds found at the 0-8 inch level, the Vincent and Clement sherds were equally divided, but in the 8-21 inch level, 68.8 per cent were of the Vincent types. One sherd of Net Impressed type I was found in the 8-21 inch level of this square.

Of the total sherds from the other squares in which only one level was found, 81.9 per cent were of the Vincent series. This compares favorably with the 85.8 per cent for the Vincent series from the surface survey of the site, which places this site at the bottom of the seriation of sites in the basin (Fig. 16).

Np v4, v5, v6. The terrace declines in elevation toward the western end of the island. Sites Np v4, 5 and 6 are located along this terrace, spaced over a one-half mile area. The soil is sand which varies from black to yellow in color. At site Np v5 there was a large quantity of shell exposed on the side of the terrace. Site Np v6 was located at the end of the terrace at the western end of the island. The terrace between this site and the extreme western tip of the island was not present, and no artifacts were found in this lower area.



Sketch Map of Site Np v2

Map 4

Np v7 through Np v13. Across the river north of Clement's Island, along the old river levee, are sites Np v7 through Np v13. These vary from one hundred to three hundred feet from the present river, the further distance from the river being at the downstream end. The sites are almost evenly spaced over a distance of one mile along the levee. The levee looks very much like a railroad fill near the upstream end since it drops abruptly on both sides. Local residents say this is the result of the soil just back of the levee being removed by slaves and placed on top of the levee to increase its height in order to protect the fields. At any rate, the levee here looks more like a ridge. The artifacts were found along this ridge, and in instances where the ridge took more the form of a natural levee, artifacts were found away from the levee in the fields as well as on it. No shell midden was observed on any of these sites, and several pieces of trade pipe fragments were found here. Finding artifacts along this levee depended on the disturbance of the levee by bulldozers as they pushed brush into the river. This factor influenced the even spacing of the sites along this ridge. The bottom land behind the levee had been cultivated, but the levee itself and the area between the levee and the present river had been in forest and underbrush before being cleared. The soil is coarse yellow sand, and some places had discolor-

ation to brown and black, especially where the undergrowth had been.

Np v14. One mile upstream from Np v13, on the bottom land immediately beside the present river, is site Np v14. There is no natural levee here; the bottom land drops abruptly to the level of the water. This would seem to indicate that the present channel of the river has been cutting into the bottom land and the site. The potsherds were scattered over an area of about five hundred feet along the river, in what had been a plowed field. The soil contained no sand, but was composed of alluvial clay.

Np v15 through Np v19. This series of sites is located on the north side of the river, beginning opposite the downstream tip of Clement's Island and extending along the natural levee for a distance of three-quarters of a mile downstream. The natural levee here is nearer the river, being about twenty-five feet from it, and six feet high. The artifacts were located along this levee where the bulldozers had disturbed it and along the access road which ran parallel to the levee and sometimes along its crest. The remains of an old railroad bridge foundation is located near the center of the group of sites. No midden was noticed. The area had previously been in forest.

Site Np v19 is the site in this group that is

furthest downstream, and is located at the end of the natural levee. From this point for the remainder of the basin downstream to the dam, there is little natural levee and few sites. The bottom land between these sites along the levee and the foot of the basin rim, is a width of three-quarters of a mile. This bottom land has been cultivated at times in the past, but now is being used as pasture.

A short distance below site Np v19, the bottom land is cut in two by a branch of the river which turns north and takes a meandering path near the foot of the basin rim. The islands formed by this dividing of the river into three channels are Tiller's Island and Vincent's Island. This dividing of the river channels occurs at the rapids where site Hx v7 is located on the opposite side of the basin. On the downstream side of a rock ridge of land which is opposite the ridge above site Hx v7, and which is the same ridge responsible for the rapids at this point, is site Np v20.

Np v20. This site is located on an alluvial clay rise in the bottom land downstream from the ridge of rock. A small stream runs along the ridge of rock at its base and joins the river tributary at the end of the ridge. The area was previously in forest. The type material found

indicates that this is an Archaic site, since very little pottery was found, and several Savannah River and Guilford type projectile points were found.

Np v21, v22, v23 and v25. Directly across from sites Hx v5 and v6, on Vincent's Island, at the narrowest part of the island, is this series of sites. They are located on the natural levee which is about fifteen feet above the level of the water, and a distance of twenty-five feet from the present shore line. The sites are spaced evenly over an area of one-half mile along the levee. Erosion had cut the levee in several places, leaving only "islands" of the original levee intact. It was on these "islands" that the artifacts were found. The soil was sandy and contained no midden. The area had been in forest before being cleared.

Np v24. This site is located one-half mile further downstream from the series of sites just described. There is abundant shell midden scattered over an area of three hundred feet along the levee, which is, at this point, two hundred feet from the river. The island at this point is three-quarters of a mile wide, which is the widest point of the island. The levee divides at this site, one levee continues to parallel the river, while the other extends further inland. The area had been in forest. The

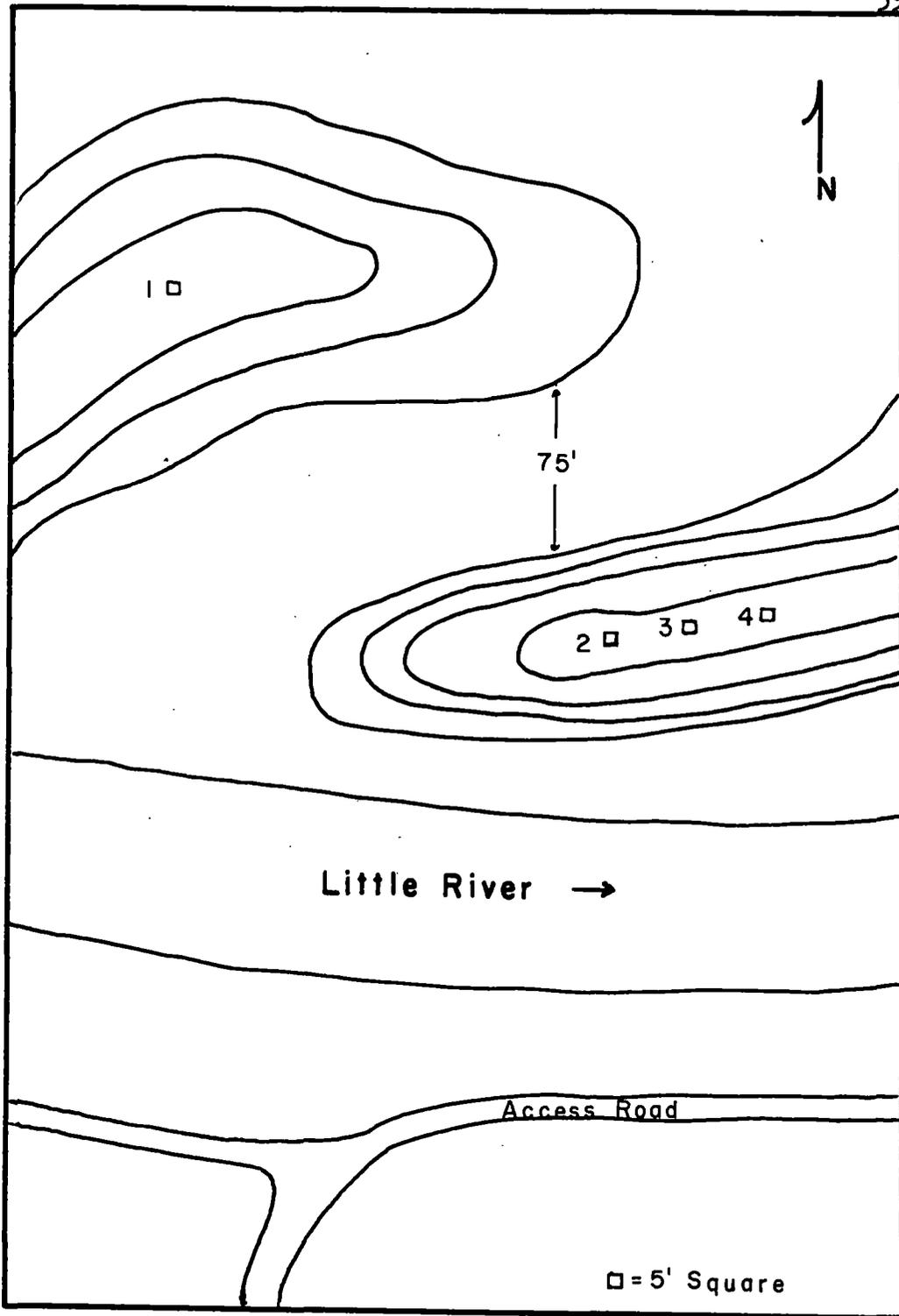
soil was black sand, but no depth of the black midden could be found over a few inches. The area was quite disturbed by bulldozer activity. The large number of sherds found here, plus the high elevation above the river, plus the midden, caused this site to be considered for excavation of several test pits.

Excavations at Np v24. This site contained large quantities of shell midden scattered over the surface of the terrace (Plate 2c). The bulldozers had disturbed the area considerably, but it was thought that some area could be found in which comparatively little disturbance had taken place. Four squares were excavated on top of the terrace, in the area of greatest midden concentration.

The results were disappointing in that no depth below eight inches could be found for the midden. The sherds found in the top few inches of the squares were primarily of the Clement series, with the Vincent types constituting the remainder.

A sketch map of the site and the location of the squares is seen in Map 5.

Np v26. This site is located on the levee that turned inland at site Np v24, about three hundred feet from that site. This area was once a plowed field. The levee at this point drops off on three sides to a swampy area.



Sketch Map of Site Np v24

The soil is yellow sand with a very little amount of shell midden.

Np v27. One-quarter of a mile downstream from site np v24, and on the same levee as it decreases in elevation, is site Np v27. The access road cut into the levee at this point and revealed the artifacts. The soil is sandy, with no midden. The area was previously in trees.

Np v28, v29, and v30. One-quarter mile further downstream and on the second levee which is about one hundred yards from the present river, is the series of sites to be described here. This levee, at this point, is very wide and flat on top, affording ample room for a village. The sites are now in grass, but many sherds were found in areas where the access road cut into this levee. Not all such places produce sherds, but concentrations of sherds were found in the areas of the three sites. The soil is sandy, with no evidence of shell midden. At site Np v29, at the downstream end of this series of sites, and across the river from Hx v4, the access road cuts the sand down to the residual clay. On this clay, in the access road was found projectile points of the Archaic type. At this site also, the levee which had paralleled the present river met the older levee on which this series of sites was located. The older levee stops, and the more recent levee continues

along the present river at a distance of fifteen to twenty feet from the shore line. On this levee the following series of sites was located.

Np v31 through Np v37. This series of sites is spaced evenly along a one-half mile area of the levee, near the lower tip of Vincent's Island. The rapids begin at this point. The sites are spaced according to the disturbance of the bulldozers, which pushed trees and brush into the river at these points. The sherds were found wherever the levee had been disturbed. The soil was sandy, and no midden was visible. The area had been a forest.

Np v38 and Np v39. These two sites are located on the lower tip of Vincent's Island, directly opposite the series of sites just described, on the north shore of the island. No levee is visible on this side of the island, but the bottom land drops off abruptly twenty feet down to the level of the river. These two sites are located along this steep bank where bulldozers cut a road down to the river level in order to push debris out into the river. The soil is sandy with no evidence of midden. The area was in trees prior to clearing.

Np v40, v41 and v42. These sites are located on the levee of the south bank of Vincent's Island, at its extreme

upstream end. The area is in grass, and the sherds could only be found when there was a bare place in this grass. The soil was sandy. There were some tree trunks, but their age indicated they were cut before the present clearing operations began. There were a few erosional gullies in which some of the artifacts were found.

Np v43, v44 and v45. These three sites are located on the North side of Vincent's Island, diagonally across and slightly downstream from the series of sites just described. There is no levee here, but the bottom land drops abruptly for twenty feet to the level of the water. The sites were located along the access road where it cut into the sand near the edge of the river bank. The area had been a cultivated field.

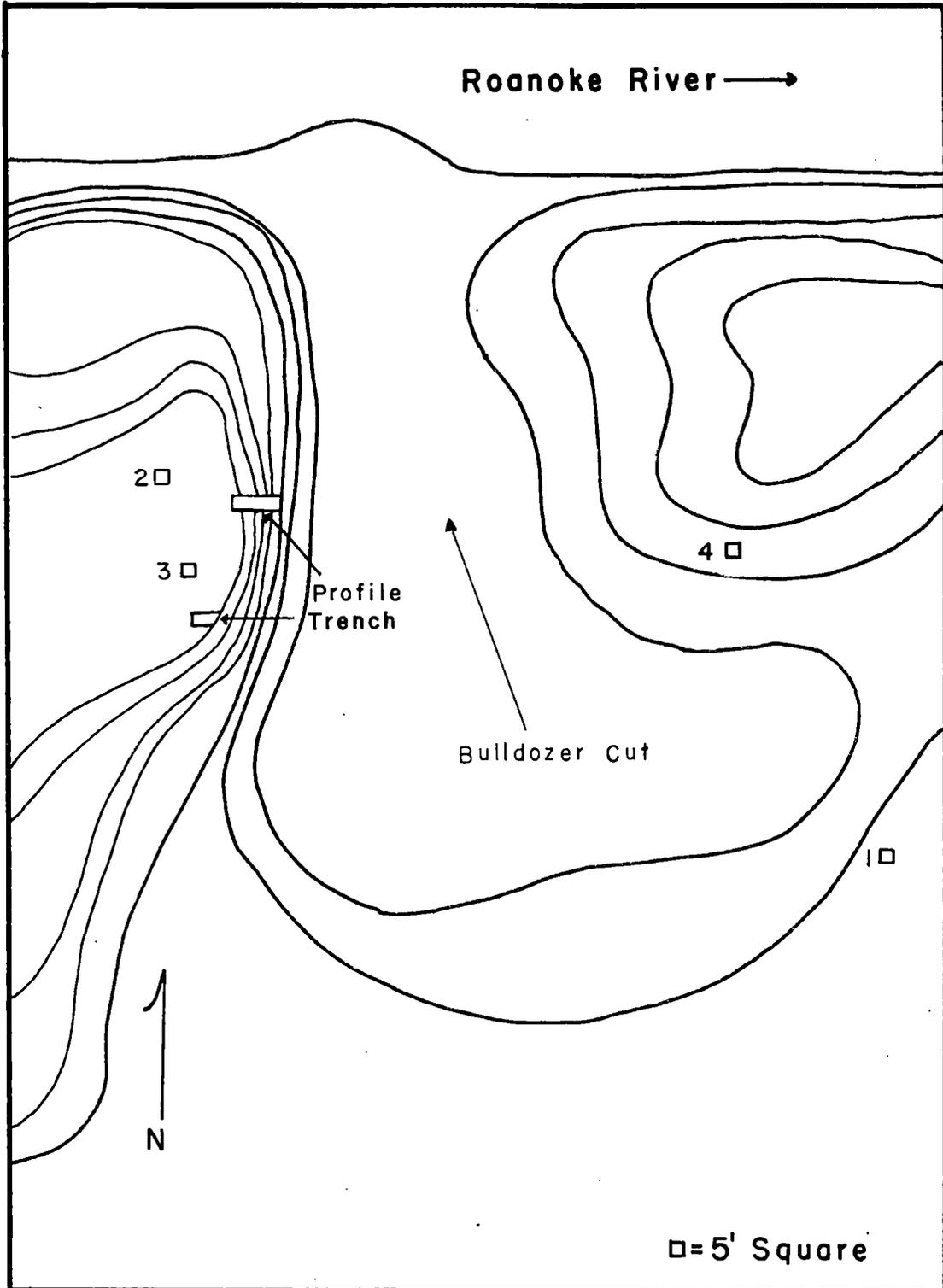
Np v46 through Np v51. This series of sites begins on the north side of Vincent's Island opposite Canoe Creek, and extends for a mile and a quarter upstream. There is no natural levee here, but a high bank drops directly to the water's edge, a drop of fifteen to twenty feet. The sites were found where bulldozers had disturbed the area. Site Np v46 contained quite a few sherds in very good condition, and many of them were of a net-impressed surface finish. For these reasons this site was marked for digging of test pits. Throughout the area tree stumps gave evidence of

previous forest, but at the time, the area was in grass.

Np v52 through Np v55. These sites are directly across the river from site Hx v7, on Tiller's Island. There is no levee here, and the fields were once cultivated. They are presently being used for pasture. The sites are spaced over a one-half mile area along the river's edge. The sherds found here were eroded, and scarce. No bulldozer activity was evident. The soil was alluvial clay and sand.

Excavation of squares at Np v46. This site was of interest because of the large number of sherds found on the surface (884), and the relatively high percentage of net-impressed sherds. Four 5 foot squares were excavated here with very little success. A sketch map of the site is shown in Map 6.

In order to determine if any stratigraphy was present, a profile was cut on the edge of a bank formed by a bulldozer cut into the site. This profile was cut to a depth of seven feet, and showed alternating layers of dark and light soil indicating alternate periods of flooding and vegetation on the site. A photograph of this nicely layered stratigraphy is shown in Plate 2b. The excavation of a five foot square directly behind this profile to a depth of four feet, produced no cultural material of any



Sketch Map of Site Np v46

Map 6



a

Typical Site Area in the Basin



a

Stratified Profile at Np v46



b

Shell Midden on Surface at Np v24

kind. A profile trench of three feet in depth was dug, ten feet further away from the river toward the center of the site in order to determine the stratigraphic picture at this point. The clay subsoil was encountered at a depth of three feet here, and a square was excavated near it but it, too, produced no cultural material. The dark layers showing up so well in the profile in Plate 2b produced nothing; square #1 produced nothing, and square #4 only a dozen of net-impressed, Clement and Vincent type sherds.

The experience with this site demonstrated that although good stratigraphy may be present, cultural material must also be present in the strata to be of value to the archaeologist.

Np v56 and Np v57. These sites are located on each side of the mouth of Canoe Creek as it enters the Roanoke River. The soil is alluvial clay and the area had been in forest. The material was found in bulldozed areas, but not much disturbance had occurred. Very little cultural material was found, but enough to establish the presence of an occupation site.

Np v58. This site was located beside a small stream entering the river one-half mile above Canoe Creek. The rim of the basin descends directly to the river at this point, no bottom land being present. The artifacts were

found along this stream, on the side of the hill. The soil here was residual clay. The area had been in forest.

Np v59. Three-quarters of a mile further upstream, near the foot of the basin rim, surrounded by a swamp, is site Np v59. The soil is residual clay eroded from the steep basin wall. Bulldozers had disturbed the area.

Np v60. One-half mile further upstream, opposite the downstream tip of Tiller's Island, is site Np v60. There is a levee along this bank of the river, and for a mile downstream, along this levee, there is no sign of the occupation which was noticed on other levees in the basin. At this point, however, a few sherds were found. The area had been forest, and the soil was alluvial clay and some sand.

Np v61. One hundred yards upstream from Np v60, below a ridge of rock, beside a small stream, is site Np v62. The soil is alluvial clay. The area was a forest before clearing.

Np v62. One mile downstream from Np v61, on the natural levee of sand at its end above a ridge of rock, is site Np v62. The area was in forest, and the levee here is twelve feet above the level of the water. The area had been disturbed by bulldozers. The site covered an area of fifty feet at the end of the levee.

CHAPTER III

THE ARTIFACT TYPES

I. THE METHOD OF ESTABLISHING THE CERAMIC TYPES

After the 33,787 sherds examined in this study had been washed and given catalog numbers, and these numbers were written on the majority of sherds in each lot, feature, or level, an analysis was begun by dividing the sherds into pottery types. A pottery type is based on the observable physical characteristics of the sherds, not one characteristic alone, but a combination of several observable features. These features are surface finish, temper, hardness, texture, firing, rim form and body shape.

When the archaeologist establishes pottery types based on certain combinations of these features, he is classifying his ceramic material into categories established by the archaeologist, and he should not make the mistake of assuming that these categories necessarily represent the same categories or types recognized by the aboriginal makers of the pots. He is, however, assuming that some combinations of sherd characteristics do reflect certain formulas, or ways of making pottery that were recognized by the Indians. If the combination of characteristics, called a type, proves to have a stratigraphic and areal

distribution that can be consistently observed, then the archaeologist assumes that he has a valid type, i. e., one that reflects a way of making pottery practiced by a group of Indians at a certain place and time. For this reason archaeologists concern themselves with pottery types as a tool that enables them to construct a time and space perspective of Indian cultures.¹ Pottery types alone do not enable him to know much of the culture of the Indians, but by using pottery sequences as a time and space framework upon which to attach the various other associated cultural forms, the archaeologist is able to construct a picture of the evolution of Indian culture.

In order to determine the relationship between the various types he establishes, the archaeologist counts the sherds and deals with them in terms of the percentage relationships. In working with the sherd count, the archaeologist is assuming that each sherd theoretically represents a whole pot, and while it is true that large pots make more sherds than small pots, it has not been demonstrated that this factor greatly affects the pottery type relationships in large collections of sherds. Experiments conducted

¹For discussion of pottery type criteria see: Harold Sellers Colton and Lyndon Lane Gargrave, Handbook of Northern Arizona Pottery Wares, Museum of Northern Arizona, Bulletin No. 11, Flagstaff, p. 1-5.

with sherds utilizing weight rather than count as the measuring criterion, thus taking into consideration surface area, have not produced significantly different results from the sherd count method except that it proved to be more significant in small sherd collections than did the count method.²

In this study the sherd count method was used to determine the pottery type relationships. Once the types have been established and the count has been made, percentages are computed for the various types according to the levels, surface collections, features, etc., from which the archaeologist has sherds. Tables are made showing the various relationships, and if the pottery types follow a consistent pattern stratigraphically and areally, the assumption is that the types are valid; if they do not, then new types may have to be established utilizing different combinations of criteria.

In establishing these relationships of types, it may be found that a group of types similar in temper, paste and firing, but different in surface finish, decoration and other more refined criteria, fall together stratigraphically

²Tests conducted by the Research Laboratory of Anthropology at the University of North Carolina, cited by Ernest Lewis in a thesis, "The Sara Indians, 1540-1768," (Chapel Hill, N.C., 1951), p. 218. The correlation between the two methods was found to be .967.

and areally. These types are often combined into what is known as a pottery series. The method just described, of first establishing the types and then establishing the series, is the process of going from the particular to the general. A process of going from the general to the particular is used when the sherds are classified according to their general impression of surface finish and temper, without attention being paid to the detailed attributes of individual specimens. In this method, the types are established after the basic categories are established.³ In the present study the types were first established, and the series was defined after determining the association of the types. It should be emphasized that the archaeologist should first establish the validity of his types stratigraphically and areally, and then he should demonstrate the association of certain types in time and space, and then, and only then, should he call his group of types a pottery series.⁴ The practice of some archaeologists of forming

³This method was used by Clifford Evans in "A Ceramic Study of Virginia Archaeology," Bureau of American Ethnology 160 (Washington, D.C., 1955).

⁴Definition used by the Research Laboratory of Anthropology at the University of North Carolina, and stated by William H. Sears and James B. Griffin, in "Fiber-Tempered Pottery of the Southeast," Prehistoric Pottery of the Eastern United States (Ann Arbor: Museum of Anthropology, University of Michigan, 1950), unpagged.

pottery series on the basis of repeated occurrence in surface collections of the same pottery types, without adequate stratigraphic evidence to support their conclusions, only tends to further muddy the water.

Before going into a description of the method used in this survey, an explanation of the terms used to describe the pottery types will be given.

Forty-four and one-half per cent of the sherds in the analysis were impressed on the exterior surface with a series of cord marks. These marks had been made with a paddle wrapped with a cord, which may vary in size, many large sherds showing clearly the impression of the paddle. This type surface finish is referred to as "cord-marked".

Of the sherds in the analysis, thirty-five and one-half per cent were impressed on the surface with a fabric. This, too, was wrapped around a paddle and impressed on the exterior surface of the vessel. The weave of the fabric was usually plaiting and varied in size from large coarse mesh with large warp and weave, to a fine mesh. This type surface finish is referred to as "fabric-impressed".

Thirteen and one-half per cent of the sherds were impressed on the exterior surface with parallel lines similar to the cord-marked sherds, but these were made with a smooth wrapping, probably sinue or small vine. This type surface finish is referred to as "simple-stamped".

Similar to the above described simple-stamped surface finish is a group of sherds whose surface was stamped with a carved wooden paddle having parallel lands and grooves. In the first analysis these two types of surface finish were kept separate where the difference could be detected, but on the basis of seriation and stratigraphic evidence, they were later included into the same category, simple-stamped.

Net-impressed sherds have the surface impressed with either a knotted or looped net wrapped around a paddle. Only four and one-half per cent were of this type. Ninety-eight per cent of the sherds were either cord, fabric, simple stamped or net impressed on the exterior surface. A few sherds have the surface impressed with a paddle upon which a grid or check design has been carved. This type surface finish is referred to as check-stamped.

A very small per cent of sherds were impressed on the exterior with a corn cob rolled over the clay while it was wet. This gives a "fingernail punctate" appearance. This type surface finish is referred to as corncob-impressed.

The only other type surface finish found on sherds in this survey was a smoothed surface. This surface was plain and had no difference between the interior and exterior. Both surfaces appeared to have been smoothed with the hand. This type surface finish is referred to as plain.

The interior of the sherds could be classified according to surface finish, as was the exterior. These are: (1) finger smoothed, which is smoothing by swiping the hand over the interior while the clay is still wet; (2) scraped, which is done with a serrated shell or tool and which leaves parallel scraping lines on the interior; (3) burnished, which is polishing of the interior with a polished pebble or other tool; both scraping and burnishing are referred to as tooled; and (4) rough, which is most often the result of erosion of the sherd.⁵

The temper of the sherds proved to be a significant variable in the present survey. The material used to mix with the clay varied from water worn pebbles and large fragments of crushed white quartz, to sand varying from coarse to very fine. In some instances very fine, crushed quartz and feldspar were used.

Establishing valid pottery types in this survey involved many months of examining and counting and recording sherd characteristics on analysis cards. After the 33,000 sherds were analyzed on the basis of the first group of types, and charts were made so that a visual picture of the relationships could be determined, it was discovered that

⁵An excellent study of analysis criteria is by Anna O. Shepherd in Ceramics for the Archaeologist, Carnegie Institution of Washington, Publications, No. 609, Washington, 1956.

few significant relationships could be seen between the types as broken down at that time. Percentages from various combinations of types were combined in an effort to see some significant relationships. Some trends were evident between the mass of cord-marked and fabric-impressed sherd types and the simple-stamped types, but no finer relationships or associations could be seen. It was decided that the only thing to do would be to establish new types, and, on new analysis cards, go through the 33,000 sherds again and take another count using the new types based on a new combination of criteria. This involved several more months of sherd counting and resulted in the successful establishing of the types and pottery series described in this report.

The analysis began with the Gaston Site (Hx v7). The surface collection was examined first because it contained sherds of a variety of surface finishes and temper. These sherds from the site were divided into piles on the basis of surface finish, and then each pile was divided into two piles according to the size of the cord or fabric surface finish, whether large or small, and then these piles were divided into three piles each on the basis of whether the temper was crushed quartz, river pebbles or very fine sand. This procedure produced six tentative types all having the cord-marked surface finish. The same

thing was done for the fabric-impressed sherds. It was evident that since such a high percentage of sherds were either cord or fabric marked sherds, other criteria would be more important as variables than surface finish alone. This is why a detailed breakdown of the cord and fabric types was undertaken. The simple-stamped sherds were divided according to sinue or angular groove stamping, but these were later recombined. They were also kept separate according to temper and interior surface finish. The net-impressed sherds were separated according to whether a knotted or looped net had been used, along with temper and paste differences, but these all were later recombined. The check-stamped sherds were separated on basis of temper, size of check, paste and interior surface finish, but they all were subsequently combined into one type.

As each sherd in one of these categories was examined, the interior surface finish was noted on the analysis card. From the analysis card totals a variety of percentage relationships could be calculated. The rim and basal sherds were counted and kept separate from the body sherds. Before the rims were placed back in the bag from which they were taken, they were drawn in profile and interior and exterior surface designs and finishes were sketched on the analysis card along with any notations as to peculiar

characteristics of any particular sherd. A few of the typical rim, body and basal sherds from each lot examined were placed in one of a series of shallow boxes numbered A, B, C, etc. Each of these tentative types was assigned a box and a letter, and was referred to by the letter on the analysis cards. The sherds in these boxes served as a guide to aid in keeping the type consistent as the analysis progressed. At the end of the analysis if the types were found to be valid, the sherds in these boxes would be used to write the description of the type and to draw composite pictures of the vessel shape from rim, body and basal sherds. These sherds were also used in any illustrations that were needed to be made illustrating the type. This method of handling and typing potsherds enabled the archaeologist to handle a large number of sherds in a comparatively small space.

To some archaeologists... "the distinctiveness of pottery types was evident even in the earliest stage of the ceramic classification of the sherds,"⁶ but such a convenient situation was not the case with the present survey. After a complete counting of sherds from the surface collections, and from the excavated levels and

⁶Clifford Evans, "A Ceramic Study of Virginia Archaeology," Bureau of American Ethnology Bulletin 160 (Washington, 1955), p. 37.

features at the Gaston and Thelma (Hx v8) sites, the percentage relationships were calculated and these were plotted as bars on a graph. In this way a visual picture of the relationships of the types could be seen if they existed. No significant results could be seen on the basis of the stratigraphic evidence, especially with the cord and fabric surface finish types in which it was hoped a separation could be seen between some of the tentative types.

The types from the excavated features and the surface collections were plotted as bars on a strip of graph paper. These strips were then arranged in various positions in an attempt to arrive at a picture of some trend of the bars. This method of ceramic analysis is known as "seriation", and will be discussed in a later section. For the present it is sufficient to say that this method, when used with this first group of types, did not indicate any trend except to show an inverse relationship between the simple-stamped types and the cord and fabric types. A more refined picture was desired, however, and a new set of types was established, this time using a different combination of ceramic features.

The first analysis had been based on a detailed breakdown of ceramic features on the assumption that the significant variables would be included in such a break-

down. Evidently, however, the variables of cord and fabric size, large crushed quartz temper, river pebble and sand temper were not the significant ones in the development of the cord and fabric ceramic tradition in this area. These factors were ruled out in the second analysis, and a new set of variables was tried. It was decided that instead of breaking the cord-marked and fabric-impressed surface finish sherds into six types each, only two types each would be used. The size of the cord or fabric was not considered of importance, nor was the large crushed quartz and sand. The primary variables used in the second analysis to break the cord and fabric surface finished sherds into two categories were paste and temper. Temper had been considered in the first analysis but the criteria used for the size of the temper was evidently wrong. Paste had been little considered in the first analysis, and therefore, it was thought that it might be the significant variable.

Because of the importance of the paste and temper for determining the difference between the Clement and Vincent types, it was often necessary to break a corner of the sherd in order to definitely determine the paste and temper characteristics.

When the second analysis was completed and the percentages were compared by the use of bar graphs, a

definite difference between the new types could be seen on the stratigraphic chart, and on the seriation charts of the excavated features at the Gaston Site (Hx v7).

With stratigraphic and areal validation of the pottery types, and the evident association of the Clement cord and fabric and the Vincent cord and fabric types, enabling them to be considered as separate pottery series, the analysis of the associated artifacts could now be undertaken by correlating them with these pottery types.

In describing the pottery types and series in this study, the types with most verification for their being considered as indicators of cultural processes are represented by the Clement, Vincent and Gaston Series. Types without enough verification or cultural significance have been described by use of their surface finish name. Types described and named by other archaeologists, and found in minor amounts in this survey, have been kept as originally described.

The Roanoke Series. It was noticed during a reexamination of the ceramic material, and during the first analysis also, that certain cord and fabric sherds of a grainy and crumbly paste were characterized by a high percent of finely crushed quartz and feldspar mixed with sand. The more crumbly sherds had a high percentage of golden mica

in the paste. These "mica tempered" sherds are included in what Joffre Coe has called the Roanoke Series.⁷ In this study the Roanoke Series is represented by the two types, Type II Cord-marked and Type II Fabric Impressed.

The Gaston Series. The Gaston Series was separated mainly on the basis of the simple-stamped surface finish regardless of the paste and temper. This was done because a separation on the basis of temper and paste did not prove significant. Throughout the study the Gaston Simple Stamped type has been tabulated separately from the other types of the series due to the high percentage of these sherds in the series. Types associated typologically and temporally with Gaston Simple Stamped pottery also in this series are Type I Cord-marked and Type I Fabric Impressed.

The Clement Series. Pottery types with a high percentage of finely crushed quartz and sand, and whose paste was medium hard and gritty, were held as companion types with the surface finish varying. The two types in this series are Clement Cord-marked and Clement Fabric Impressed. These types were found to be associated through stratigraphy and through seriation, thus constituting a valid series.

⁷Joffre Coe, personal interview.

The Vincent Series. Types with a hard compact paste tempered with very fine sand and an occasional large fragment of crushed quartz or water polished pebbles were companion types with surface finish varying. Sherds of these types do not have the "sugar filled" look of the Clement Series sherds, but are very compact, with less tempering than the Clement Series (Plate 3). Types of this description falling in the Vincent Series are Vincent Cord-marked and Vincent Fabric Impressed.

II. THE CERAMIC TYPE DESCRIPTION

Gaston Simple Stamped

PASTE

Method of Manufacture: The body is composed of annular segments, and the fractures are usually across the coils.

Temper: Crushed quartz, from the size of sand to 6 mm. High ratio of temper to clay. Some sherds have a high content of golden colored mica particles.

Texture: Smooth, compact as a rule, but occasionally the temper gives a slightly gritty feel to the sherds, and sherds containing mica tend to crumble.



Roanoke Series
from
Clarksville, Va.



Roanoke Series
from
Roanoke Rapids



Clement Series



Vincent Series

Cross-section Views of Sherds of Various Series Showing Temper

Hardness: $2\frac{1}{2}$ to $3\frac{1}{2}$

Color: Grey to dark grey with some orange-tan.

SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Stamped with a thong or sinue wrapped paddle or with a carved paddle with angular parallel lands and grooves. Lands are 2mm. and grooves 2 to 3 mm. wide. Most stamping was done so that the parallel rows of lands and grooves are parallel with the rim, or at a slight diagonal.

Interior: Tooled by scraping with a serriated object, or smoothed by use of smooth stone or other object, so that the temper is pressed into the paste. Hand smoothing is present on some sherds.

DECORATION

Lip: Lip is usually stamped with the same paddle used to produce the surface finish on the exterior of the vessel. The parallel rows of lands and grooves are at right angles to the rim. The edge of the paddle was sometimes used, producing dowel-like impressions at intervals of about 2 cm. along the lip. Some lips are smoothed by use of the same smoothing

tool used on the interior of the vessel.

Rim: A wide variety of rim decoration is characteristic of this type. The edge of the thong wrapped paddle was occasionally used along the rim down the outside of the vessel 1 to 1.5 cm. The corner of a right angled paddle was often used to make a series of gashes around the rim. These were from 5 to 7 mm. apart. The edge of a rounded paddle produced dowel-like impressions on some rims, and sometimes fingernail punctations were used as decoration between the paddle corner decorations. These were applied along the edge of the lip, rather than further down on the rim itself. Rows of very close finger punctations and stick gouges are also used as decoration of the rim. All these decorations were applied either along the edge of the rim cutting into the lip, or down on the rim proper, Sometimes 1 cm. below the lip. Most of these decorations were applied to thickened rims, but not all rims were thickened. When folded rims were used, the whole fold would sometimes be decorated by a series of diagonal

impressions made with a stick. These were usually about 2 mm. apart. Most folded rims were punched at the lower edge of the fold with the corner of a square cornered paddle or stick as if to weld the fold to the body of the vessel. Interior of some rims were paddled with the edge of a paddle, leaving indentations where the thong crossed the edge of the paddle. Other interiors were gouged with the corner of a paddle or stick, leaving rows of scars around the interior of the vessel.

Neck:

The neck of the vessels of this type frequently received special attention. The neck was often scraped with the same serriated tool used to finish the interior of the vessel. Sometimes this scraping was used as a treatment before applying incised line decorations, and sometimes it stood alone as the neck decoration. The incised lines begin at the row of rim decorations and extend down the neck of the vessel from 7 to 8 cm. in opposite diagonal angles. There are usually three incised lines paralleling each other at a distance of 7 mm. to 1 cm. These three lines

form an open ended triangle with the next three parallel lines. This open triangle is sometimes closed by a series of parallel incised lines paralleling the lip of the vessel. Occasionally along the neck at a distance of 1.5 cm. from the lip, is a series of three punctated holes made with a pointed instrument.

Some necks are decorated with a series of round punctations seemingly made with a cane or reed, being 1 cm. across and 5 to 7 mm. apart, at a distance of 1.5 to 2 cm below the lip.

The incised lines are made with a sharp stick or sometimes a rounded object. They are from 1 to 3 mm. wide.

On some sherds the neck at the point of greatest constriction has been smoothed with a tool to a width of 3 to 5 cm.

Body: Some body sherds, which may have come from around the shoulder or neck area, are decorated with incised lines. Some of these incised lines are parallel, and intersecting lines only, but some appear to be stick figures of animals.

FORM

- Rim: Usually flaring, but a few are straight.
- Lip: Usually flattened by tooling or decoration of the lip, but some are rounded.
- Body: Globular jars with some miniature forms. Oral diameter 28-40 cm., miniature forms, 9 cm.
- Base: Rounded
- Thickness: 4 to 7 mm., with miniature forms 3-4 mm.
- Appendages: None

PROBABLE RELATIONSHIPS

The treatment of the outer lip with notches which is characteristic of the Gaston type, is also very characteristic of the Dan River Siouan ceramics made by the "Sara Indians in the Dan River area along the Virginia-North Carolina boundary between 1625 and 1675."⁸

Also characteristic of the Dan River ceramics is the combination of parallel incised lines and punctations. The vessel forms and flaring rims are also characteristic of the Dan River

⁸Joffre L. Coe and Ernest Lewis, "Certain Eastern Siouan Pottery Types," in Prehistoric Pottery of the Eastern United States by James B. Griffin, Museum of Anthropology, University of Michigan, unpagged.

pottery. The smoothed area around the constricted part of the neck of the vessels is also a Dan River trait.

Another trait not characteristic of the Dan River ceramics, but which appears on the Gaston pottery, is folded rims with a series of punched indentations welding the lower portions of the fold to the body of the vessel. This trait is characteristic of the Clarksville ceramics of the Siouan Saponi occupation of the Roanoke River near Clarksville, Virginia, at the same time period as the Dan River ceramics.⁹ In some cases the Gaston potters combined a Clarksville folded rim with lip treatment characteristic of the Dan River ceramics.

Other traits not characteristic of either the Clarksville or Dan River pottery that appear on the Gaston sherds are a folded rim with a series of parallel gashes cut into the rim fold and extending around the vessel along the fold, and the simple stamped exterior

⁹Joffre L. Coe, Ibid.

surface finish of the vessel. These traits are both characteristic of the Hillsboro Focus in piedmont North Carolina which represents the Siouan-Saponi-Occaneechi occupation between 1700 and 1725.¹⁰

From this data it would appear that the Gaston ceramics is primarily a result of a combination of Siouan traits. The decoration, form and lip treatment resulting from influences toward the west, while the surface finish and some rim fold treatment was similar to influences also felt further southwest at Hillsboro. Thus it would appear that the Gaston ceramic material would have to fall somewhere between 1650 and 1725. Perhaps when further excavation on sites with simple stamped pottery is undertaken, more information can be added to help clarify the Gaston ceramic material. Perhaps further studies will succeed in breaking down the Gaston type as described here into separate types indicative of more refined time periods.

¹⁰Ibid.

Plate 4

Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds

Row A, left, showing thickened rim.

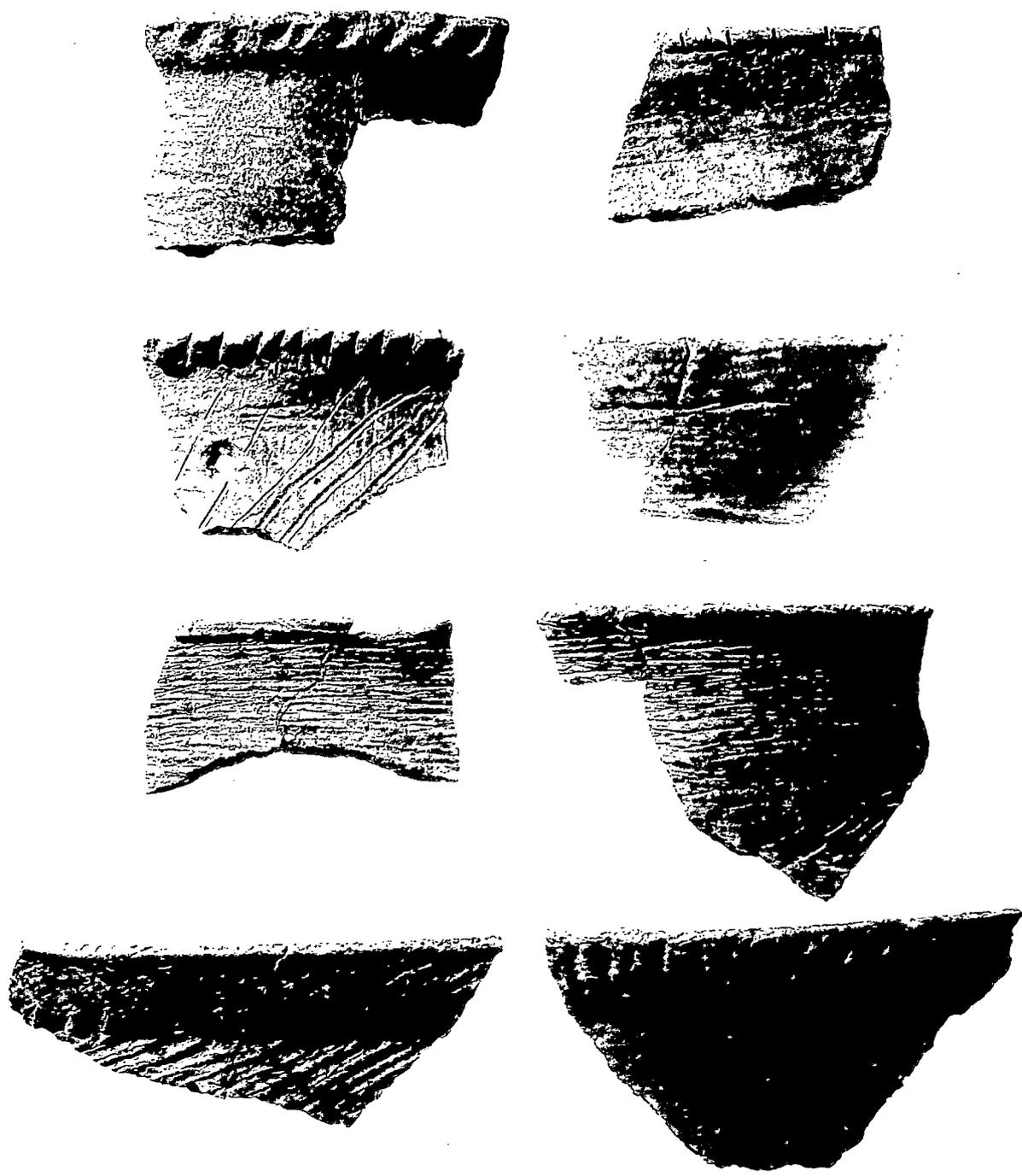
Row A, right, fingernail punctation treatment of lip.

Row B, left, incising and notching of rim characteristic
of Dan River Ceramics.

Row B, right and Row C, sinue stamped surface finish.

Row D, left, folded rim showing lower rim fold treatment
characteristic of Clarksville ceramics.

Row d, right, thickened rim with punctations.



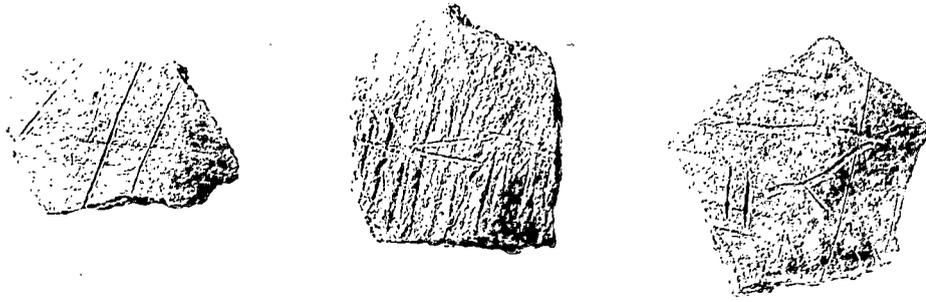
2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 2

Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds
Plate 4

Plate 5

Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds

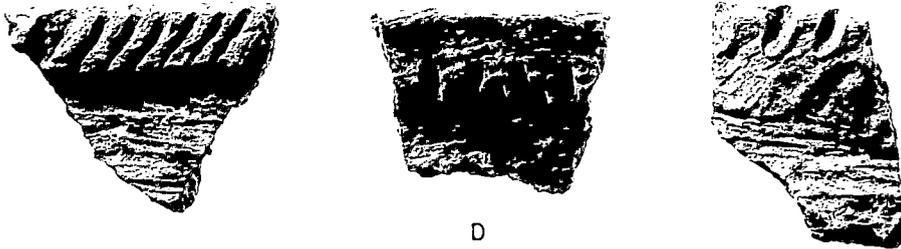
- Row A, incised sherds over carved paddle simple stamped surface finish.
- Row B, incised sherds using rounded incising tool, Dan River influence.
- Row C, sherds showing scraped neck and notched rim characteristic of Dan River Ceramics.
- Row D, left, folded rim characteristic of Hillsboro ceramics.
- Row D, center, folded rim showing bradding of lower edge of rim characteristic of Clarksville ceramics.
- Row D, right, folded rim, with lip notching treatment of Dan River influence.



A



C



D

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 :

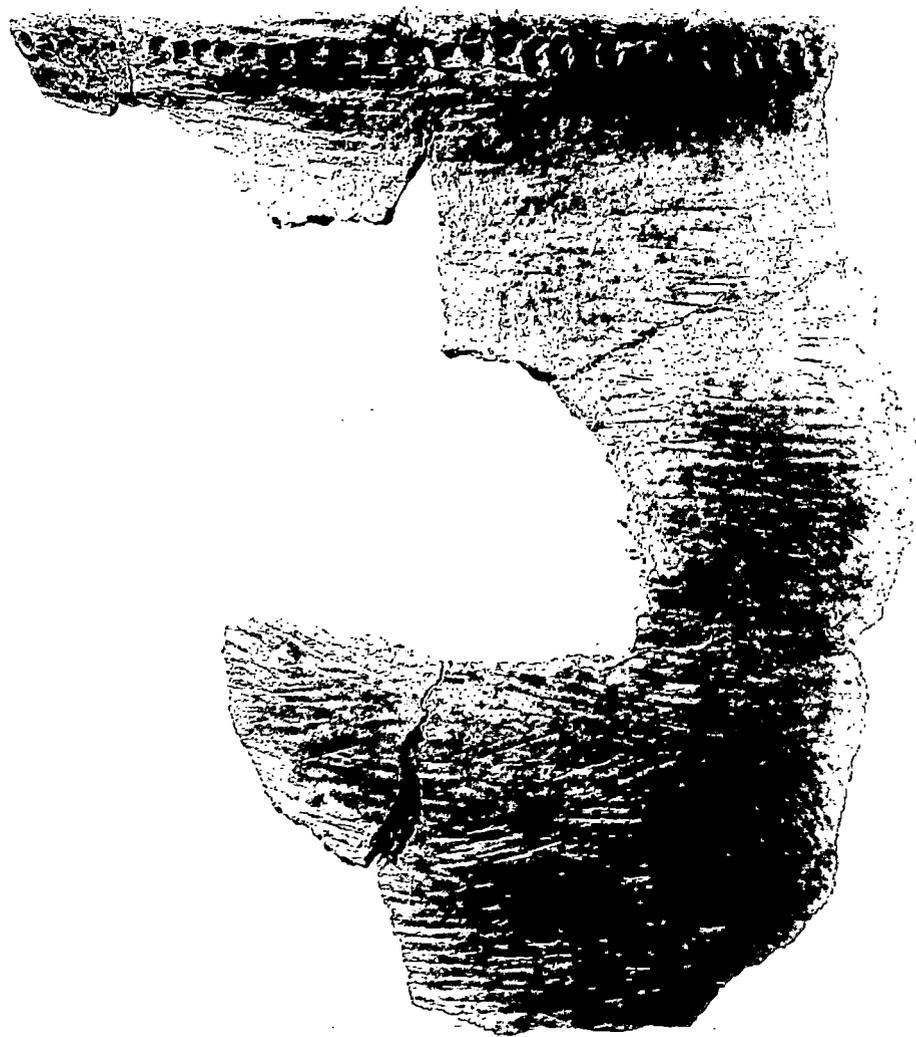
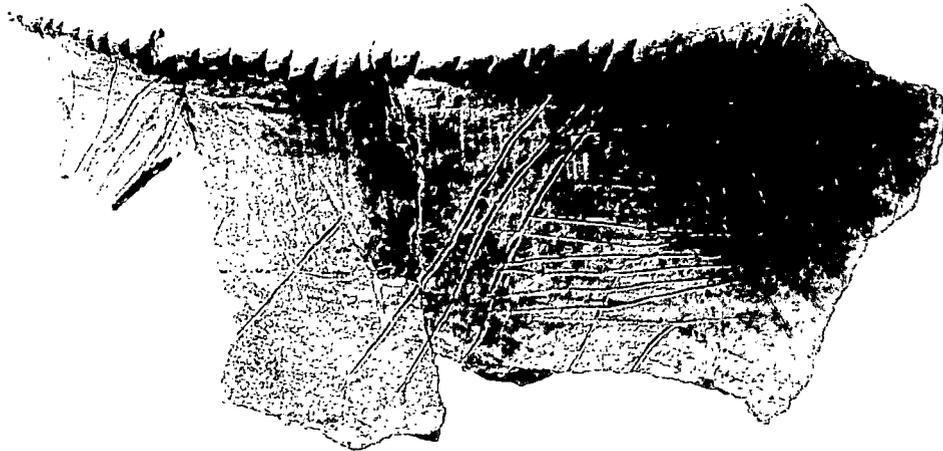
Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds

Plate 6

Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds

Top, large rim sherd showing Dan River influence of incising
and punctations and notched outer lip.

Bottom, large rim sherd showing pinched rim decoration.



Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds

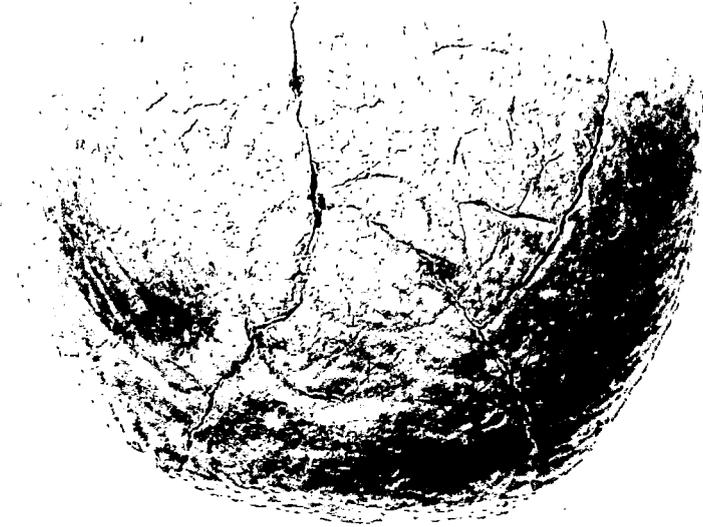
Plate 6

Plate 7

Miniature Bowl Fragments

Row A, miniature bowl of Vincent type from large pit in sq. 65 at the Thelma Site. Three inches high. Catalog No. 620p104; Site No. Hxv8; Location Sq. 65, Fea. 1.

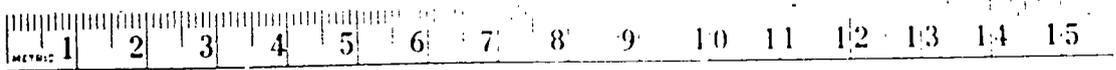
Row B, miniature vessel of Gaston type from Fea. 181 at Gaston Site. Four inches high. Catalog No. 619p1385; Site No. Hxv7; Location Sq. 40L15, Fea. 181.



A

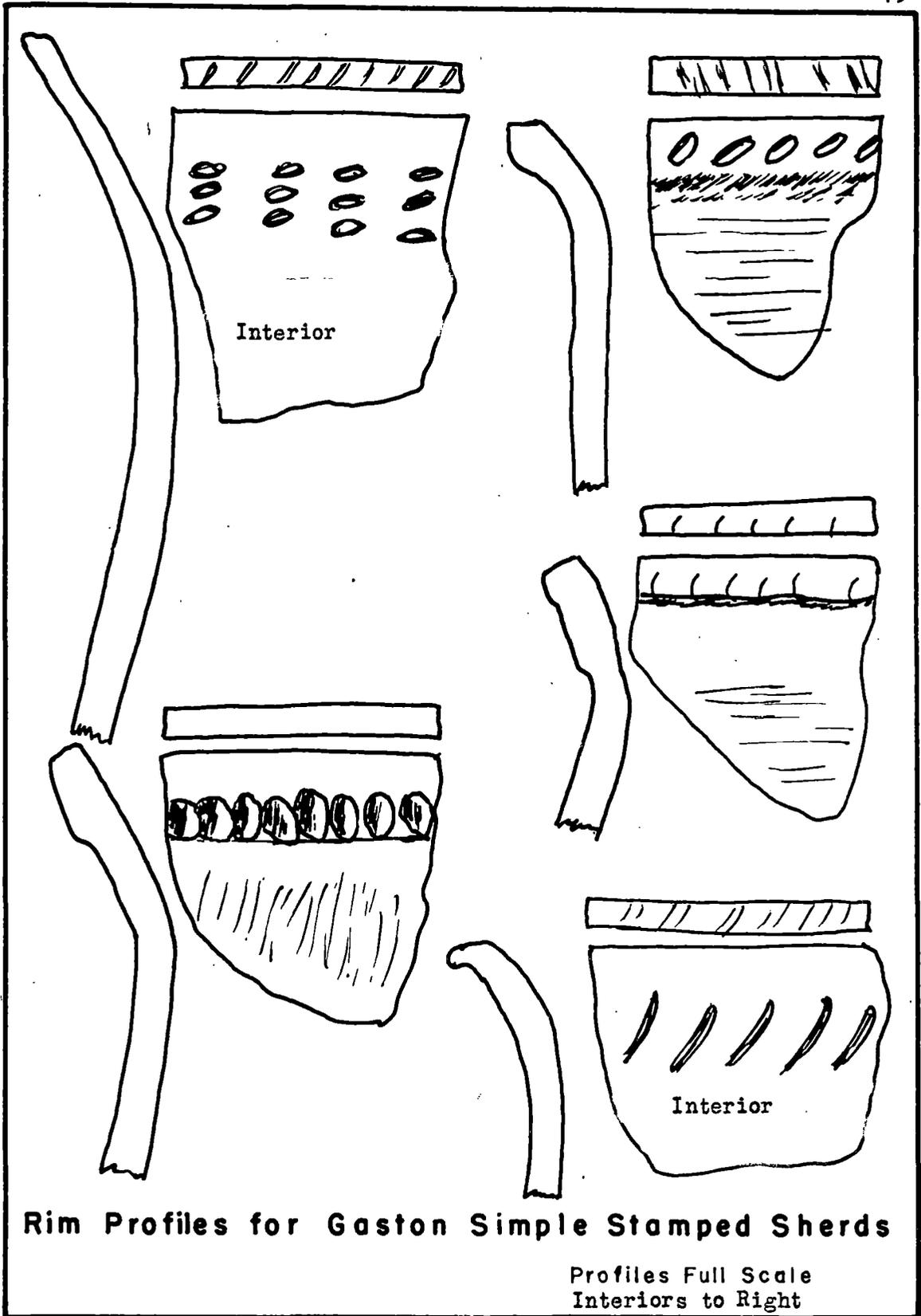


B



Miniature Bowl Fragments

Plate 7

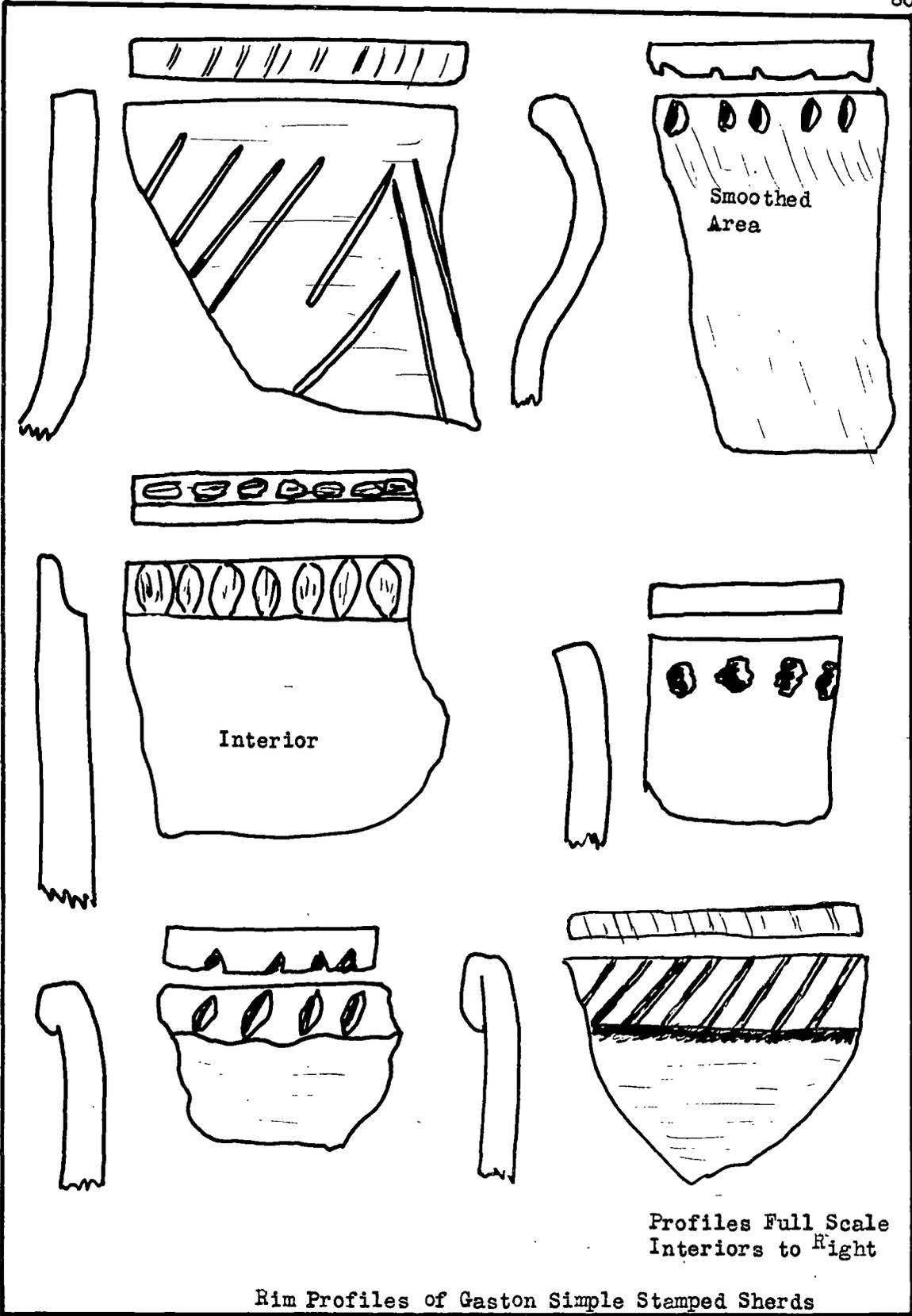


Rim Profiles for Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds

Profiles Full Scale
Interiors to Right

Figure 1

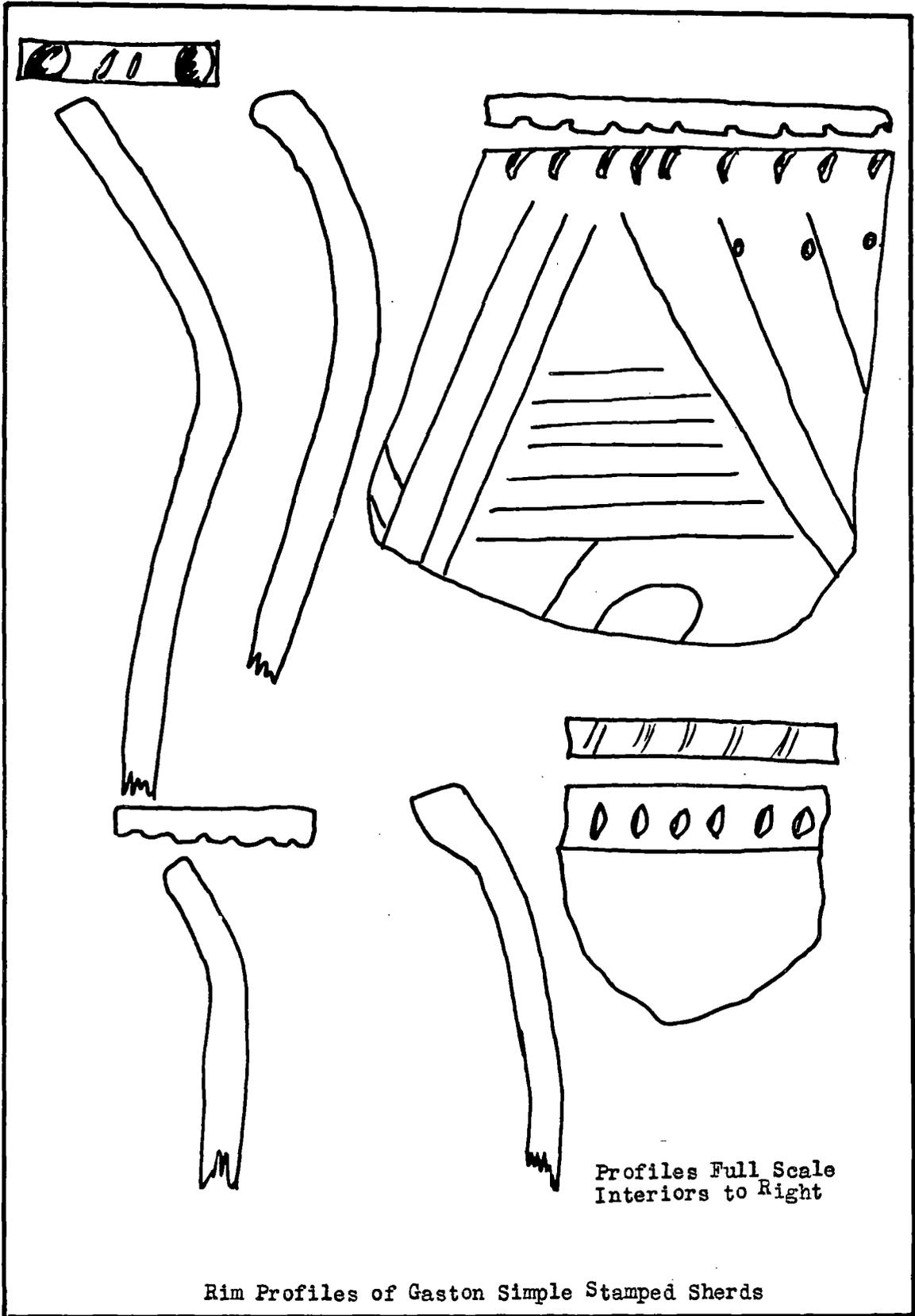
5



Profiles Full Scale
Interiors to ^Right

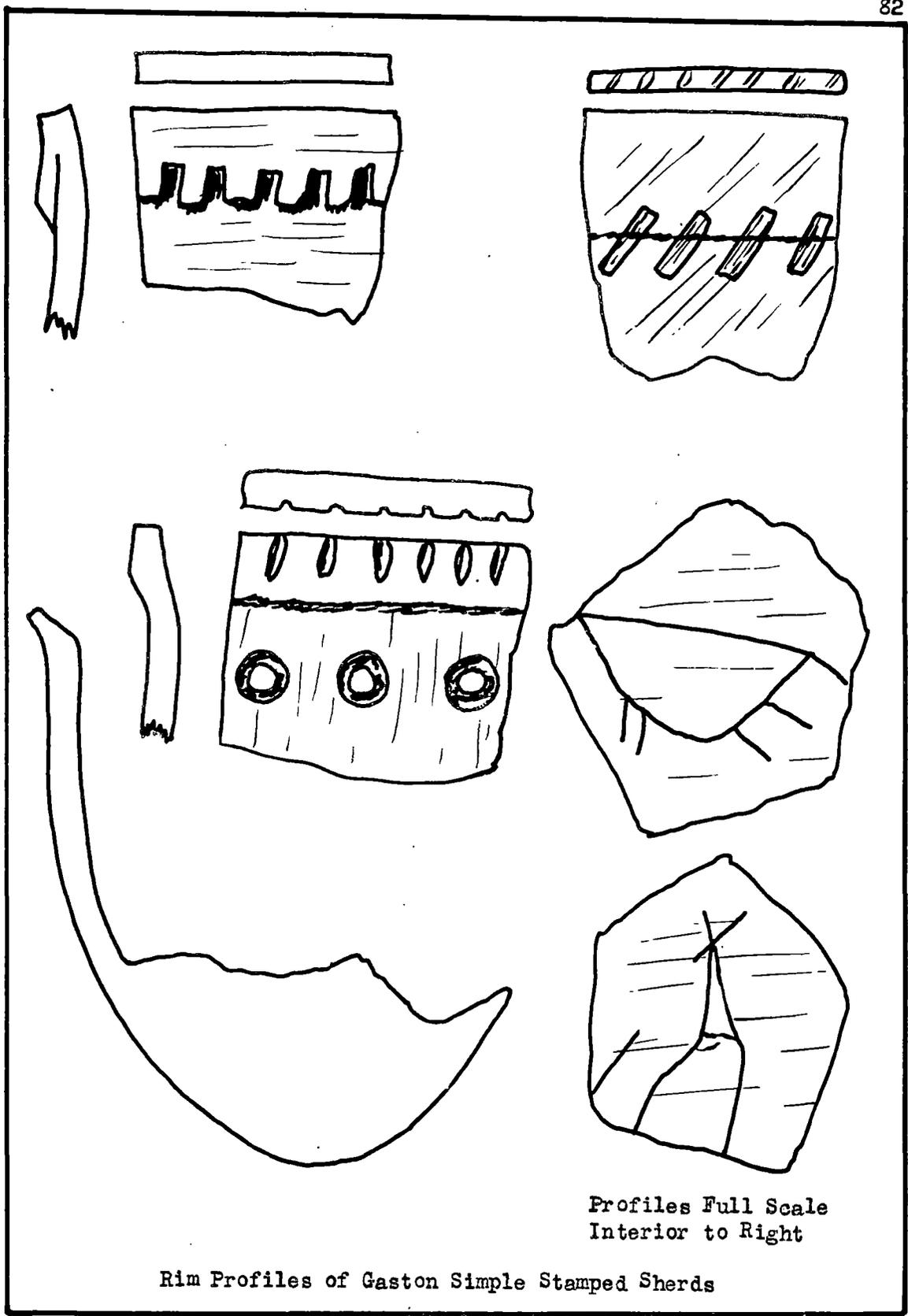
Rim Profiles of Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds

Figure 2



Rim Profiles of Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds

Figure 3



Profiles Full Scale
Interior to Right

Rim Profiles of Gaston Simple Stamped Sherds

Figure 4

Clement Cord-marked

PASTE

Method of Manufacture: Annular segments throughout the body, with a disc for the base on several specimens. Coiling well blended with fracture usually not along coil lines.

Temper: High percentage of crushed quartz and sand ranging from minute particles to large angular pieces, .05 mm. to .7 mm.

This high percentage of small crushed rock and sand is the primary criteria by which the sherds of this type can be distinguished from those of the Vincent Cord-marked type. This gritty temper gives the sherds a "sugar filled" look in cross-section. (See Plate 3)

Texture: Compact, granular, rough and gritty on eroded sherds.

Hardness: $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3

Color: Orange-grey to black. Interiors orange to black.

SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Impressed with a cord-wrapped paddle, with a tight S twist 1 to $1\frac{1}{2}$ mm. in width giving a sharp, distinct cord impression.

The parallel rows of cord are vertical to slightly diagonal to the rim with some cross-stamping which seems to be spaced at intervals over the body of the vessel as though it may have been a decorative feature.

Interior: Smoothed by hand, swipings visible on most non-eroded sherds.

DECORATION

Lip: Mostly rounded and finger-smoothed, but occasionally light cord impressions are made on the lip after finger smoothing. These cord impressions are most often at a right angle to the rim and occasionally they parallel it.

Neck: None, except perhaps the use of cross-stamping at intervals over the body of the vessel as decoration.

Rim: None, except an occasional paddling with the side or edge of the paddle.

FORM

Rim: Straight to very slightly flaring.

Lip: Rounded except when lightly paddled, in which case they are slightly flattened. Some slightly thickened as result of smoothing of

the lip with the fingers.

Body: Large globular jars with conoidal bottoms.

Base: Conoidal to rounded.

Thickness: .6 to 1 cm. with bases 2 cm. thick.

Appendages: None

Clement Fabric Impressed

PASTE

Method of Manufacture: Same as Clement Cord-marked.

Temper: Same as Clement Cord-marked.

Texture: Same as Clement Cord-marked.

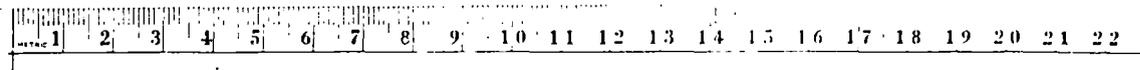
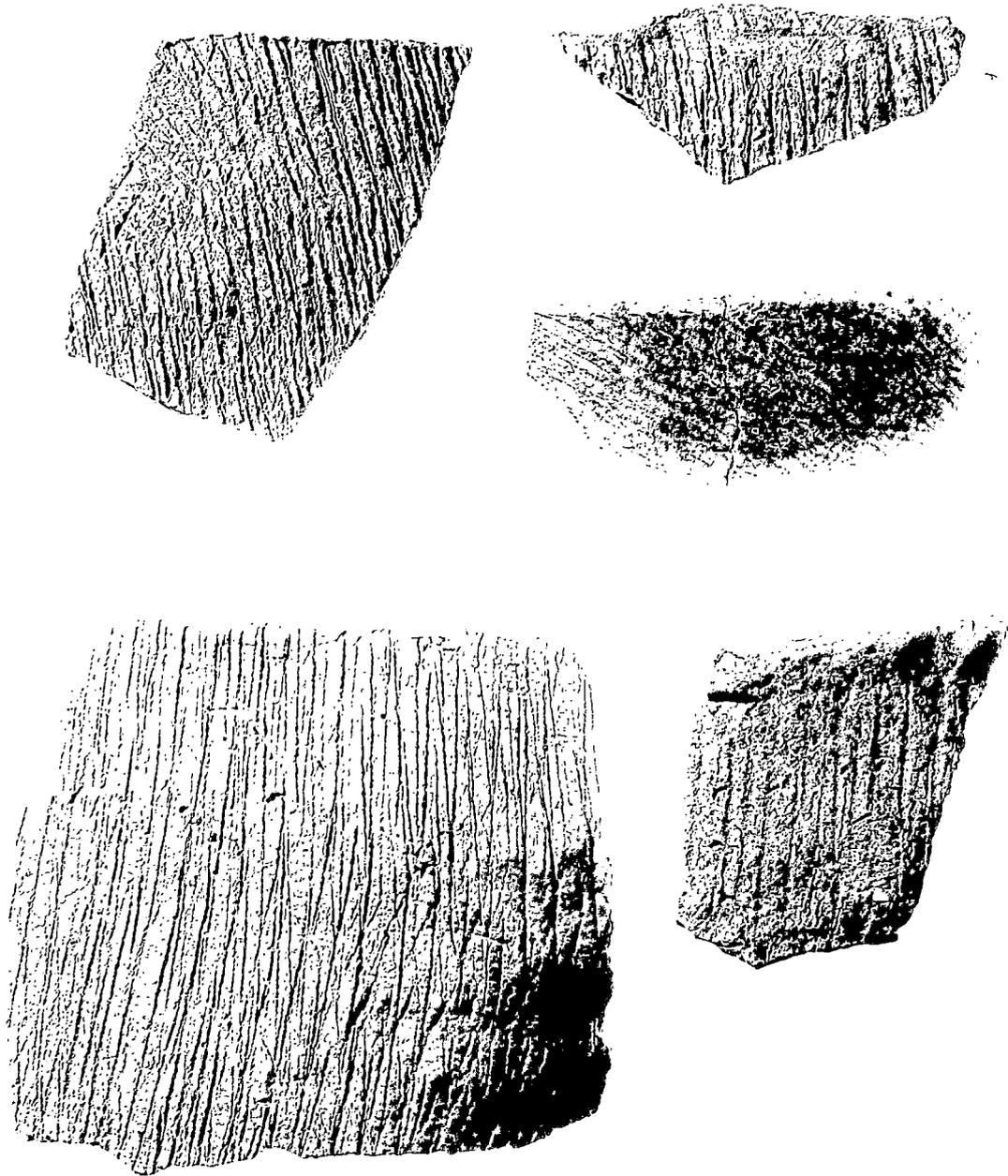
Hardness: Slightly harder than Clement Cord-marked,
3 to $3\frac{1}{2}$.

Color: Same as Clement Cord-marked.

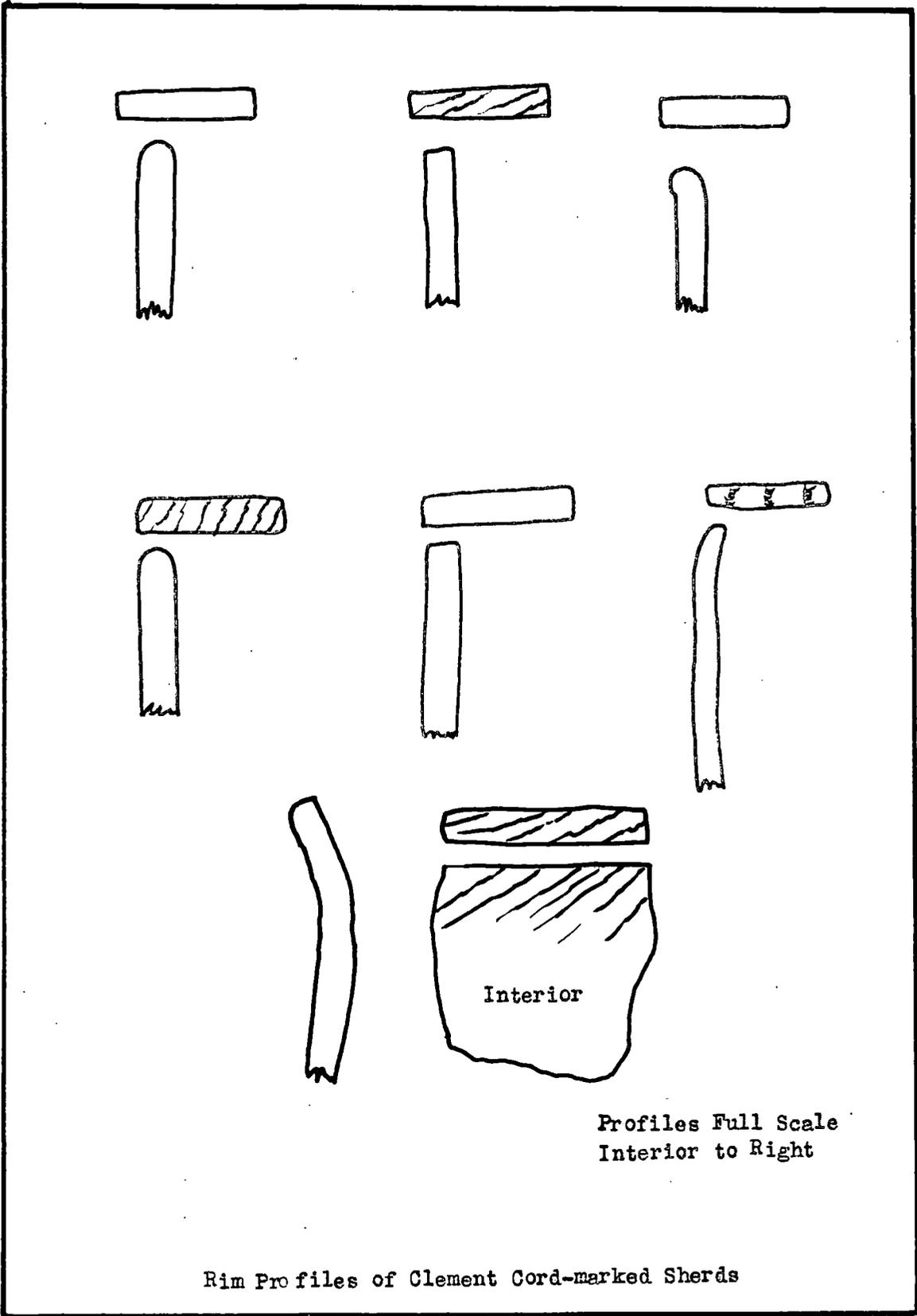
SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Impressed with a plaited fabric with a medium-close warp, 3-4 mm., and a very close weft, 1mm. Most impressions are clearly defined. The warp seems to be of a rigid nature, and the weft is a loosely twisted cord.

Interior: Smoothed with the hand, with swipings visible on some sherds. Slight scraping is present on a few sherds, and the interior is generally somewhat smoother than on Clement Cord-marked sherds.



Clement Cord-marked Sherds
Plate 8



Rim Profiles of Clement Cord-marked Shards

Figure 5

DECORATION

Lip: Majority have impressions of the paddle around the lip, but some are rounded and finger-smoothed. The paddle impressions around the lip are sometimes 3 mm. deep, showing clearly the fabric or cord as it crossed the edge of the paddle. A few sherds are impressed on the lip with the flat side rather than the edge of the paddle.

Neck: None

Rim: Interiors of some rims are paddled with edge of the fabric-wrapped paddle, forming a row of indentions vertical to diagonal to the rim.

FORM

Rim: Straight to slightly flaring.

Lip: Rounded with some flattening due to paddling of lip with the side or edge of the paddle.

Body: Large globular jars with oral diameter of 27 cm.

Base: Conoidal to rounded.

Thickness: .4 to .7 cm., average .5 cm. Bases .6 to 1 cm. thick.

Appendages: None

PROBABLE RELATIONSHIPS OF THE CLEMENT SERIES

Typologically the Clement Series is

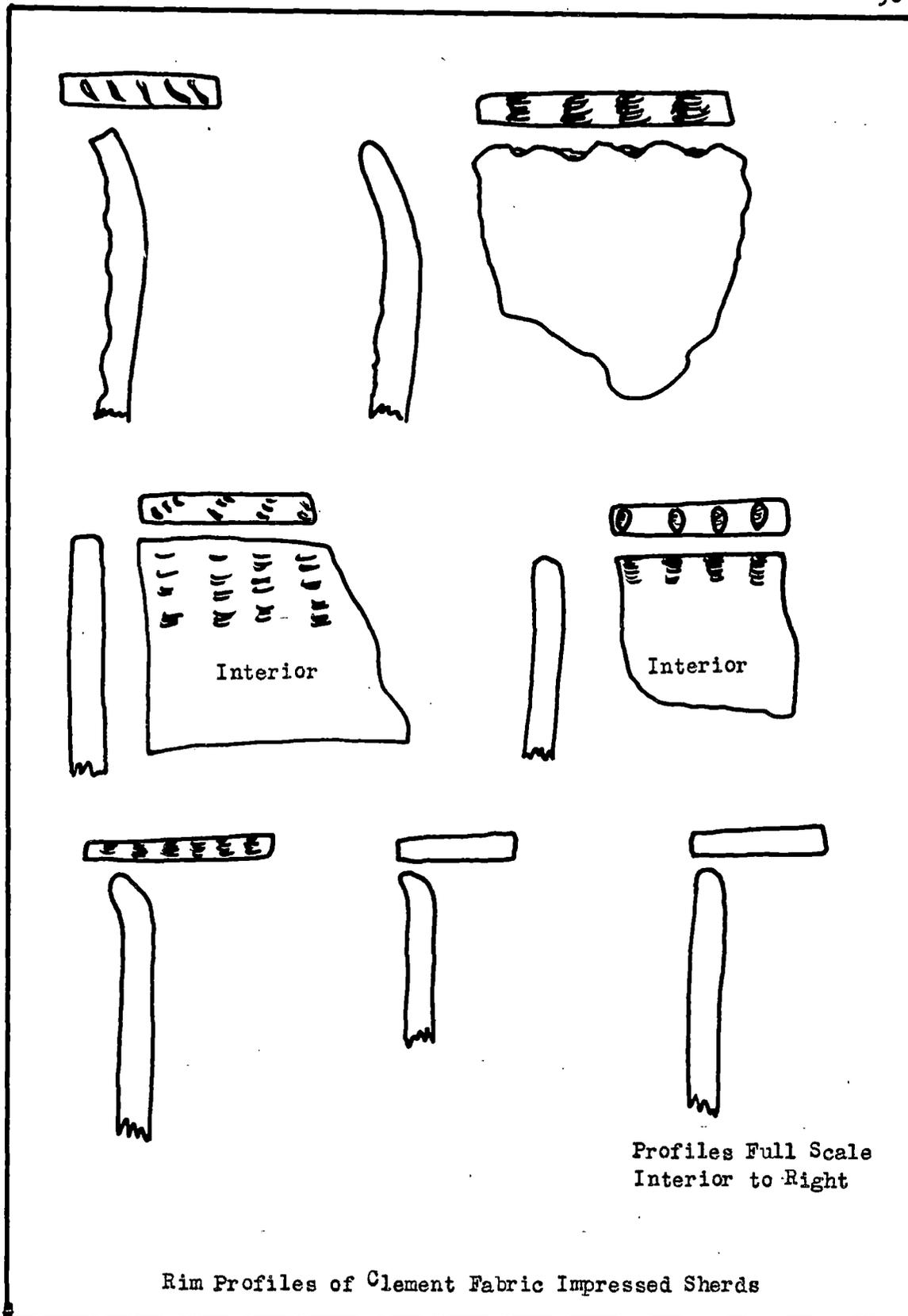
similar to what Clifford Evans has called the Stony Creek Series.¹¹ However, examination of sherds from a site in North Carolina said by Evans to be 94.5 per cent Stony Creek Series pottery, indicated that some sherds evidently included in the series are widely separated typologically, and some types now included will, upon closer examination, need to be separated into more refined classifications. For this reason, the type name, Stony Creek, was not given to the Clement ceramic material, since Clement, Vincent and Gaston type ceramics are all included in the Stony Creek Series by Evans.¹²

The Clement Series also bears some resemblance to what Coe has called the Roanoke Series. This series precedes the Clarksville ceramic material which is the Saponi pottery of the 1625-1675 period.¹³ Further comparisons

¹¹Clifford Evans, "A Ceramic Study of Virginia Archaeology," Bureau of American Ethnology Bulletin 160 (Washington, D.C., 1955), p. 69.

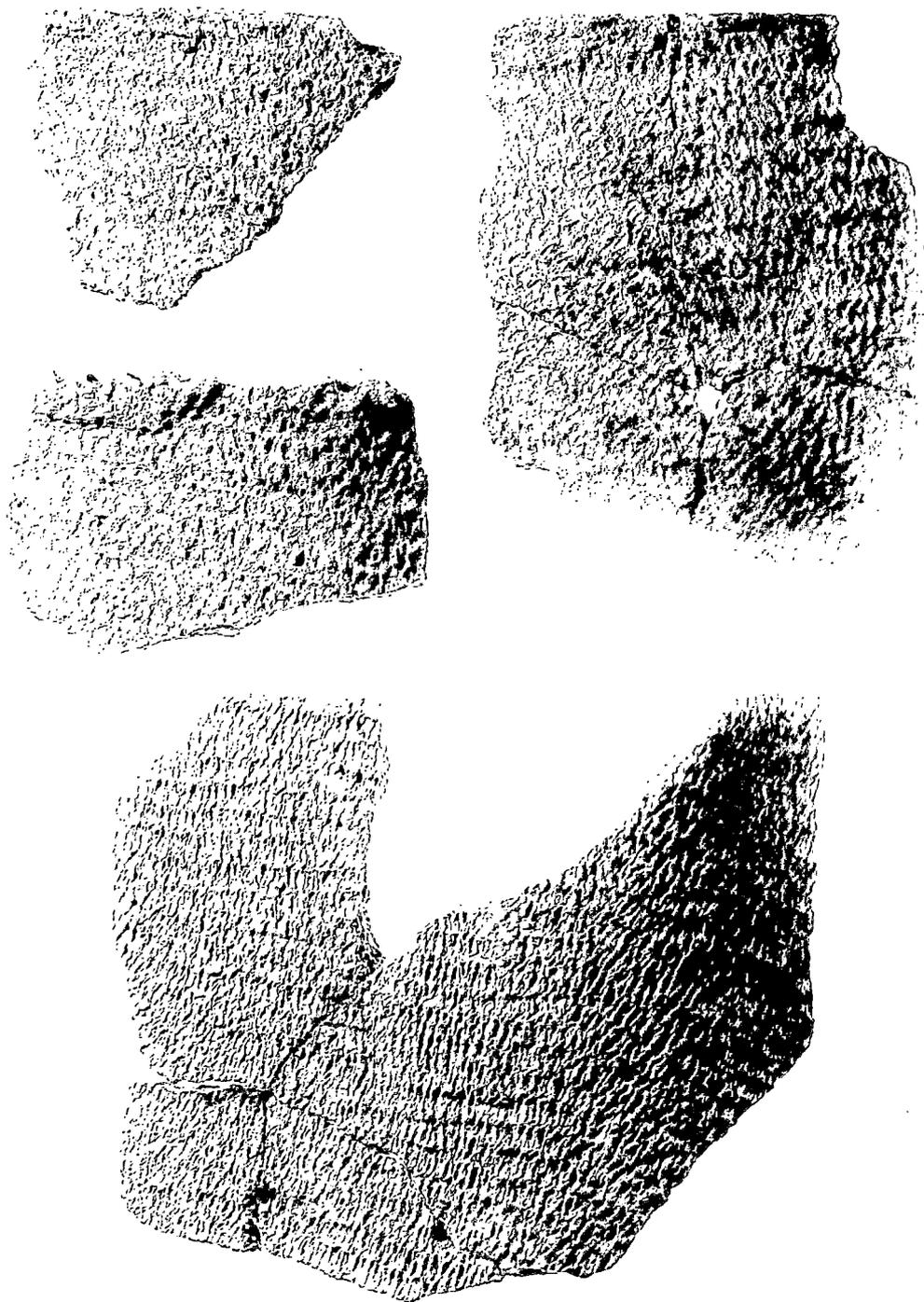
¹²Ibid., p. 134 and table p. 156. Examination of sherds on file at the Research Laboratory of Anthropology at the University of North Carolina.

¹³Joffre Coe, personal interview.



Rim Profiles of Clement Fabric Impressed Sherds

Figure 6



Clement Fabric Impressed Sherds

Plate 9

Plate 10

Large pot fragment of Clement Fabric Impressed type. Excavated from Fea 199 (Plate 44a). Notice drilled holes used for repairing crack in the vessel before it was discarded.



Large Pot Fragment of Clement Fabric Impressed Type

Plate 10

await more research in related areas, but it can be said that the Clement Series represents a development out of the Vincent Series, and was replaced by the Gaston Series during historic times.

Vincent Cord-marked.

PASTE

Method of Manufacture: The body is built of annular segments. The fractures are usually along the coils, giving the impression of rim sherds to many body sherds.

Temper: Fine sand with occasional crushed quartz. Many sherds have such compact paste that the temper is not evident except upon close examination.

Texture: Fine, smooth texture, hard, compact paste.

Hardness: $2\frac{1}{2}$ to $3\frac{1}{2}$

Color: Red-orange to tan.

SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Impressed with a cord-wrapped paddle. The cord impression is usually clear and distinct. It has a Z twist that is usually hard. The parallel rows of cord markings form a right

angle or slight diagonal to the rim. There is some cross stamping, but usually no more than at a slight angle from parallel.

Interior: Hand smoothed with hand swipings visible on most sherds.

DECORATION

Lip: Most lips have been paddled with the flat side of the paddle so that the cord impressions are at a right angle to the lip, some, however, are finger smoothed.

Neck: None

Interior: Frequent cord impressions around inside of the rim at a diagonal angle extending down for 2 cm. from the lip.

FORM

Rim: Straight

Lip: Most are flat as a result of paddling, but a few are rounded.

Body: Straight sided, large jars. One miniature form was found with a round bottom, and was only three inches high (Plate 7). The paste and temper characteristics are typical of the Vincent series, although the cord impressions are not.

Base: Conical to slightly rounded. Rounded base on the one miniature vessel recovered.

Thickness: 5 to 9 mm.

Appendages: None

Vincent Fabric Impressed.

PASTE

Method of Manufacture: Built of annular segments with fracture usually along the coils.

Temper: Fine sand with occasional large crushed quartz fragments. Some rounded river pebbles in a minority of the sherds.

Texture: Same as Vincent Cord-marked.

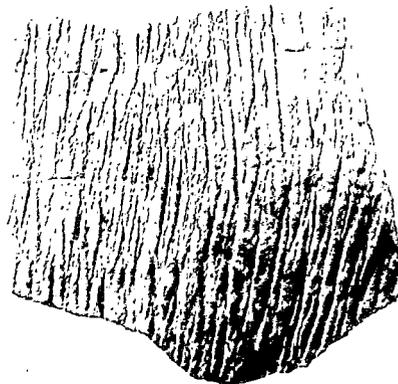
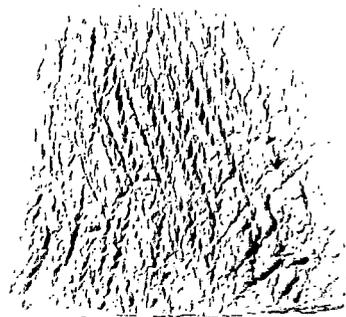
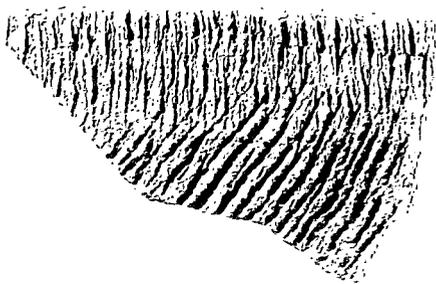
Hardness: $2\frac{1}{2}$ to $3\frac{1}{2}$

Color: Orange-tan to grey.

SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Impressed with a fabric-wrapped paddle with usually distinct impressions of the fabric. The fabric is plaited or basketry that has a fine close weft and a wide coarse warp. Weft is 1 to 2 mm. and warp from 3mm. to 1.1 cm. in width.

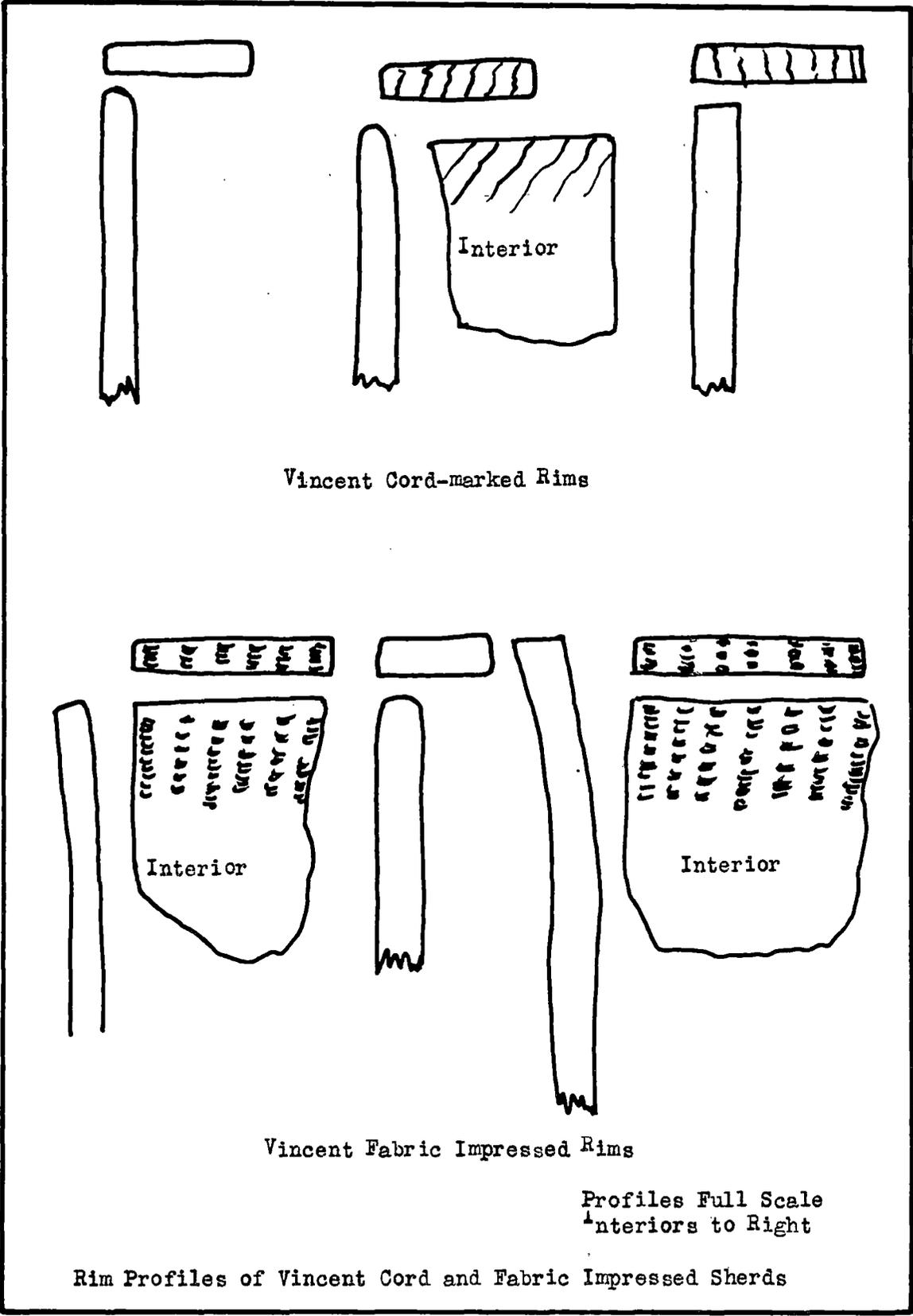
Interior: Hand smoothed with swipings showing on many sherds.



1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21

Sherds of the Type Vincent Cord-marked

Plate 11



Vincent Cord-marked Rims

Vincent Fabric Impressed Rims

Profiles Full Scale
Interiors to Right

Rim Profiles of Vincent Cord and Fabric Impressed Sherds

Figure 7.

DECORATION

- Lip: Finger smoothed or paddled with fabric wrapped paddle.
- Neck: None
- Rim Interior: Paddled with the edge of the fabric-wrapped paddle for a distance of 2 to 3 cm. from the lip on some sherds.

FORM

- Rim: Straight to occasionally slightly flaring.
- Lip: Rounded or flattened by the paddle.
- Body: Straight sided jars with oral diameter of 25 to 40 cm. One miniature form three inches high is shaped with a spout as though in imitation of a shell cup. This specimen has a flat base. (Plate 14)
- Base: Conical to rounded, with one miniature form having a flat base.
- Thickness: 7mm. to 1.1 cm.
- Appendages: None

PROBABLE RELATIONSHIPS OF THE VINCENT SERIES

The Vincent Series, with the Clement Series are both probably included in what Evans has called Stony Creek. A definite typological comparison with ceramic material

from adjacent areas is difficult since the type as such has not been described. However, there is some typological comparison to the Prince George Series of Evans, but this cannot be carried very far beyond general appearance and paste characteristics.¹⁴

The Vincent Series represents the first ceramic types to be made in the Roanoke Rapids basin, and was replaced in popularity at a later time by the Clement Series. These two series are difficult at times to distinguish one from the other since the temper characteristics are the primary criteria for separation. They represent the major ceramic types in the basin, and since they are present on almost every site, the indication is that they represent a long period of occupation within the area. It is thought that the time period in which the Vincent and Clement Series were at their height of popularity would be between A. D. 500 and A.D. 1500, at which time the Gaston pottery became the most popular type.¹⁵

¹⁴Ibid., Evans, p. 62-63.

¹⁵Estimate made in January, 1956, for use in display at State Museum, Raleigh, N.C., on Indian Cultures in Roanoke Rapids Basin.

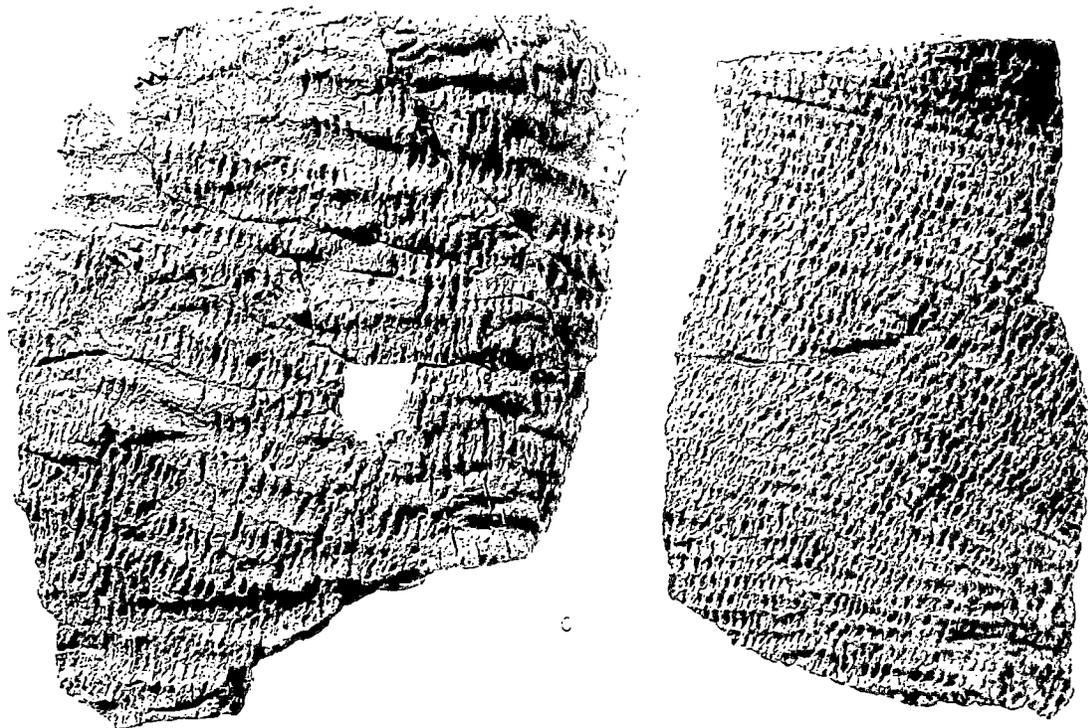
Plate 12

Row A, interior of Vincent Fabric Impressed type
rim sherds showing paddle impressions on
interior of rim.

Row B, exterior of Vincent Fabric Impressed type
rim sherds showing characteristic fabric.



A



C

1-1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25

Vincent Fabric Impressed Sherds

Plate 13

Large sherd of Vincent Fabric Impressed type found
with flexed burial No. 1 at the Thelma Site (Hx v8).



Large Sherd of Vincent Fabric Impressed Type

Plate 14

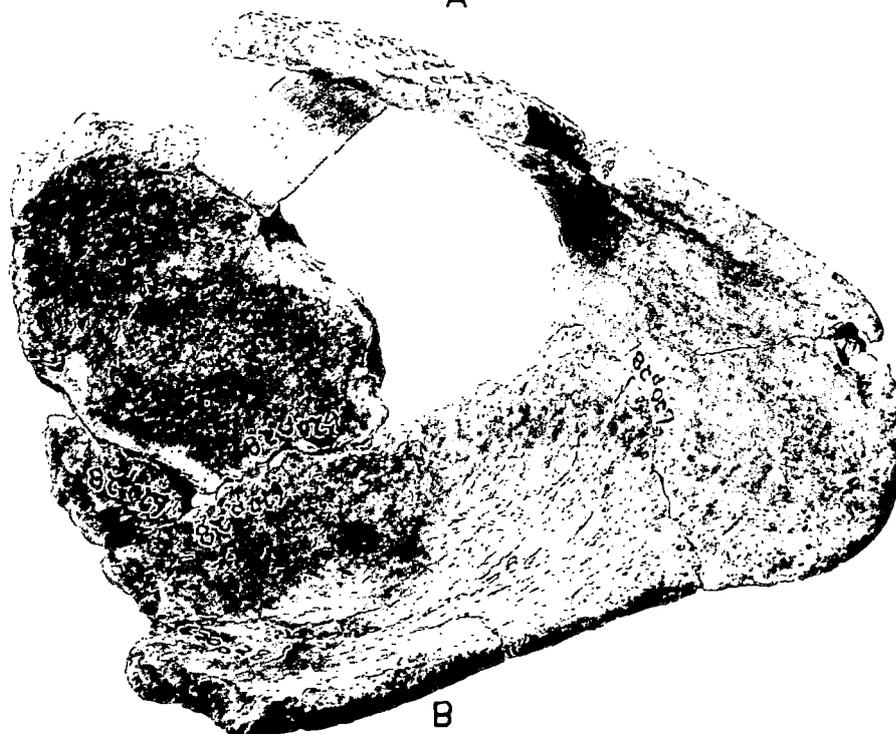
Miniature Vessel of Vincent Fabric Impressed Type

Row A, side view of miniature vessel of Vincent Fabric Impressed type. Possibly an imitation of a shell drinking cup. Catalog No. 620p28, Site No. Hx v8, Location Sq. 0, 6-12".

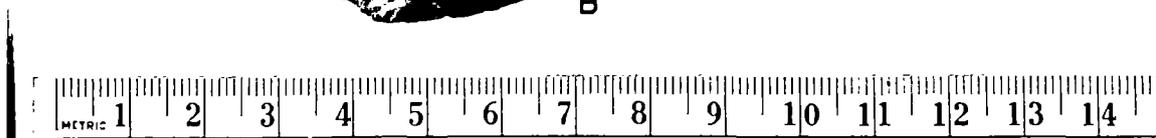
Row B, top view of same pot.



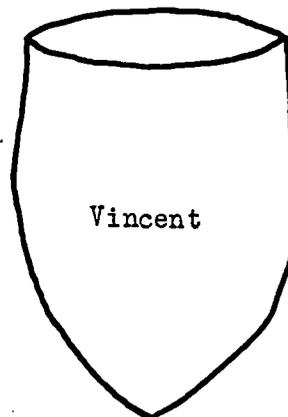
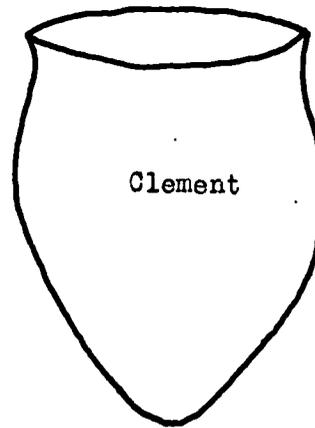
A



B



Miniature Vessel of Vincent Fabric Impressed Type



The Suggested Evolutionary Development of the Jar
Forms from Vincent to Gaston Types

Figure 8

Type I Cord-marked.

PASTE

Method of Manufacture: The body is built of annular segments, with well blended paste.

Temper: Fine, smooth, usually compact clay and temper mixture. When mica is present in the clay, the mixture is more porous.

Hardness: 3 to $3\frac{1}{2}$

Color: Grey to black, with some orange-tan. Interiors usually black to dark grey.

SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Impressed with a cord-wrapped paddle. The cord has a soft to medium-soft Z twist, $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 mm. in width. The parallel rows of cord markings are almost vertical to the rim. There is little overstepping or cross-stepping of the cord.

Interior: Tooled, varying from scraped with a serrated object, to semi-burnished with a polished stone or wooden tool. A few sherds have hand-smoothed interiors.

DECORATION

Lip: Smoothed with fingers with occasional notches made with the edge of a square cornered paddle.

Neck: Cord is occasionally smeared with diagonal finger streaks as decoration on the neck of the vessel.

FORM

Rim: Straight to flaring, with an occasional folded rim.

Lip: Rounded, but a few have notches around lip.

Body: Globular jars, with miniature forms. Oral diameter 9 to 19 cm. on basis of available sherds.

Base: Insufficient evidence.

Thickness: .5 to 1 cm. with miniature forms .3 cm.

Appendages: None

Type I Fabric Impressed.

PASTE

Method of Manufacture: Same as Type I Cord-marked.

Temper: Same as Type I Cord-marked.

Texture: Same as Type I Cord-marked

Hardness: 3 to $3\frac{1}{2}$

Color: More grey and orange-grey than Type I Cord-marked.

SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Impressed with a medium sized plaited fabric with a soft twist, close weft. The warp is

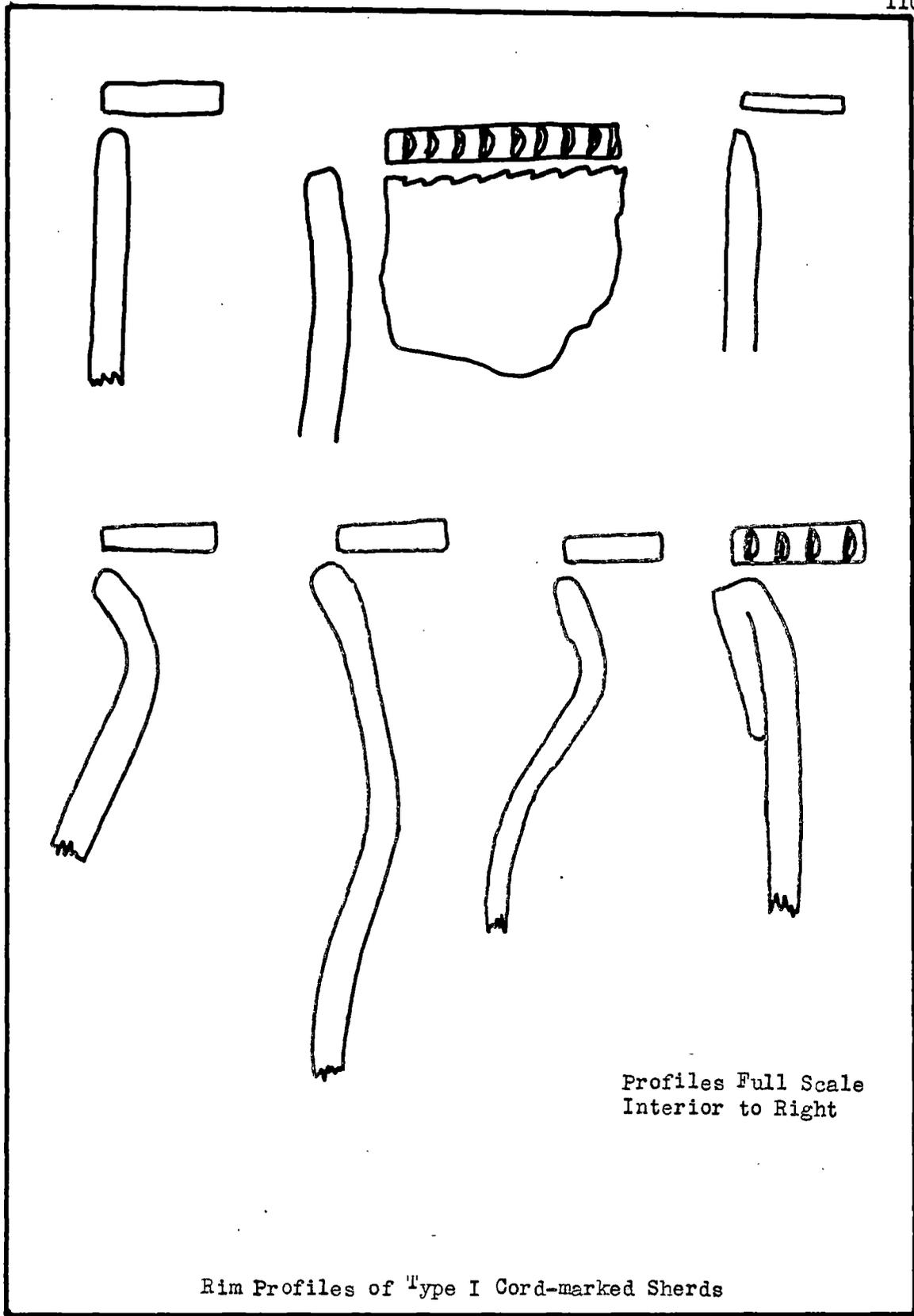


Figure 9

Plate 15

Type I Cord-marked sherds showing cord impressions and appearance typical of Clarksville Cord-marked sherds. This type is included in the Gaston Series.

Top row, right, interior of Type I Cord-marked sherd showing scraping.



8

Type I Cord-marked Sherds

Plate 15

from 3 to 5 mm., and the weft 1 to 2 mm.

Interior: Tooled, varying from scraped with a serrated object, to semi-burnished with polished stone, bone, or wooden tool. The tooling of the interior is a significant criterion for Type I Cord-marked and Fabric Impressed sherds.

DECORATION

Lip: Finger smoothed or notched with the edge of a square cornered paddle, rounded edge of paddle, or the edge of the fabric-wrapped paddle.

Neck: Occasional finger smears on area near neck of the vessel.

Rim: Interior occasionally paddled with clear impressions of the edge of the fabric-wrapped paddle.

FORM

Rim: Mostly straight, with some slightly flaring.

Lip: Rounded, except when notched or paddled.

Body: Globular jars, some with straight necks.

Base: Rounded

Thickness: 4 to 6 mm. Average 5 mm.

Appendages: None

PROBABLE RELATIONSHIPS OF TYPE I CORD AND FABRIC IMPRESSED

There is a similarity between this Type I

material and the Clarksville Series.¹⁶ With the limited number of sherds of this type present, however, nothing significant can be demonstrated. These types probably represent the Clarksville influence among the potters of the eastern Roanoke Basin. They fall chronologically and typologically within the Gaston Series.

Type II Cord-marked.

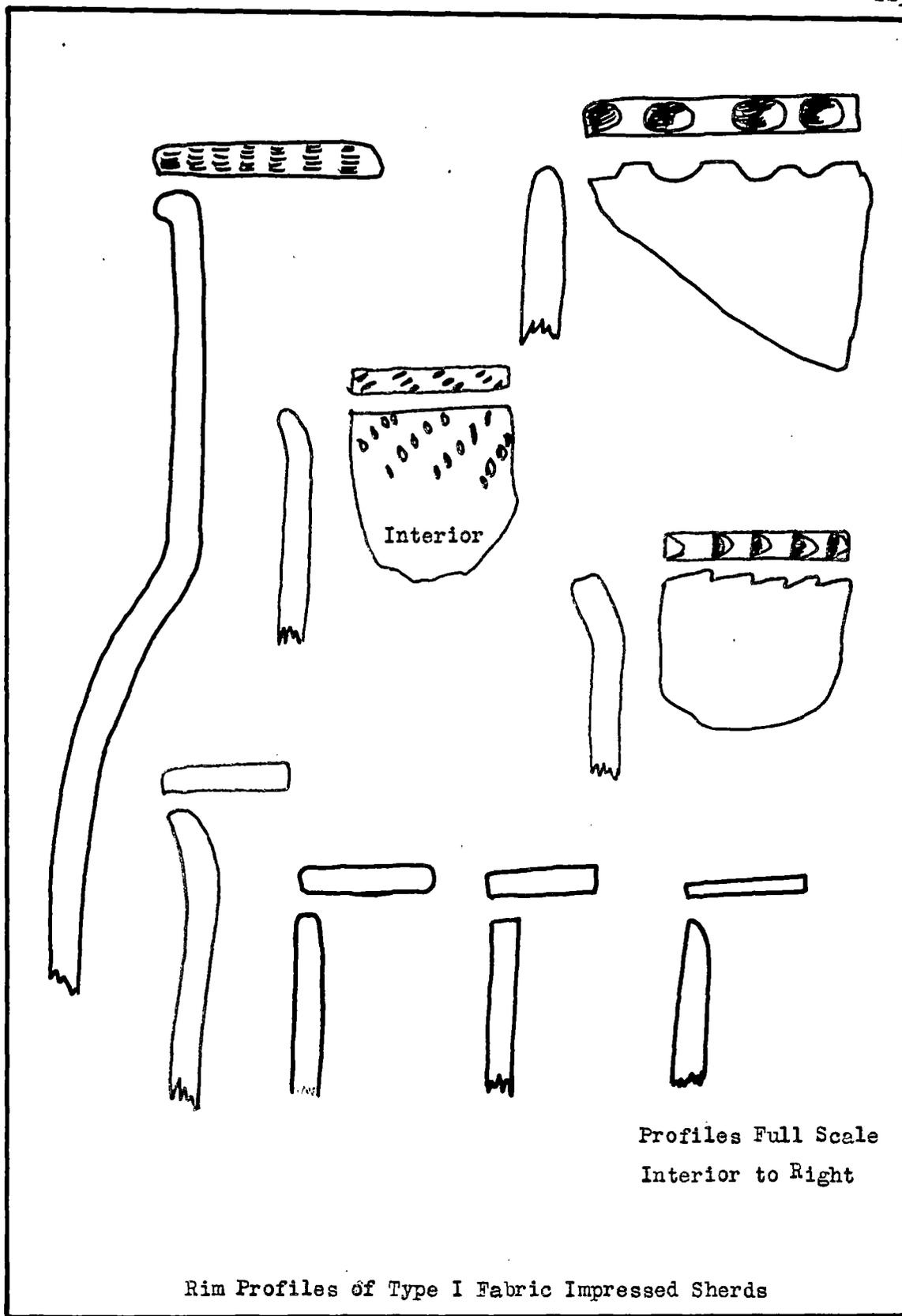
PASTE

Method of Manufacture: The body is composed of annular segments, well blended. The fractures do not occur along the coils.

Temper: High percentage of fine crushed quartz and sand, with an occasional large fragment of crushed quartz. A high percentage of golden mica particles in the paste gives a sparkling appearance to many of the sherds. This mica content is an important diagnostic feature of this type.

Texture: Smooth to gritty feeling sherds. The sherds

¹⁶Joffre Coe, personal interview, and described by Clifford Evans in "A Ceramic Study of Virginia Archaeology," Bureau of American Ethnology Bulletin 160 (Washington, D.C., 1955), p. 49.

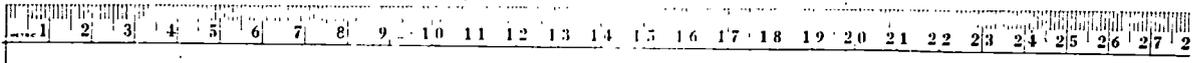
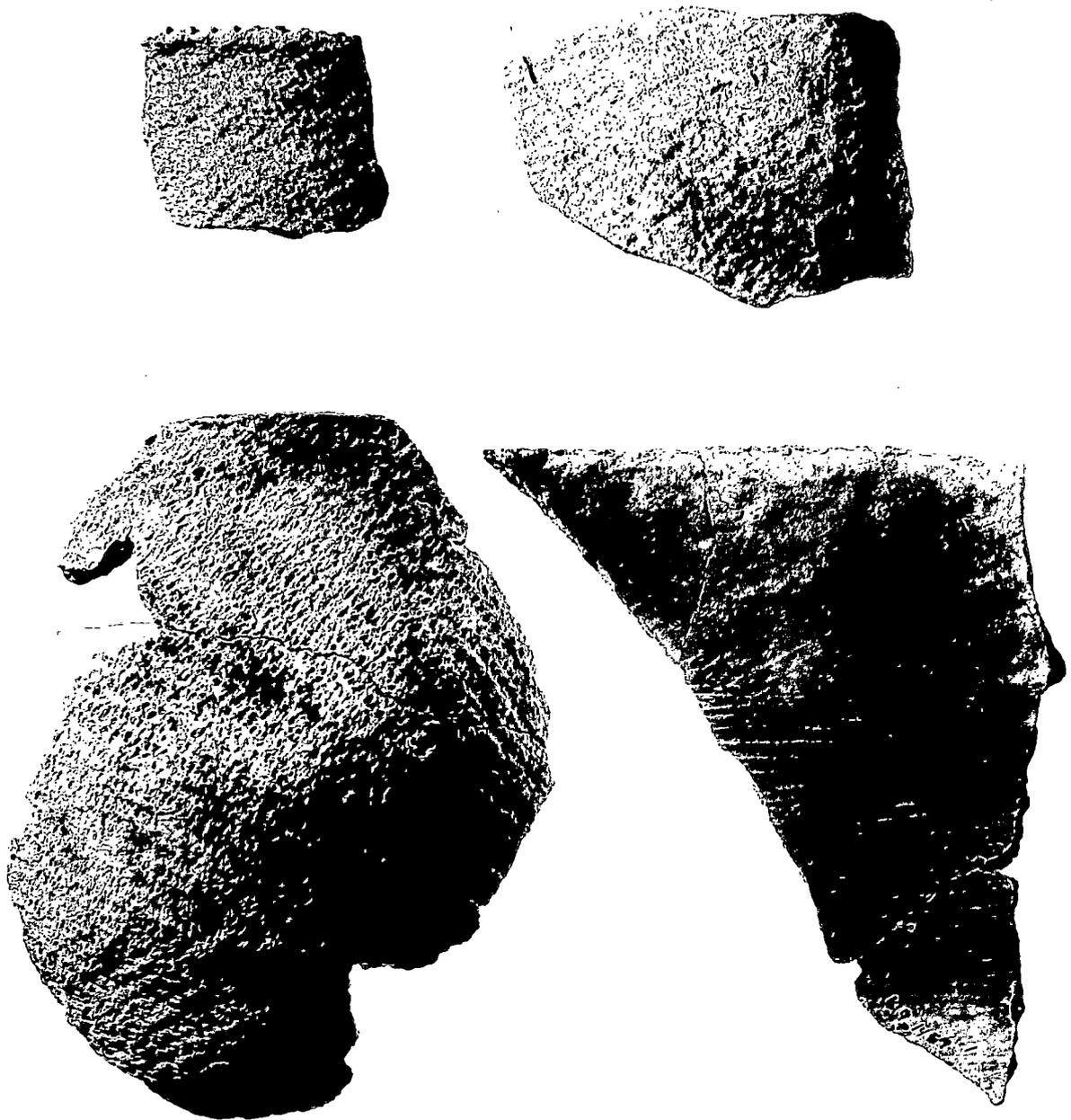


Rim Profiles of Type I Fabric Impressed Sherds

Figure 10

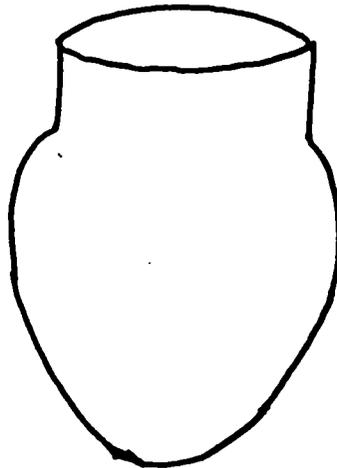
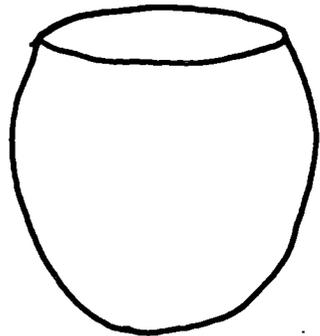
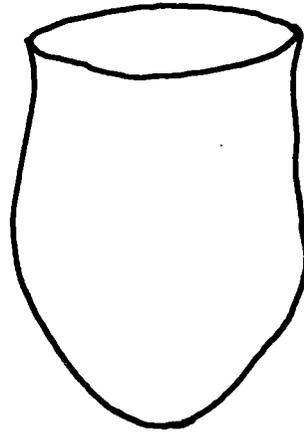
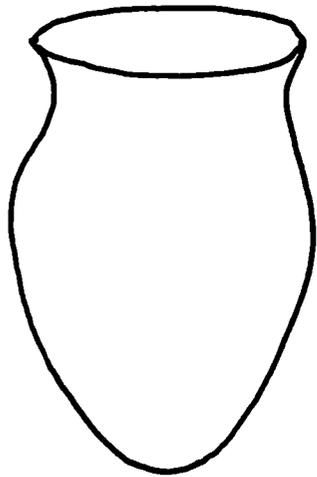
Plate 16

Type I Fabric Impressed sherds. Lower right, interior of rim sherd showing scraping. This type is included in the Gaston Series.



Type I Fabric Impressed Sherds

Plate 16



Suggested Vessel Forms of Type I Ceramics

Figure 11

tend to crumble when a small amount of pressure is applied to the edges.

Hardness: $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3

Color: Orange-tan to dark grey.

SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Impressed with a cord-wrapped paddle. The cord has a fine S twist 1 to 2 mm. in width. The parallel rows of cord marks are vertical or slightly diagonal to the rim. The width of the paddle on some sherds was from 4 to 5 cm.

Interior: Tooled, usually smooth, but some are hand smoothed.

DECORATION

Lip: Smoothed with fingers, but a few are finger smoothed.

Rim: Interior sometimes paddled with side of paddle.

FORM

Rim: Most are slightly flaring, but a few are straight.

Lip: Rounded, but a few are flattened with edge of paddle.

Body: Large globular jars.

Base: Insufficient evidence, probably rounded.

Thickness: 4 to 6 mm. As thick as 1.5 cm. near base
of some.

Appendages: None

Type II Fabric Impressed.

PASTE

Method of Manufacture: Same as Type II Cord-marked.

Temper: Same as Type II Cord-marked.

Texture: Same as Type II Cord-marked.

Hardness: $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3

Color: Same as Type II Cord-marked.

SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Impressed with a closely-woven fabric-wrapped
paddle. The warp is 2 to 3 mm. in width,
and the weft is 1 to 2 mm. in width.

Interior: Same as Type II Cord-marked.

DECORATION

Insufficient evidence.

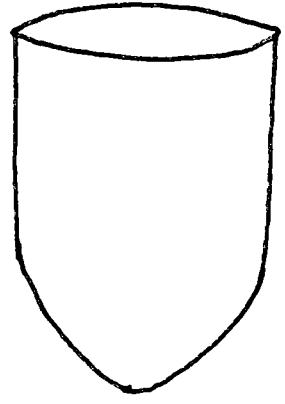
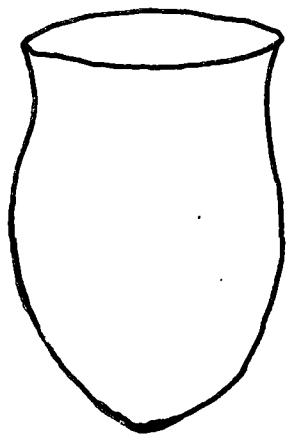
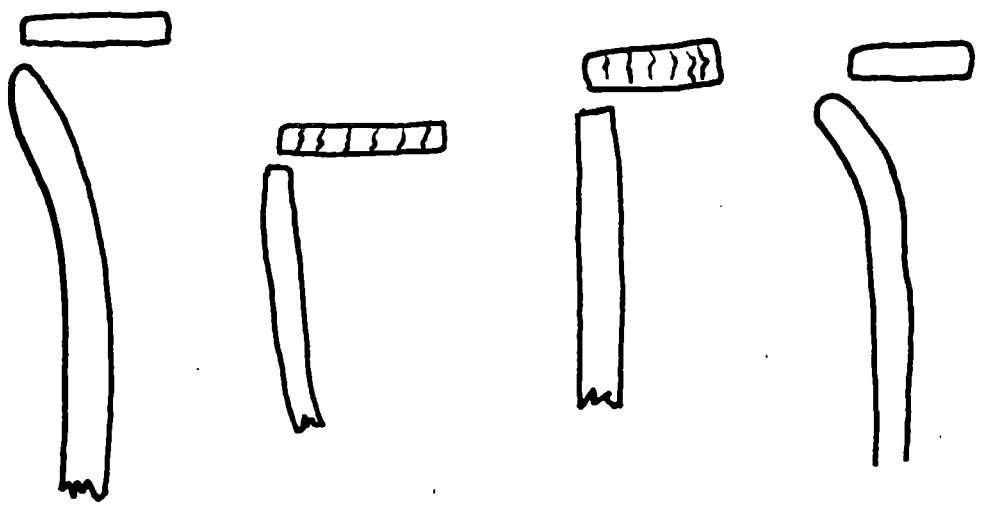
FORM

Insufficient evidence.

PROBABLE RELATIONSHIP OF TYPE II CORD AND FABRIC IMPRESSED

CERAMICS

These types are included in what Joffre Coe
has called the Roanoke Series, however, the
limiting of this type to sherds with a high



Profiles Full Scale
Interiors to Right

Rim Profiles and Suggested Vessel Form for
Type II Ceramics

Figure 12

mica content makes it a more limited type than Coe's Roanoke material.¹⁷ This Type II material is associated with the Clement Series and probably represents a ceramic influence from the Clarksville, Virginia, area toward the end of the popularity of the Clement type and during the early Gaston ceramic period.

Net I (Open, woven, net-like fabric).

PASTE

Method of Manufacture: Body built of annular segments.

Temper: Sand, varying from a small amount to a high ratio of sand to clay.

Texture: Porous, crumbly, easily broken, gritty to the feel, erode easily.

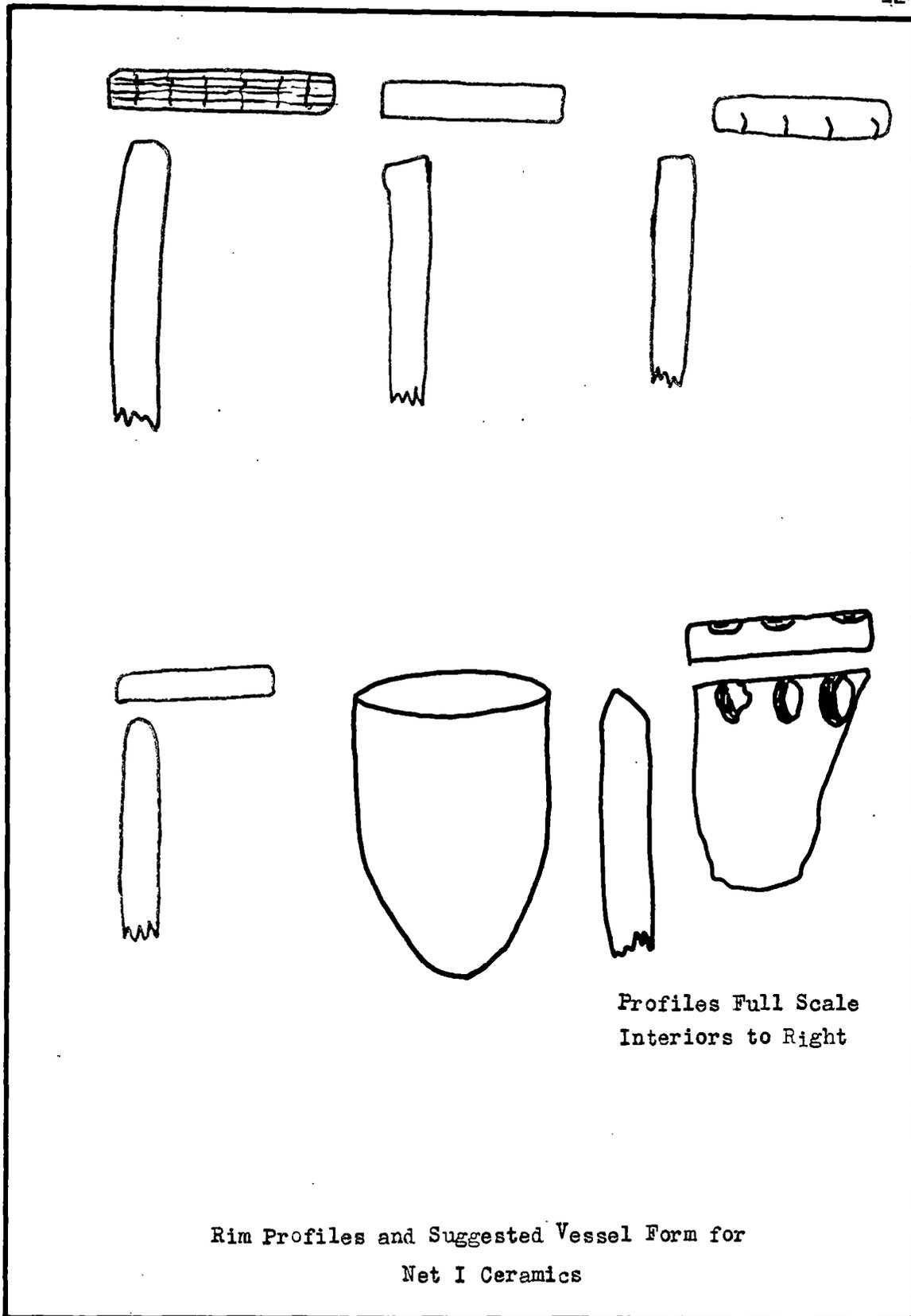
Hardness: Soft, 2 to 2½.

Color: Most are orange to orange-grey

SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Impressed with an open, woven, net-like fabric wrapped around a paddle. Warp and weft cord of medium twist, with distance between the warp cords of 5 mm. to 1 cm., and between the weft cords, of 2 to 3 mm.

¹⁷Joffre Coe, personal communication.



Profiles Full Scale
Interiors to Right

Rim Profiles and Suggested Vessel Form for
Net I Ceramics

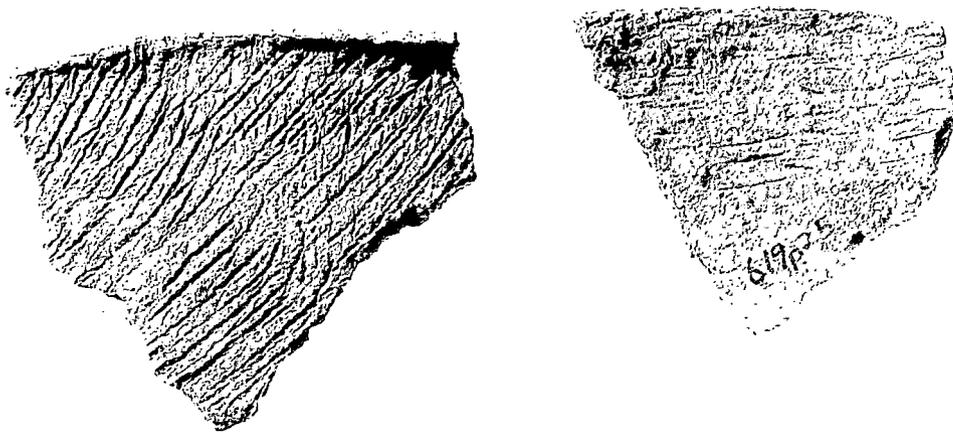
Figure 13

Plate 17

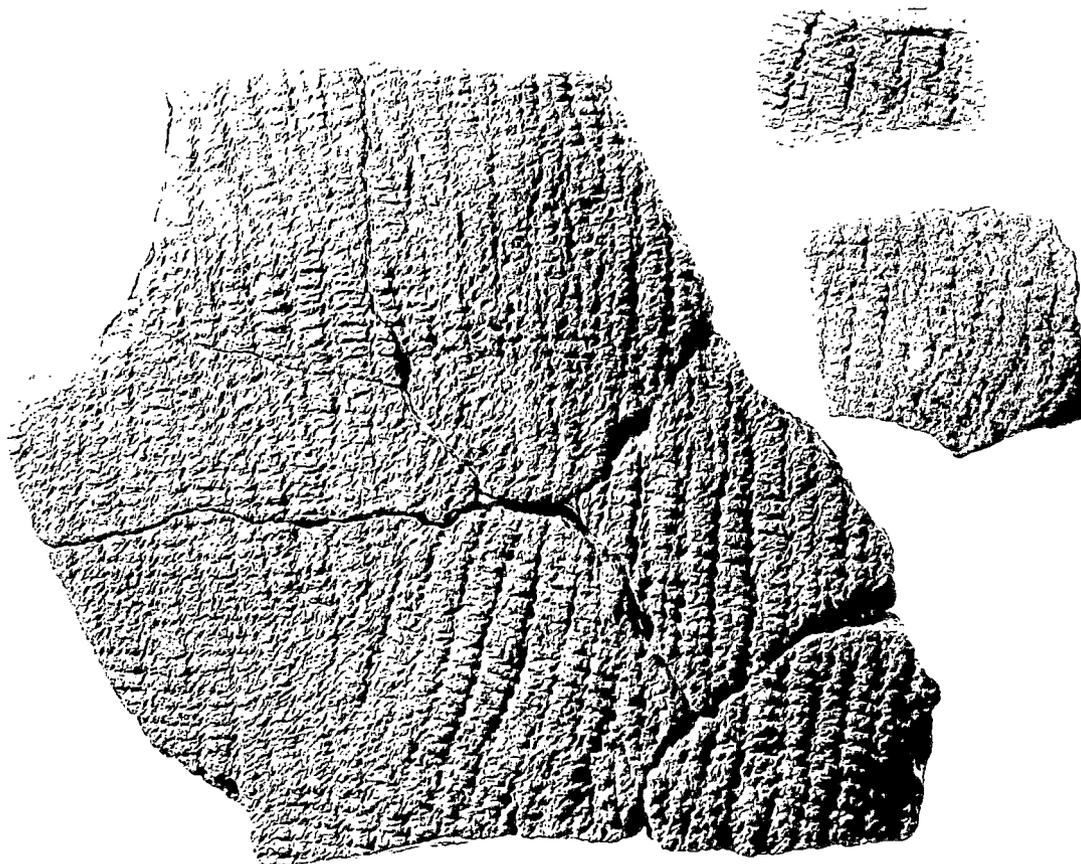
Row A, left, Type II Cord-marked rim

Row A, right, Type II Cord-marked rim, interior

Row B, Type Net I sherds



A



B



Type II Cord-marked and Net I Sherds

Plate 17

This wide spacing between the warp cords was the main criterion for this distinctive net-fabric type.

Interior: Finished with hand swipings.

DECORATION

Lip: The lip was almost always finished with paddlings of the net-wrapped paddle. Finger smoothing, finger pinching, and fingernail punctations around the lip are also present on many sherds.

Neck: None

FORM

Rim: Straight

Lip: Rounded to flattened.

Body: Straight sided jars.

Base: Insufficient evidence.

Thickness: 6 mm. to 1.1 cm.

Appendages: None

Net II.

PASTE

Method of Manufacture: Same as Net I, coil fractures are clean, and appear on large number of sherds.

Temper: Fine to medium sand, varying from small to

large amounts in relation to the clay.

Texture: Smoother than Net I sherds, though some have a gritty feel.

Hardness: Harder, as a rule, than Net I, though some are soft as 2. Most are $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3.

Color: Orange to grey.

SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Impressed with a paddle wrapped with knotted net with distance between mesh of 3 mm. to 1 cm. A small amount of looped net is also included in this type.

Interior: Usually hand smoothed, and a few have net impressions inside the rim.

DECORATION

Lip: All lips are impressed with the net impression except a very few that are hand smoothed. There is an occasional punctated lip.

Neck: None

Rim: None as a rule, however, one rim had incising of two parallel lines 5 mm. apart, 8 mm. below the lip, and on the interior there was an incised line 1 mm. deep at 1 cm. below the lip (See Figure 14).

FORM

Rim: Straight.

Lip: Rounded to flattened.
Body: Straight sided jars.
Base: Insufficient evidence, probably rounded.
Thickness: 7 mm. to 1 cm.
Appendages: None

PROBABLE RELATIONSHIP OF THE NET IMPRESSED TYPES

Due to the fairly small sample of the net types, their chronological and areal position is not as clear as could be desired. However, the association of Net Impressed sherds in pits with a high percentage of Clement Series sherds, indicates that Net Impressed pottery probably reached its peak of popularity along with the Clement Series ceramics. It was never a major ceramic type in the basin.

Further research will no doubt refine the net impressed ceramic material described here, into several different types, but on the basis of the evidence found during this survey, a more refined picture could not be produced. However, charcoal from two features at the Gaston site was analyzed for a carbon-14 date, and the results are discussed in the section of this report on radiocarbon dates.

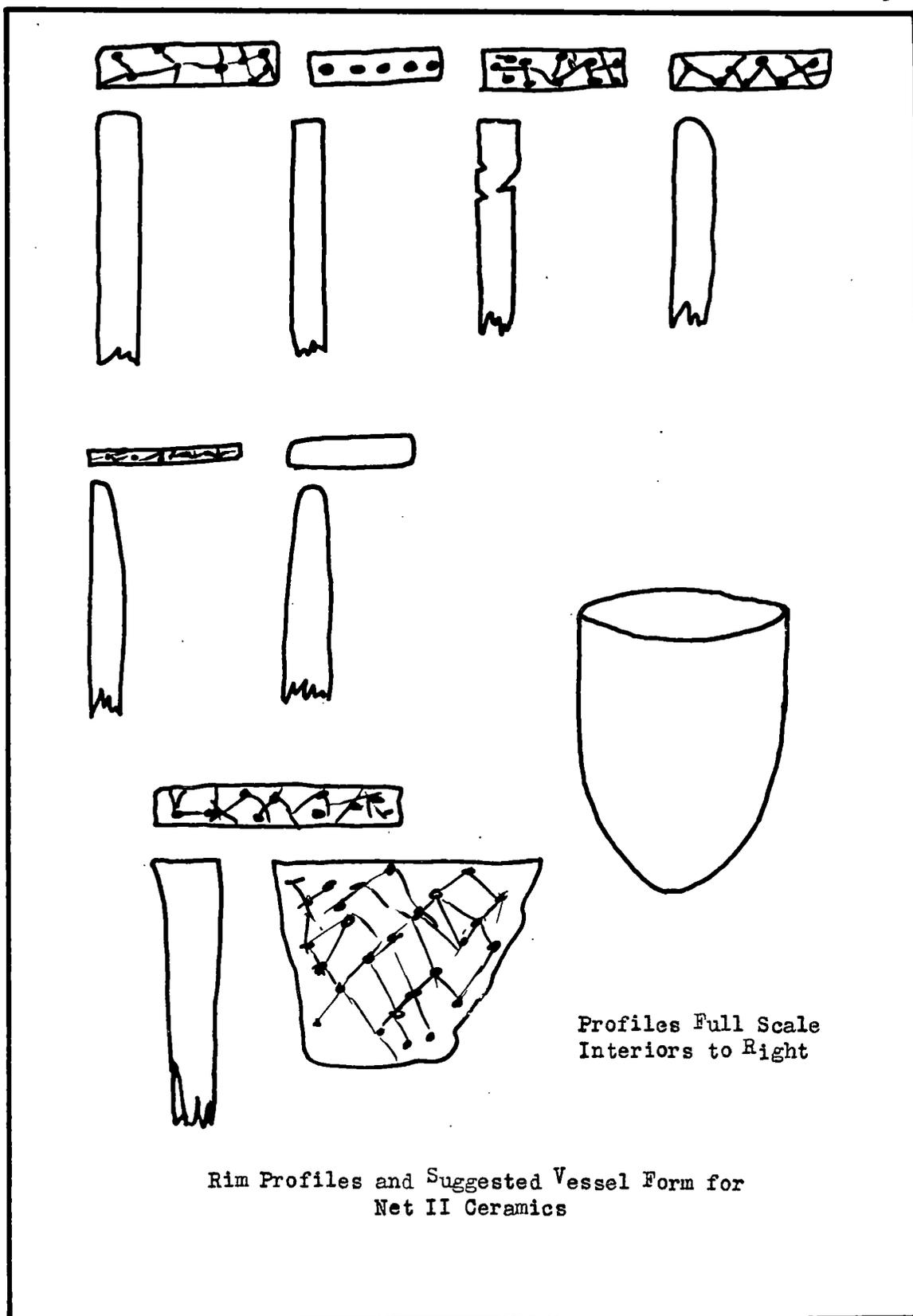
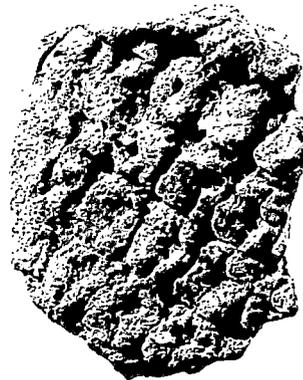
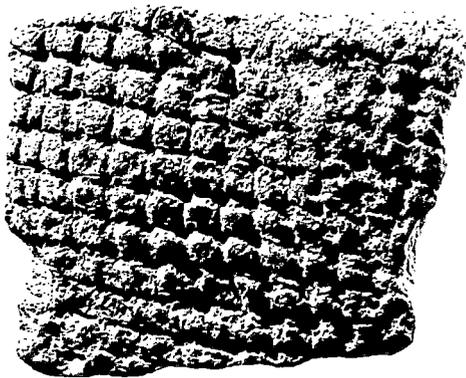
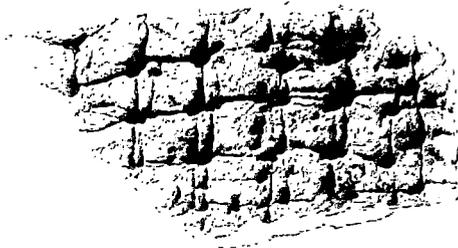
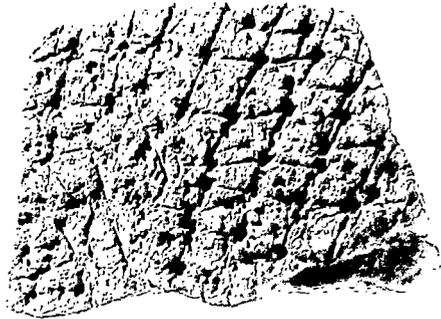
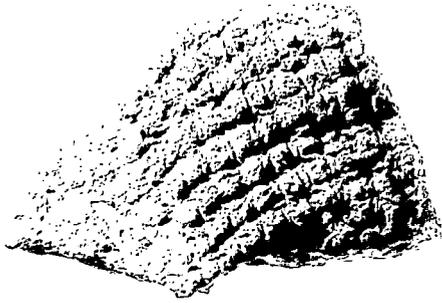


Figure 14



Net Impressed Rim Sherds of the Net II Type

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 1

Plain.

PASTE

Method of Manufacture: Annular segments throughout the body.

Temper: Fine particles of sand with occasional large fragments of crushed quartz.

Texture: Smooth, compact.

Hardness: $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3

Color: Grey to reddish tan.

SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Hand smoothed with occasional tooled smooth surface.

Interior: Hand smoothed.

DECORATION

Lip: None

Neck: None

FORM

Rim: Straight

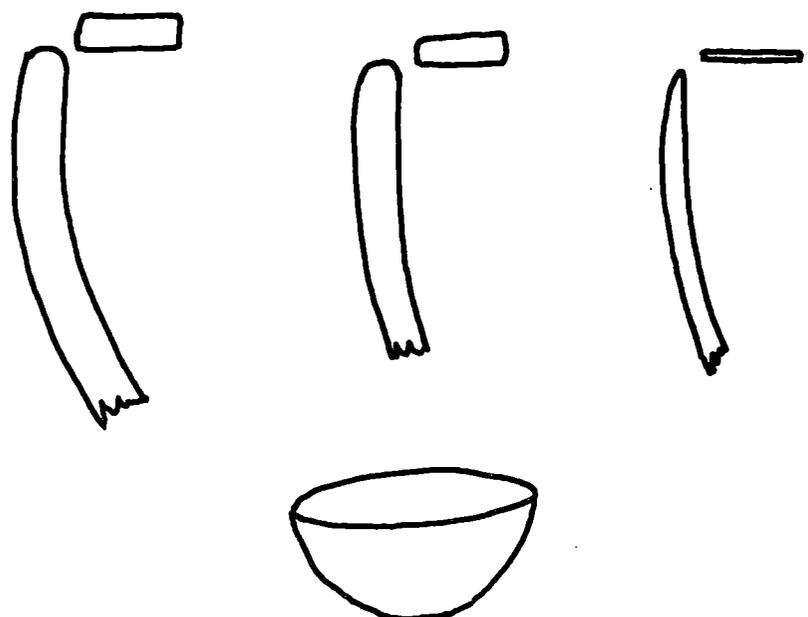
Lip: Rounded or thinned.

Body: Bowls

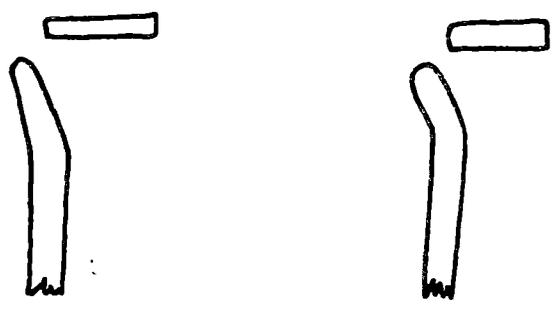
Base: Insufficient evidence, probably round.

Thickness: 3 to 9 mm.

Appendages: None



Rim Profiles and Suggested Vessel Form for Plain Type Ceramics



Corncob Impressed

Chickahominy Fabric Impressed

Profiles Full Scale
Interiors to Right

Rim Profiles and Suggested Vessel Form for Plain Type Ceramics,
and Rim Profiles for Corncob and Chickahominy Ceramics

Figure 15

Corncob Impressed.

PASTE

Method of Manufacture: Well blended annular segments.

Fractures usually not along the coil.

Temper: Very fine sand is visible in some sherds,
but most appear not to have been tempered.

Texture: Smooth, very compact sherds.

Hardness: 3 to $3\frac{1}{2}$

Color: Tan to gray.

SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Impressed with a corncob rolled over the
surface.

Interior: Tooled with a smooth object.

DECORATION

Lip: Smoothed with fingers.

Neck: None

FORM

Rim: Slightly flaring.

Lip: Rounded and thinned with fingers.

Body: Insufficient evidence

Base: Insufficient evidence.

Thickness: 4 to 6 mm.

Appendages: None

Check Stamped.

PASTE

Method of Manufacture: No coil fractures visible.

Temper: High percentage of medium to large crushed quartz, 2 to 5 mm.

Texture: Smooth, compact.

Hardness: Hard, 3 to $3\frac{1}{2}$.

Color: Gray to orange-gray.

SURFACE FINISH

Exterior: Paddled with a carved paddle with a check design. The raised lands intersect to form rectangles or squares. The checks vary in size from 5 to 8 mm., and the lands from 1 to 3 mm. in width.

Interior: Hand smoothed.

DECORATION

Insufficient evidence.

FORM

Insufficient evidence.

Thickness: 4 to 7 mm.

Appendages: None

PROBABLE RELATIONSHIP OF PLAIN, CORNCOB, AND CHECK STAMPED
TYPES

Because of the meager amount of information available on these types, they are lumped

together in this section. The Plain type appears to be related to the Gaston material typologically, however, it was found on a large number of sites, and in pits not associated with Gaston sherds.

The Corncob Impressed type appeared in very small amounts, and is thought to appear at the Historic time period.¹⁸ This is strengthened by the fact that typologically it is related to the Gaston type.

The Check Stamped sherds were found in very small amounts in the survey. The Hillsboro Focus contained check-stamped material in some quantity, and the check-stamped sherds from the Roanoke Basin may be contemporary with the Hillsboro occupation by the Occaneechee during 1700-1725.¹⁹ They definitely are associated with the Gaston type ceramics, and would be included in the Gaston Series.

¹⁸Joffre Coe and Ernest Lewis, "Certain Eastern Siouan Pottery Types," Prehistoric Pottery of the Eastern United States, James B. Griffin, (ed.) (University of Michigan: 1952), not paged.

¹⁹Joffre Coe, "The Cultural Sequence of the Carolina Piedmont," Archaeology of Eastern United States, James B. Griffin (ed.), (Chicago: 1952), p. 310.

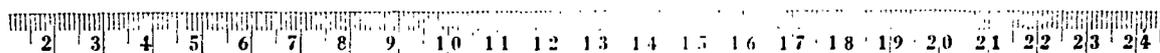
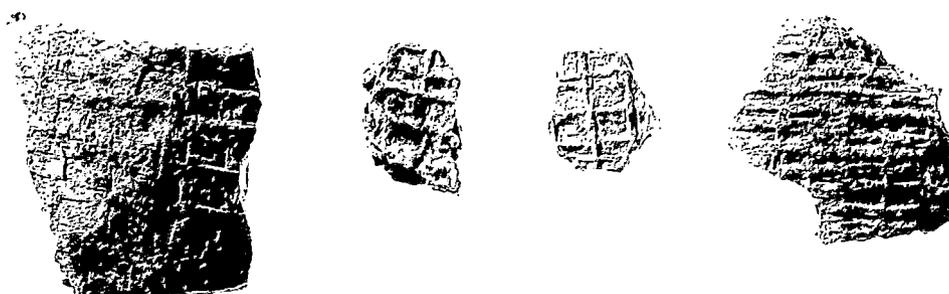
Plate 19

Row A, sherds of the Plain Type

Row B, Corncob Impressed sherds

Row C, Check Stamped sherds

Row D, Chickahominy Fabric Impressed



Plain, Corncob Impressed, Check Stamped, and Chickahominy Fabric Sherds

Chickahominy Fabric Impressed. Two features (38 and 158) at the Gaston Site contained fabric-impressed shell tempered sherds, the only place the type was found in the basin. The name Chickahominy Fabric Impressed was assigned to this type since Clifford Evans had described such a type for the Coastal Virginia Ceramic Area.²⁰ The type described by Evans will not be repeated here, because basically the shell tempered sherds found at the Gaston Site are the same type as Type I Fabric Impressed, described earlier in this report, the only difference being the shell tempering. These sherds appear to be associated with the Clement and Type I Fabric Impressed types. Type I Fabric Impressed, and the sherds called Chickahominy Fabric Impressed are typologically related to the Clarksville Ceramics.

From this information, plus the fact that shell-tempered pottery appears as the latest ceramic type in the coastal area,²¹ it appears that the shell tempered sherds found at the Gaston Site are a result of ceramic influences from the piedmont Siouan area, and also from the coastal Algonquian area, probably during the early historic time period. It is interesting to note (Fig. 37), however, that

²⁰Evans, op. cit., p. 44.

²¹Ibid., p. 94.

no Gaston pottery was found in these two pits containing shell-tempered sherds.

Hatteras Simple Stamped. This name was given to one simple-stamped, shell tempered sherd found on the surface at site Np v46 (Fig. 16). The type was originally described by Margaret C. Blaker, and called by her Roanoke Simple Stamped.²² Later, Evans included the type in his Chickahominy Series.²³ The name Hatteras Simple Stamped is suggested for this type, to avoid a mistaken association with the Roanoke River ceramics. The Hatteras and outer banks coastal area in North Carolina and Virginia appears to be the area of concentration for this type.²⁴ Therefore, it is felt that the Hatteras name for the type is more appropriate than Roanoke.

Few profound conclusions can be made on the basis of one sherd, however, it should probably be equated with the same time period as the Gaston ceramics, and no doubt represents influence of some small degree from the coastal Algonquin area.

²²Margaret C. Blaker, "Roanoke Simple Stamped," American Antiquity, Vol. XVII, No. 3 (January, 1952), p. 257.

²³Evans, op. cit., p. 47.

²⁴Blaker, op. cit., p. 258.

III. THE METHOD ESTABLISHING THE PROJECTILE POINT AND BLADE TYPES

The method used to establish the projectile point and blade types was much the same as that used to establish the ceramic types. The site with a wide variety of projectile point shapes and sizes was examined and the projectile points and blades placed into groups according to their observable physical characteristics. These separate groups or tentative types were assigned a letter, and referred to by this letter on the analysis cards. Later when the analysis was complete, certain types that could be recognized were given the names by which they are already known. The types whose stratigraphic relationship was established in this survey, were assigned names relating to the locality in which they were found. Types whose stratigraphic and cultural association was not conclusive enough to warrant giving them a type name, were called by their descriptive name. Large Triangle, and Crude Triangle types are examples. Large Oval Blade and Small Oval Blade are exceptions to this rule because of their stratigraphic association with named projectile point types, however, their descriptive name was retained. The Large Oval Blade type could be called Savannah River Oval Blade, and the Small Oval Blade could be called the Halifax Oval Blade because of their

association with these projectile points.

In typing the projectile points and blades, the shape was the primary criterion used, with size being considered where the range was wide enough to indicate that it may be an important variable. The triangle type points were so typed. There was a small equalateral triangle that was kept as a type, larger and more isosceles triangles were kept as another type, and the largest triangles as another. Crude, thick triangles were kept as a separate type, but their cultural significance is not evident, except that they probably are points whose material caused them to fail to chip properly during the manufacture of one of the triangle types.

There is a small stemmed point that was associated with the Vincent Series ceramics at the Thelma Site (Hx v8), and is referred to in this study as Thelma Small Stemmed. This is the only stemmed projectile point that is associated with ceramic materials in this survey, all other ceramic associated points being triangular. All stemmed projectile points other than the small Thelma type, are without a doubt pre-ceramic.

The pre-ceramic stemmed type varied considerably in size, and was originally separated into two groups. These are referred to in this report as Large Savannah River, and Small Savannah River types, but in some charts and tables

where they occurred stratigraphically together, they are referred to as the Savannah River type.²⁵

Other types described are: a side-notched point that occurred stratigraphically below the Savannah River types, and called the Halifax point; a long, thick, stemless point found stratigraphically below the Halifax and Savannah River types is called the Guilford point.²⁶ Types not fitting one of these categories were placed in the type "Other".

These types constitute the major projectile point types in the present survey. The material used in the manufacture of the points was noted on the analysis cards. These materials are: slate, quartzite, white quartz, crystal quartz, felsite, and diorite. Only two points were found that were made of chert. Both were triangular in type, but one was typed as "Other" because of its extremely concave base (Plate 25a). Tables showing the projectile point types, and the relationship to the material used, are

²⁵William H. Clafflin, Jr., "The Stalling's Island Mound, Columbia County, Georgia," Papers of the Peabody Museum of American Archaeology and Ethnology, Vol. XIV, No.1 (Cambridge: 1931), and Charles H. Fairbanks, "The Taxonomic Position of Stalling's Island, Georgia," American Antiquity, Vol. XI, No.4, (Menasha: 1942), pp. 223-231, and its North Carolina context by Joffre Coe, op. cit., p. 305.

²⁶Coe, op. cit., p. 304.

seen in Table VI, XII and Figure 40.

In the pre-ceramic levels at the Gaston site, all chips were kept, and a count of these was made according to material. A table showing the relationship between the chip material and the material used in the points found in the pre-ceramic levels, is shown in Figure 40. A more detailed discussion of these tables occurs elsewhere in this study.

The projectile point analysis was kept on the back of the ceramic analysis cards in order to facilitate comparison with ceramic material. After all sites, features, and levels had been examined for projectile point types, the information was compiled into percentage relationships. The results of the count and the percentage of various types is shown in tables II-V, and IX-XII. A stratigraphic picture of the relationship of the various types at the Gaston site is seen in Figure 39.

A description of the projectile point and blade types encountered in this survey follows.

IV. DESCRIPTION OF THE PROJECTILE POINT AND BLADE TYPES

Clarksville²⁷

²⁷C. G. Holland in "An Analysis of Projectile Points and Large Blades," Bureau of American Ethnology Bulletin 160 (Washington, D.C., 1955), p. 166, and called by him, "Small Triangular".

Overall length: Range, 10-20 mm.; majority, 12-15 mm.

Basal width: Range, 10-16 mm.; majority, 12-14 mm.

Blade: Most are equilateral triangles, but a few are isosceles. Several specimens show serrated edges. There are no incurvate sides, but a few specimens show a slight excurvate trend. The angles tend to be acute rather than rounded.

Stem: None

Base: Predominately straight, but a few specimens have a slightly incurvate base.

Diagnostic features: This type constitutes the smallest type examined in the survey. Their diminutive size and form distinguished them from the other triangular forms.

Technique of manufacture: Generally well made by careful, even pressure flaking. Usually symmetrical, but a few are asymmetrical.

Type of rock: Mostly white quartz, but slate, crystal quartz, and quartzite occasionally occur.

Comments: This type is Holland's Type A.²⁸ The form used for these type descriptions was the same used by Holland in his projectile point analysis. The Clarksville name was suggested

²⁸Ibid., p. 166.

by Joffre Coe, and was described by him in 1952.²⁹

Roanoke

Overall Length: Range, 21-30 mm.; majority, 25-28 mm.

Basal width: Range, 18-28 mm.; majority, 21-25 mm.

Blade: Most are isosceles triangles, with a few that are equilateral. Most have straight sides, but a few are incurvate, and a few are serrated.

Stem: None

Base: Slightly concave bases appear on most specimens, but a few have straight bases.

Diagnostic features: Thin, usually well made points with straight to slightly incurvate sides.

Technique of manufacture: Well made pressure-flaked points.

Type of rock: Mostly white quartz and slate. Some are of quartzite, crystal quartz, and felsite. One was of chert, being one of two points of this material found in the survey.

Comment: The type name was suggested by Joffre Coe, based on a 1938 survey of the Clarksville,

²⁹Joffre L. Coe, "The Cultural Sequence of the Carolina Piedmont," Archaeology of Eastern United States, James B. Griffin (ed.) (Chicago, 1952), p. 311.

Virginia, area.³⁰ Some of the smaller and more equilateral points in this type may belong within the Clarksville type since there is a blending of the Clarksville with the Roanoke type.

Large Triangle.

Overall length: Range, 40-60 mm.; majority, 43-50 mm.

Basal width: Range, 28-34 mm.; majority, 29-32 mm.

Blade: Large straight sided isosceles triangle with straight to deeply concave bases.

Stem: None

Base: Straight to deeply concave.

Diagnostic features: Large triangular point with straight sides and straight to concave bases. Thicker than Roanoke type.

Technique of manufacture: Well made pressure flaked points, though not so well chipped as the majority of Roanoke points.

Type of rock: Most are of slate followed by white quartz and quartzite.

Comment: Largest of triangular type points. This type can be considered as a variation within the

³⁰Coe, personal communication.

Roanoke type, representing the upper size range of the Roanoke type.

Crude Triangle.

Overall length: Range; 25-40 mm.

Basal width: Range, 27-35 mm.

Blade: Thick triangular artifacts, some as thick as they are broad.

Stem: None

Base: Straight, concave or convex.

Diagnostic features: Crude, thick, triangles.

Technique of manufacture: More frequent percussion marks and large flaking scars on this type than on the other triangular types. Fine pressure flaking absent.

Type of rock: White quartz and slate material predominates with one each of quartzite and crystal quartz.

Comment: This type corresponds to Holland's Type D in his analysis of Virginia projectile point and blade types, and can be considered as crude varieties of the Roanoke type.³¹

³¹Holland, op. cit., p. 167.

Plate 20

Triangle Projectile Point Types

Row A, Clarksville projectile points.

Catalog Nos.	Site	Location
619a2	Hx v7	Surface
619a2	"	"
619a305	"	Sq. 45R5, 12-15
619a305	"	"
619a368	"	Sq. 50R5 0-12"
619a2	"	Surface
619a2	"	"
619a2	"	"

Row B, Roanoke projectile points.

Catalog Nos.	Site	Location
619a2	Hx v7	Surface
619a247	"	Sq. 35R85, 9-19"
651a2	Np v29	Surface
619a724	Hx v7	Sq. 35R95, Fea. 8
619a2	"	Surface

Row C, Large Triangle projectile points.

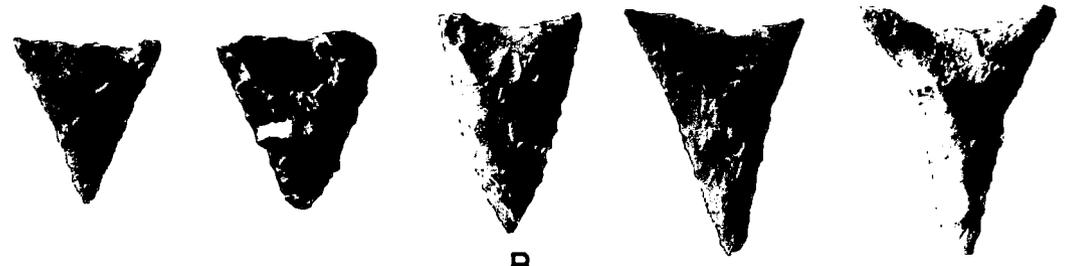
668a3	Np v46	Surface
619a2	Hx v7	"
619a247	"	Sq. 35R85, 9-19"
619a1215	"	Sq. -25R230, Fea. 126

Row D, Crude Triangle projectile points.

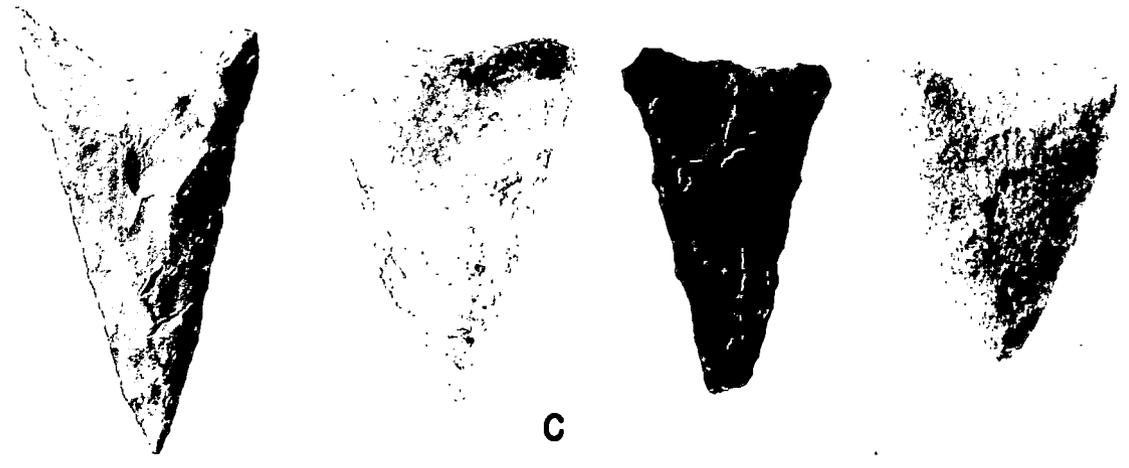
619a23	Hx v7	After scraper
619a28	"	" "
619a28	"	" "
619a28	"	" "



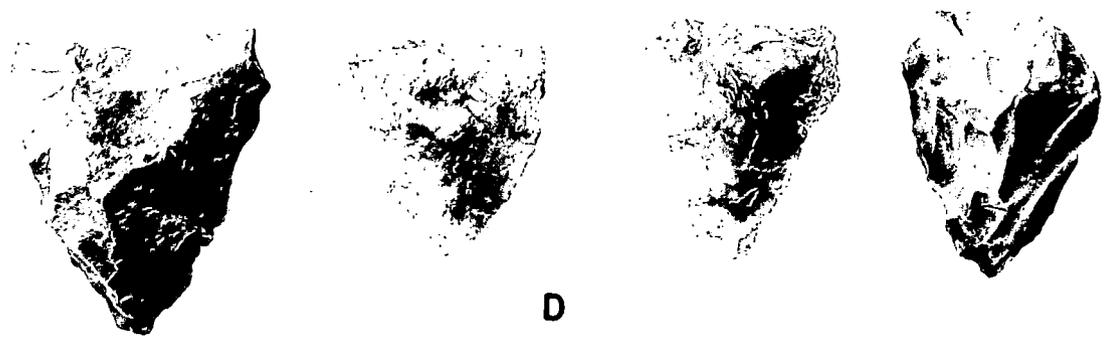
A



B



C



D



Triangle Projectile Point Types

Theлма

Overall length: Range, 27-41 mm.; majority, 33-37 mm.

Shoulder width: Range, 16-21 mm.; majority, 17-20 mm.

Blade: Triangaloid with straight to slightly excurvate sides. The shoulder angle is usually obtuse.

Stem: Width 6-13 mm.; majority 10-13 mm. Length 5-8 mm. Angle between stem and blade usually obtuse, seldom approaching a right angle. Sides usually paralleling each other.

Base: Occasionally the base may extend beyond the side of the stem giving a notched appearance to the stem. Base is usually straight.

Diagnostic features: Small, stemmed, basically trianguloid shaped blade.

Technique of manufacture: Pressure flaking with some marks of percussion showing occasionally. Flaking good to poor depending upon the type of material used. White quartz points usually not as well made as those of slate.

Type of rock: Slate and white quartz predominate with a few of quartzite and felsite.

Comment: Over half the points of this type were found at the Theлма site (Hx v8). This type is

associated with the Vincent Series Ceramics and may represent a transition type from the stemmed, Archaic projectile points to the triangle Roanoke type arrowhead.

Morrow Mountain.

Overall length: Range, 34-55 mm.

Shoulder width: Range, 15-20 mm.

Blade: Trianguloid. Shoulder rounded or angular.
Sides straight to slightly convex.

Stem: Pointed, giving it a triangle shape, with the base near the blade. Length varies from 9-20 mm.

Base: Pointed. See stem.

Diagnostic features: Triangle point with pointed stem.

Technique of manufacture: Pressure flaked.

Type of rock: Mostly slate with some white quartz.

Comment: This is not a significant type in this study since most of the points were found in the surface survey and excavation did not reveal its stratigraphic position. Joffre Coe has located it in a stratigraphic context that is definitely pre-ceramic. He has divided the type into Morrow Mountain I and Morrow Mountain II.

It was first described by him in 1952,³² along with the Guilford Focus, but since that time it has been definitely determined through stratigraphic tests, that the Morrow Mountain types represent an earlier cultural assemblage than the Guilford.³³

Small Savannah River.

Overall length: Range, 45-65 mm.; majority, 45-55 mm.

Shoulder width: Range, 21-33 mm.; majority, 20-28 mm.

Blade: Trianguloid with sides straight to slightly excurvate. Shoulders rounded to angular.

Thickness at shoulders varies from 8-14 mm.

Stem: Length varies from 8-12 mm.; width, 14-20 mm. Angle between stem and blade varies from right angle to an obtuse curve. The stem is frequently to one side of the point causing the stem on that side to form an almost continuous excurvate line with the blade. On other points the stem is in the center of the blade. The sides are often parallel.

³²Coe, op. cit., p. 304.

³³Coe, personal communication.

Plate 21

Projectile Point Types

Row A, Thelma Small Stemmed projectile point.

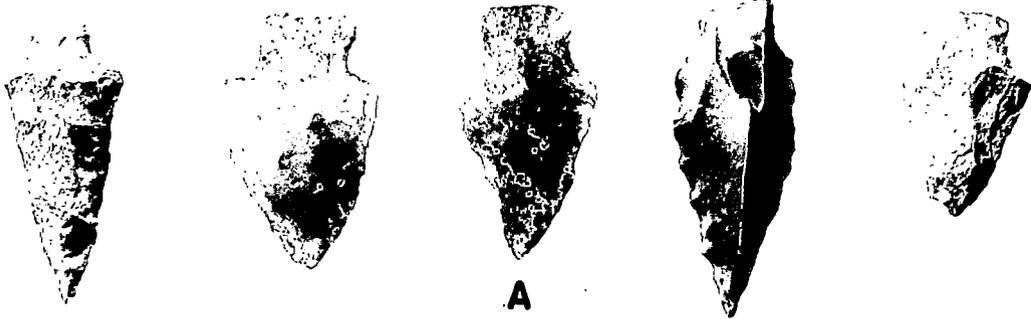
Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a44	Hxv7	Bank at 60R5
620a44	Hxv8	Sq.25, 6-12"
620a44	"	" "
620a44	"	" "
620a51	"	Sq.25, 12-18"

Row B, Projectile points included in "Other" category.

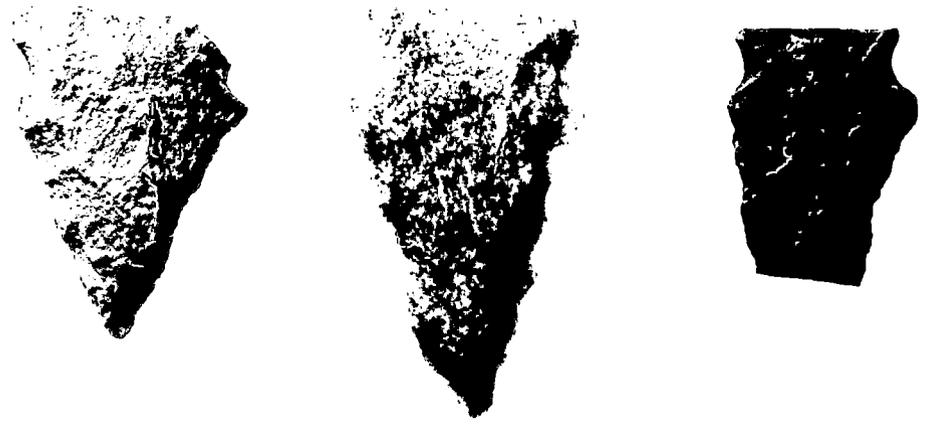
Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a28	Hxv7	After scraper
630a2	Npv8	Surface
620a8	Hxv8	Surface

Row C, Morrow Mountain projectile points.

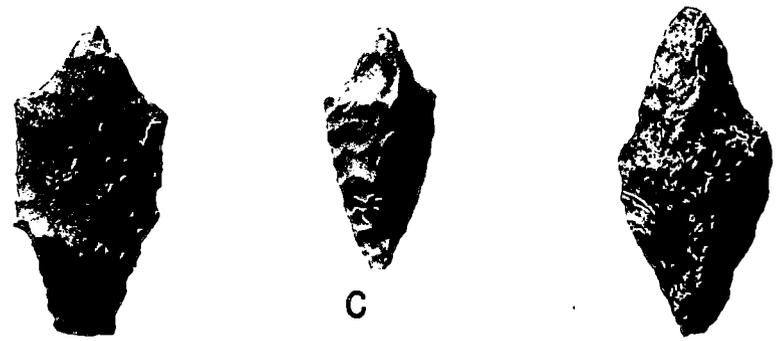
Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a247	Hxv7	Sq. 35R85, 9-19"
681a2	Npv58	Surface
619a1431	Hxv7	Sq. -10L10, Fea. 195



A



B



C



Projectile Point Types

Plate 21

Base: The base usually straight to slightly excurvate.

Diagnostic features: Medium sized points trianguloid points with stem frequently to one side.

Technique of manufacture: Percussion flaking, usually good considering the material used.

Type of rock: Quartzite and slate are primary materials with falsite and white quartz being used less. See Figure 40 for relationship between projectile point types and rock chips.

Comment: On the basis of typology this type has been described separately from the type Large Savannah River, however, stratigraphically they occur together and were without a doubt used by the same people. See Figure 39 for stratigraphic relationship of Savannah River types at the Gaston Site. The name Savannah River for this type is used in this survey because it is felt that the basic Savannah River type point as described by Claflin, Fairbanks and Coe, has such a wide distribution that the popular practice of giving it a new name every time it is found in a different locality only adds more confusion and unnecessary terminology to the growing lists of artifact

types.³⁴ In this survey the Savannah River types were found in an entirely pre-ceramic context. This and the Large Savannah River type are apparently what Holland calls Parallel-sided Stemmed.³⁵

Whenever the term Savannah River is used in graphs and charts in this report it refers to the combination of this type with the Large Savannah River type, unless other wise stated.

Large Savannah River.

Overall length: Range, 75-105 mm.; majority, 75-90 mm.

Shoulder width: Range, 34-38 mm.

Blade: Trianguloid with slightly excurvate sides.

Shoulders rounded or an obtuse angle, seldom a right angle.

Stem: Length, varies from 27-32 mm.; width, 21-25 mm.

One side of stem is occasionally slightly ground. The sides of the stem are not usually parallel, but expand toward the shoulder

³⁴Claflin, Fairbanks and Coe, op. cit.

³⁵Holland, op. cit., p. 170.

Plate 22

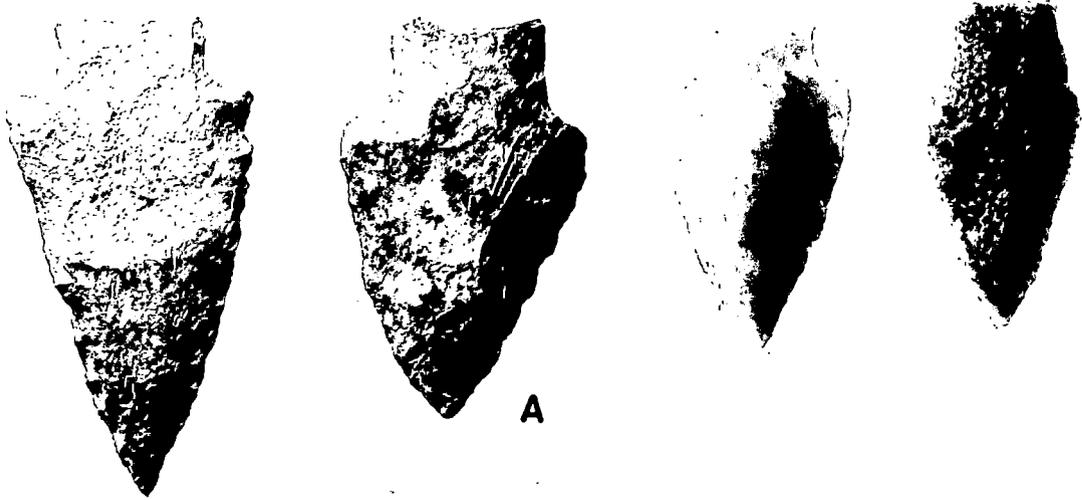
Savannah River Projectile Points

Row A, Small Savannah River type projectile points

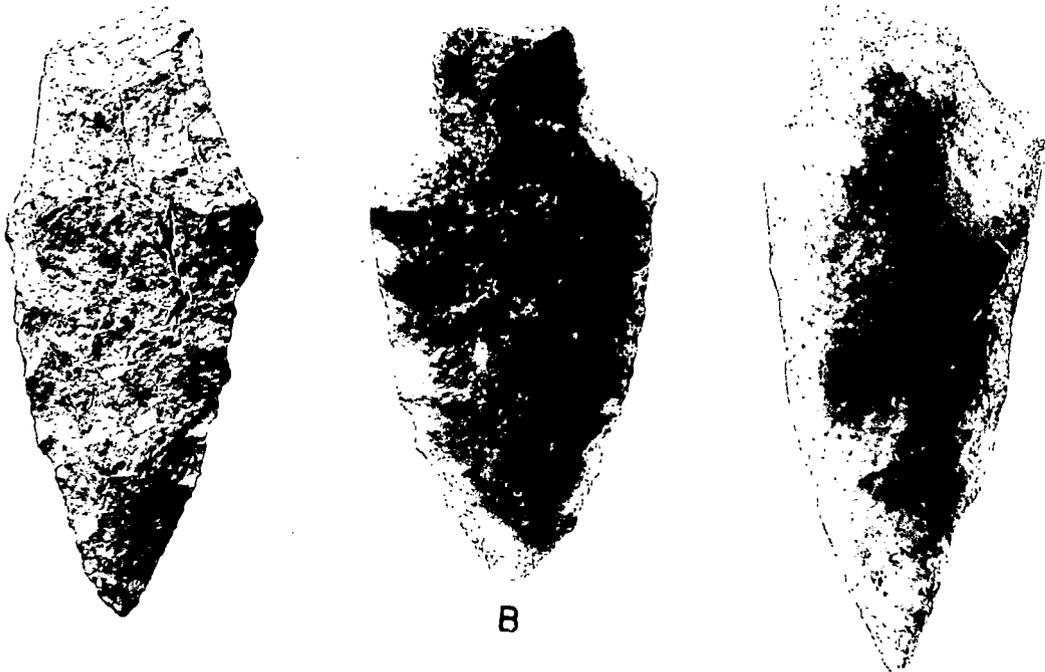
Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a1269	Hxv7	Sq. 35R235, Fea. 148
687a2	Hxv13	Surface
619a158	Hxv7	Sq. -70L60, 56"
619a129	Hxv7	Sq. -60L60, 42"

Row B, Large Savannah River type projectile points

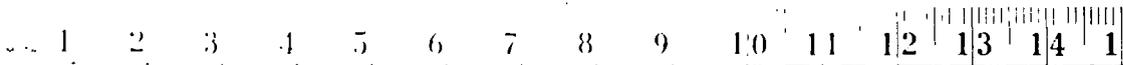
Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a171	Hxv7	Sq. -105R50, 47"
619a1013	Hxv7	Sq. -60L215, Fea. 74
619a688	Hxv7	Sq. 35R85, Fea. 2



A



B



Savannah River Projectile Points

Plate 22

forming a curve between the stem and the blade.

Base: Usually slightly concave or straight with a slope to one side, a few have straight bases without the slope.

Diagnostic features: Large trianguloid, stemmed point with a curve joining the stem to the blade.

Technique of manufacture: Percussion flaking, well made.

Type of rock: Quartzite is by far the most frequently used material, followed by white quartz, felsite, slate, crystal quartz and diorite in order of occurrence. See Fig. 40 for relationship of Savannah River types with rock chips at the Gaston Site.

Comment: See comments under Small Savannah River type. Occurs stratigraphically in a pre-ceramic context. See Fig. 39 for stratigraphic relationship of Savannah River types at the Gaston Site.

Halifax.

Overall length: Range, 29-56 mm.; majority, 38-47 mm.

Shoulder width: Range, 17-25 mm.; majority, 19-21 mm.

Blade: Long and relatively narrow, to short and trianguloid. Cross section is oval. Shoulders

usually rounded, but may be angular, especially on the shorter specimens. Sides are straight to slightly excurvate, and on the shorter specimens there is a tendency toward incurvate sides.

Stem: The points are side notched with a shallow to medium notch. This notch is usually ground, as is the base. Length, 9-16 mm.; width 15-20 mm.

Base: The base is usually slightly more narrow than the shoulders, however, on the smaller specimens the base is sometimes wider than the shoulders. The base is usually ground and straight, but some specimens are slightly concave and others are slightly rounded.

Diagnostic features: Usually a relatively long narrow blade with side notches that are ground. The base is also frequently ground. Shoulders usually slightly wider than the base.

Technique of manufacture: Pressure flaked, well made points.

Type of rock: Of the thirty-eight Halifax points found in the surface survey and through excavation at Hx v7, thirty of them are of white quartz. Four were of quartzite, three of slate and one

of crystal quartz. See Fig. 39 for stratigraphic relationship of Halifax points with rock chips. The high percentage of white quartz is probably just a local preference since many surface collections from North Carolina contain the same type, but of slate or other material.

Comments: This type occurred stratigraphically below the Savannah River types, separated by several inches of sterile river laid sand. See Fig. 39 for stratigraphic relationship of Halifax points. This type is what Holland breaks into the two types called Notched Stemmed and Stubby Barbed.³⁶ Since they were found stratigraphically together and have so much in common, including the ground notches and bases, they have been considered as the same type in this survey. Coe had previously found the Guilford assemblage overlaid by the Savannah River type material, but this is the first time that the stratigraphic position of this Halifax type point

³⁶Ibid., p. 169.

has been determined. The Halifax assemblage falls between the Guilford and Savannah River materials, but is closer stratigraphically to the Guilford.

Guilford.

Overall length: Range, 31-75 mm.; majority, 56-65 mm.

Width at widest point: Range, 17-25 mm.; majority, 21-24 mm.

Blade: Long oval blade with a thick cross section varying from an oval to round.

Stem: None, however, one specimen found in a stratigraphic context with others of the type has a definite angle at the widest point which gives the appearance of a slight stem to the basal third of the point.

Base: The base is usually rounded but several have a slightly concave base, and some a straight base.

Diagnostic features: Long oval blade, rounded to concave base, thick in cross section.

Technique of manufacture: Percussion flaking. Usually well made points.

Type of rock: Half the Guilford points located in the

survey were of slate. Quartzite, white quartz and felsite were used in that order. See Fig. 40 for relationship between Guilford point material and rock chips.

Comment: The Guilford points were located in a stratigraphic context a few inches below the Halifax type at a depth of from 58 to 64 inches. This type is similar to Holland's Lanceolate type. Joffre Coe first described and named this type in 1952.³⁷ He has found the type in a stratigraphic context in the flood plains of the Upper Pee Dee River, and as we found at Roanoke Rapids, overlaid stratigraphically by the Savannah River and other later cultures. At the time he wrote, the Guilford assemblage was the oldest known in the Carolina Piedmont, but since that time several earlier assemblages have been discovered in a stratigraphic context below the Guilford, the earliest characterized by longitudinal fluting.³⁸

³⁷Joffre Coe, "The Cultural Sequence of the Carolina Piedmont," Archaeology of Eastern United States, James B. Griffin, Editor, (Chicago: 1952), p. 304.

³⁸Coe, personal communication.

Plate 23

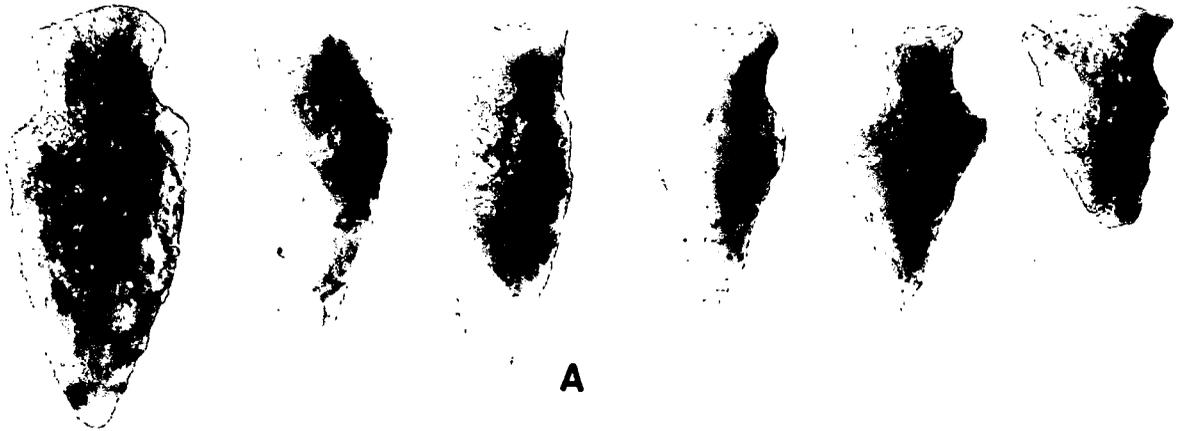
Halifax and Guilford Projectile Points

Row A, Halifax type projectile points.

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a134-5	Hxv7	Sq. -60L60, 63"
619a155	"	Sq. -70L60, 54"
619a162	"	Sq. -70L60, 63"
619a161	"	Sq. -70L60, 62"
619a162-2	"	Sq. -70L60, 63"
619a125	"	Sq. -28L76, 57"

Row B, Guilford type projectile points.

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a134-1	Hxv7	Sq. -60L60, 63"
619a125-1	"	Sq. -28L76, 58"
619a162-1	"	Sq. -70L60, 63"
619a134-4	"	Sq. -60L60, 63"
619a2	"	Surface



A



B



Halifax and Guilford Projectile Points

Plate 23

11

Small Oval Blade.

Overall length: Range, 48-70 mm.; majority, 48-55 mm.

Width at widest point: 25-32 mm.; majority, 30-32 mm.

Blade: Small oval blade with widest part usually near the center.

Stem: None

Base: Usually rounded in a continuous curve from the blade, but an occasional specimen has a straight base with rounded corners.

Diagnostic features: Small oval blade with rounded base.

Technique of manufacture: Percussion flaking. These blades are poor compared to the Large Oval Blade type.

Type of rock: White quartz predominates with slate the second most frequently used material. One point each of quartzite and felsite. See Fig. 40 for relationship between Small Oval Blade type and rock chips.

Comment: This type occurred stratigraphically and seems to be associated with the Halifax type point. See Fig. 39 for table of stratigraphic relationship of points and blades at the Gaston Site.

Large Oval Blade.

Overall length: Range, 100-135 mm.

Width at widest point: Range, 50-55 mm.

Blade: Large oval blade with widest point near center.

Stem: None.

Base: Rounded.

Diagnostic features: Large Oval shaped blade.

Technique of manufacture: Percussion flaking.

Type of rock: Quartzite predominates with white quartz secondary. Minor materials are slate and felsite. See Fig. 40 for relationship between Large Oval Blade type and rock chips.

Comment: This type was found stratigraphically and as is shown in Fig. 39 it occurs with the Savannah River type points.

Other.

Some projectile points were not typed because of the small percentage of their occurrence. These miscellaneous points were placed under the category "Other". Three such points are shown in Plate 21b. One point with a concave base and side notches was found on site Npv2,

Plate 24

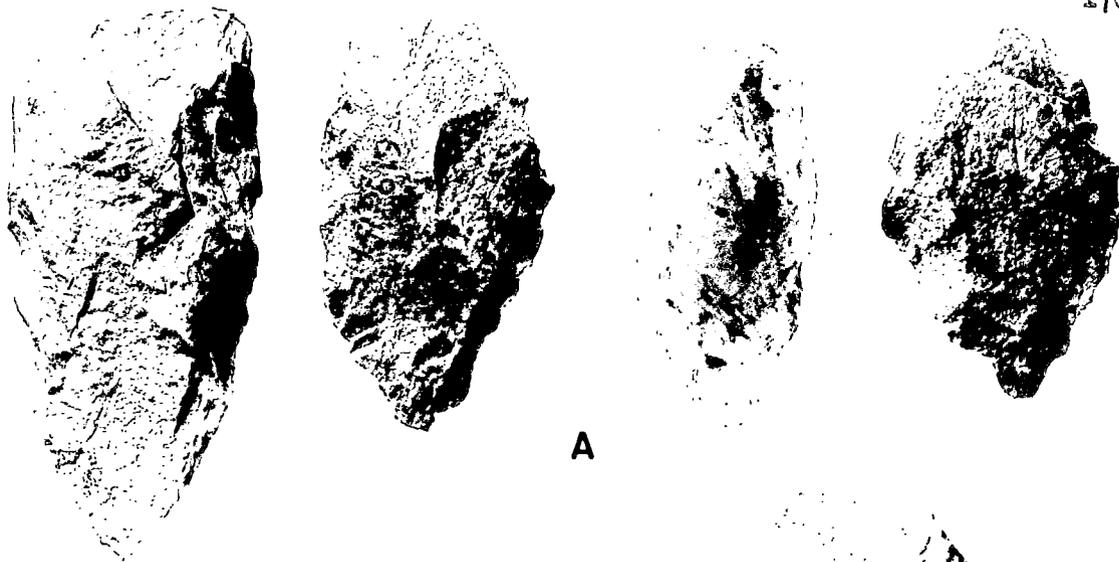
Oval Blade Types

Row A, Small Oval Blades associated with Halifax
projectile points

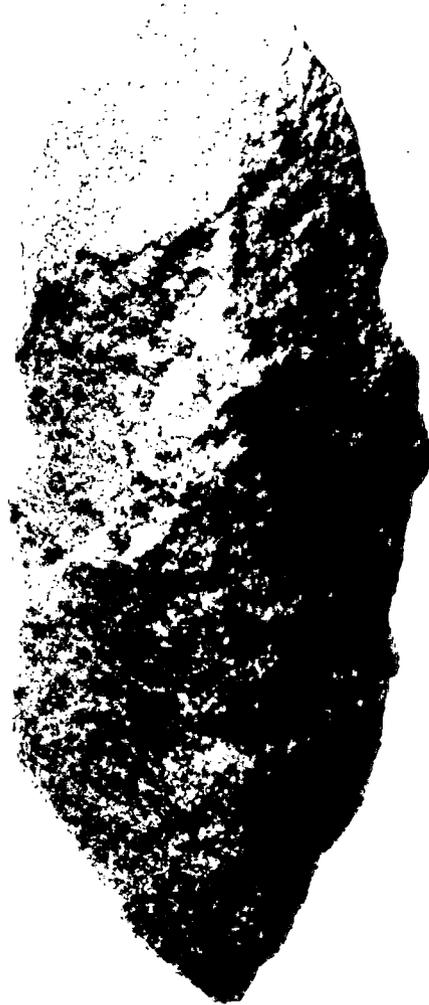
Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a134-6	Hxv7	Sq. -60L60, 63"
619a151	"	Sq. -70L60, 53"
619a168	"	Sq. -105R50, 43"
619a147	"	Sq. -7-L60, 46-49"

Row B, Large Oval Blades associated with Savannah
River projectile points

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a112	Hxv7	Sq. 60L10, 37"
619a20	Hxv7	After scraper



A



B



Oval Blade Types

Plate 24

Plate 25

Stone Projectile Points, Drills, and Gorgets

Row A, Miscellaneous projectile points included in the "Other" category. Second from the right is Pee Dee pentagonal type. The last point on the right is of chert, one of two found in the survey.

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a336	Hxv7	Sq. 45R25, 12-15"
619a268	"	Sq. 35R105, level 2
651a2	Npv29	Surface
651a2	"	Surface
619a28	Hxv7	After scraper
619a1396	"	Sq. 40L15, Fea. 184

Row B, Chipped stone drills.

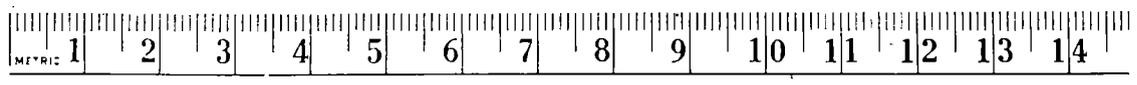
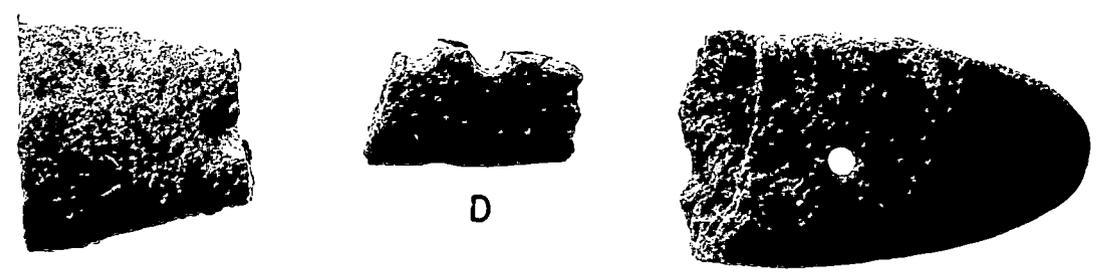
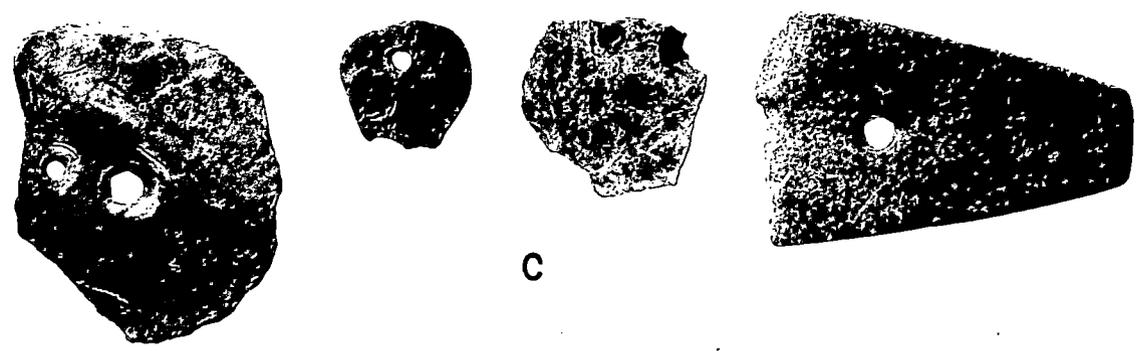
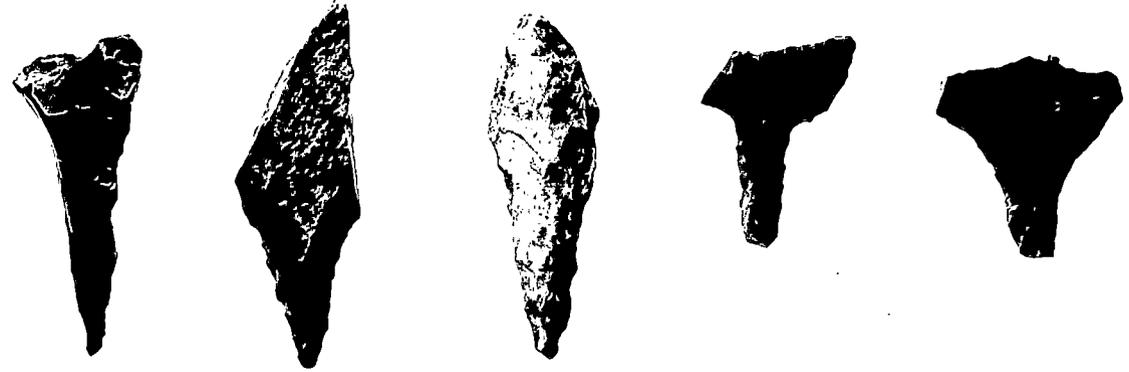
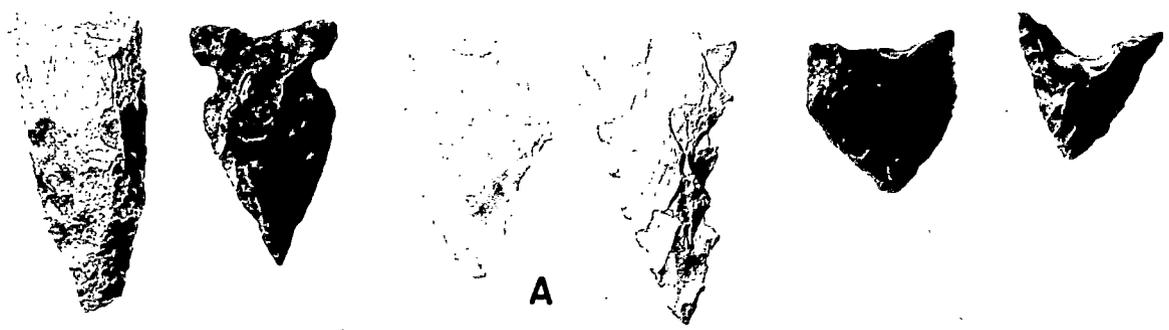
Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a844	Hxv7	Sq. 35R145, Fea. 38
619a689	"	Sq. 35R85, Fea. 2
619a703	"	Sq. 35R85, Fea. 4
619a689	"	Sq. 35R85, Fea. 2
619a1072	"	Sq. -60L140, Fea. 95

Row C, Drilled stone gorget and pebble fragments.

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a1168	Hxv7	Sq. -80L50, Fea. 116
619a981	"	Sq. 35R225, Fea. 66
619a1270	"	Sq. 35R235, Fea. 148
668a4	Npv46	Surface

Row D, Drilled stone gorget and pebble fragments

679a4	Npv56	Surface
620a5	Hxv8	Surface
619a428	Hxv7	Sq. 53R10, 20"



Stone Projectile Points, Drills, and Gorgets

and is known to be associated with a fluted type in a stratified context, and is thought to be at least ten thousand years old.³⁹

Another type included in this "other" category is a small pentagonal point of which there were three specimens found. This type occurs in the proto-historic Pee Dee Focus described by Joffre Coe.⁴⁰ It is illustrated in Plate 25a, along with some other points in the "other" classification.

V. DESCRIPTION OF OBJECTS OF STONE RECOVERED
DURING THE SURVEY AND EXCAVATION

Stone drills (Plate 25b). These chipped stone artifacts are made from a flake of stone, slate being used most frequently. They are from one to two inches long and are different from a projectile point in that the base is not finished by secondary chipping, only the working shaft of the drill has secondary chipping. There are two types of drill shafts. One has gradually expanding sides toward the base, while the other has the sides parallel all the

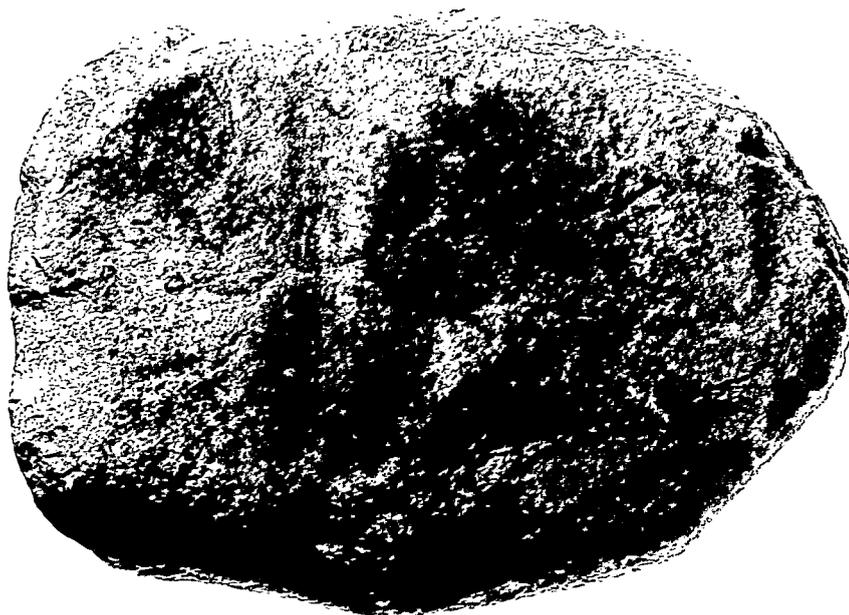
³⁹Coe, personal communication.

⁴⁰Joffre Coe, "The Cultural Sequence of the Carolina Piedmont," op. cit., p. 308.

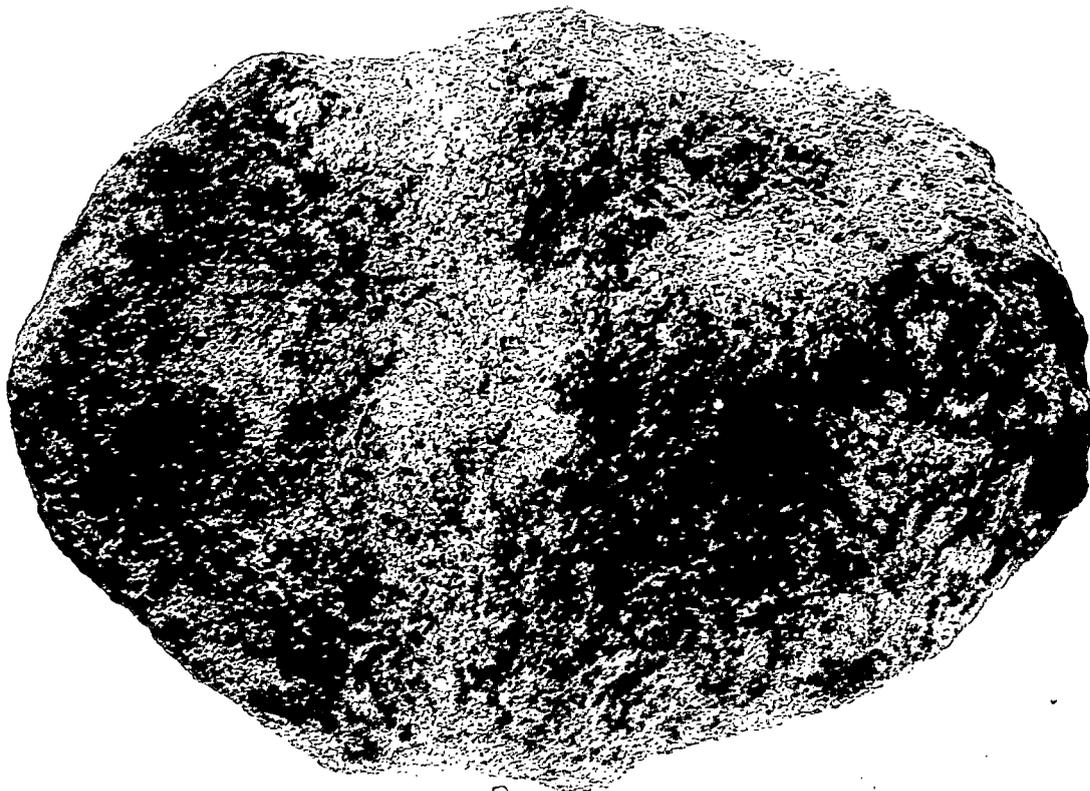
Plate 26

Pecked, Roughly-grooved Axes Probably Belonging to the
Savannah River Occupation of the Basin

	Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
Row A	628all	Hxv10	Sq. 1, 0-8"
Row B	619a776	Hxv7	Sq. 35R115, Fea. 20 (in yellow sand)



A



B

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15

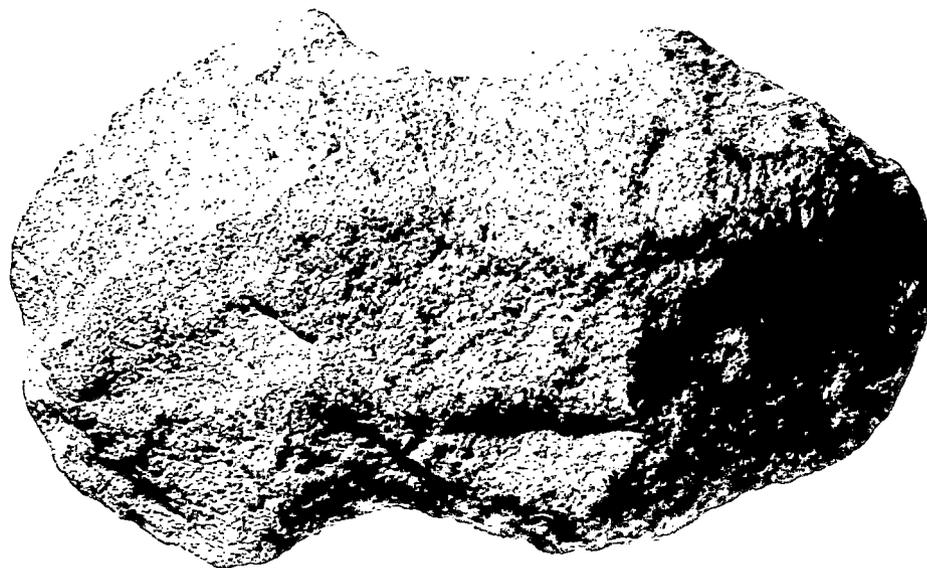
Pecked, Roughly-grooved Axes

Plate 26

Plate 27

Guilford Chipped, Notched Axes

	Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
Row A	619a124	Hxv7	Sq. -28L76, 41"
Row B	619a133	Hxv7	Sq. -60L60, 61"
Row C	619a104	Hxv7	Sq. 55L25, 66"



A



B



C



Guilford Chipped, Notched Axes

way to the base.

Full Grooved Ax. (Plate 26) Only two specimens of this type were found in the basin. Both are pecked over the surface area and the groove is a deeper pecked area extending around the stone slightly above the center, toward the base. A third specimen had the shape of an ax, and was pecked over the surface, but the groove was not pronounced. This specimen is referred to as "pecked ax" in this report. The slightly grooved specimens are referred to as Full Grooved Ax (rough). One specimen was found in the yellow sand near Fea. 20.

Chipped, Notched Ax (Plate 27). These chipped stone axes are notched on each side near the center. They range in size from three to six inches long and from two to four inches wide. Some specimens are sharpened by chipping on one edge only, others are sharpened on both edges. This type ax was found in a stratigraphic context at the Gaston site. Of the seven axes of this type found in the survey, three were associated with the Halifax type projectile points, and two with the Guilford type. See Table XXI showing the stratigraphic relationship of the Notched Ax type.

Joffre Coe has described this ax type and its association with the Guilford points as representing one of the

oldest culture complexes in the Carolina Piedmont.⁴¹ Since he wrote in 1952, older assemblages have been located stratigraphically below the Guilford, but the Guilford cultural material is the oldest located in the present survey in a stratified context.

Worked Red Ochre (Plate 28a and 40g). Fragments of red, orange and yellow ochre were located in the process of excavation. These are sometimes smoothed as if worked, and sometimes they are not. When not smoothed through use they are referred to as "ochre fragments". A mass of such fragments was found associated with some large fragments of a steatite vessel in the yellow sand after the bulldozers had removed the black midden from the Gaston Site (Hx v7) (Plate 28a). One large lump of worked red ochre was found at the Guilford level at a depth of sixty-three inches from the surface of the Gaston site. This particular lump of ochre (Plate 40g), was flat on one side, and rounded on the other. Its basic shape was oval, and was covered with scratches. The same pattern of scratches was repeated again and again over the surface of the lump, indicating the indentations in the scraping tool used to scrape the lump. The lump was five inches long by three wide, and two inches thick.

⁴¹Ibid., p. 304.

Pecked Stone Balls (Plate 28b). Some of these objects were found while walking after the bulldozers and road graders at the Gaston Site. They are perfectly round stone balls, from two to two and a half inches in diameter. They may represent a hammer stone that has been pecked on all sides through use, or they may have been intentionally rounded as gaming stones.

Grooved Stone (Plate 28c). Several grooved stones were located in the survey. These consist of either pebbles or broken fragments of stone that have scratches or grooves cut into them. The material is usually a soft stone such as sandstone or ochre.

Sinue Stone (Plate 28d and 28e). These weathered slate stones with notches around the edge have sometimes been called sinue stones in the belief that they were used in the preparation of sinue. The two shown in Plate 28 are the only ones of this type found in the basin.

Scraper. Only one chipped stone scraper was found in the survey. This was a silicious slate flake with secondary chipping around one end. This type scraper is typically associated with very early lithic material. The Hardaway site (St. 4) in Piedmont North Carolina has thou-

sands of such scrapers.⁴²

Mortar. One complete stone mortar was located in the surface survey, and two broken fragments were in a hearth at the Halifax level at the Gaston site. They are made of a large stone, usually eight to sixteen inches across, with a basin like depression abraded into the center. Some of the stones in the Abraded Stone category may have been used as pestles on such mortars.

Pecked Stone Ring. One of these objects was found in the surface survey at site Hx v12. It is a broken fragment of what apparently was a pecked stone ring. It is round in cross-section, and if complete would have been two and one-quarter inches across, with a hole in the center of one-half inch in diameter. It may have been used as a net sinker, or may have been a type of atlatl weight.

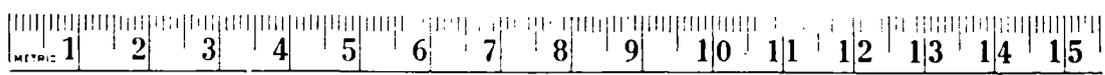
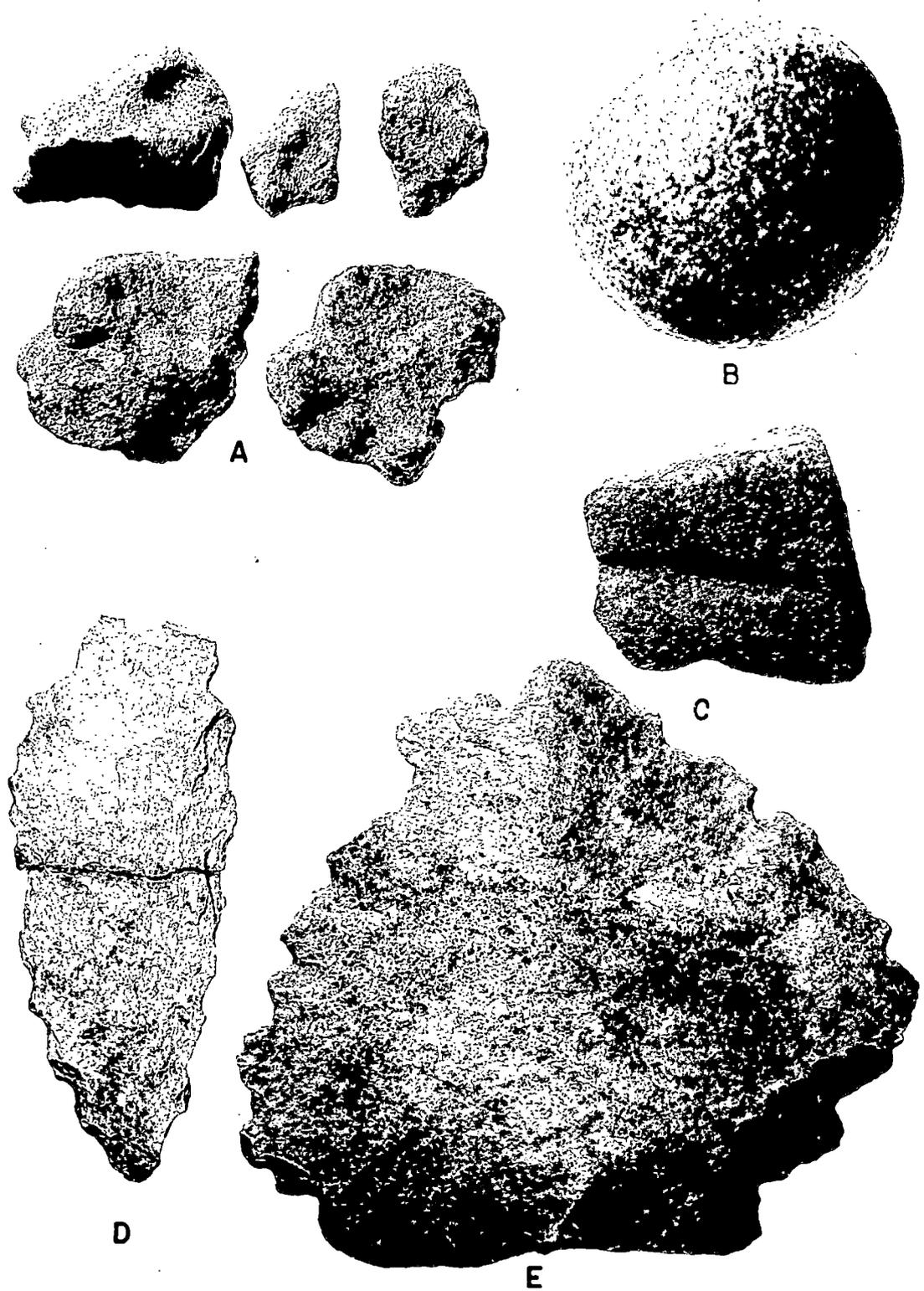
Drilled Stone Gorgets (Plate 25c and 25d). This group of artifacts consists of broken fragments of worked and drilled stone objects commonly referred to as gorgets. Most fragments found in this survey have two tapering holes drilled through the flat side of the stone. Several fragments have tapering sides, and appear to be fragments of

⁴²Joffre Coe, personal communication.

Plate 28

Miscellaneous Stone Artifacts

	Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
Row A, red ochre lumps	619ml289	Hxv7	Sq. -95R35, Fea. 154, Yellow sand
Row B, pecked stone ball	619a36	Hxv7	After scraper
Row C, grooved stone	619a20	Hxv7	After scraper
Row D, sinue stones	619a1180	Hxv7	Sq. -80L50, Fea. 119
Row E, sinue stones	619a30	Hxv7	After scraper



Miscellaneous Stone Artifacts

what is frequently called "expanded center bar gorgets". One such specimen has a rounded end, and another a squared end. The material used is usually a soft stone such as steatite, chlorite schist, or shale. A triangular steatite object listed as a gorget, and shown in Plate 30d, may be a net sinker rather than a gorget.

Drilled Stone Pebble (Plate 25c). These objects are usually flat pebbles that have a hole drilled near one end. They show no sign of having been worked otherwise.

Stone Celts (Plate 29). Pecked and polished stone celts were found ranging from two and a half to six inches long. The smaller celts are usually quite thin ($\frac{1}{8}$ in.), and highly polished. The celts of five inches or more in length are usually round or a fat oval near the base. Polishing is usually more pronounced near the cutting edge tapering into a pecked appearance near the base. One small celt was considerably battered at the base as though used as a wedge. Another had a very sharp cutting edge at both ends.

Boatstone Atlatl Weights (Plates 30a and 30b). This is the term commonly used to describe the hemispherical shaped stones that have been hollowed out on the flat side. Several of these were found at the Gaston site (Hx v7) during excavation. They are round to slightly oval and

most are two to two and a half inches across the longest way. They are usually one inch thick. The pit is one half inch deep on most specimens. There is a groove cut around the curved side on all specimens. There is one very small specimen that is seven-eighths of an inch across the long side. Several specimens are broken along the groove. Most are made of a very hard stone, but two are of red ochre. Several illustrated in Plates 30a and 30b. There is a correlation between these boatstones and the early pottery series, Vincent Cord and Fabric. See Tables IX-XII showing the relationship between artifacts and pottery types from pits at the Gaston site (Hx v7). Evidence now is sufficient I believe to warrant calling such boatstones, along with bannerstones, by the more suitable name atlatl weight, or spear thrower weight.⁴³ This particular type could be called "boatstone atlatl weight" to distinguish it from the "bannerstone atlatl weight" type.

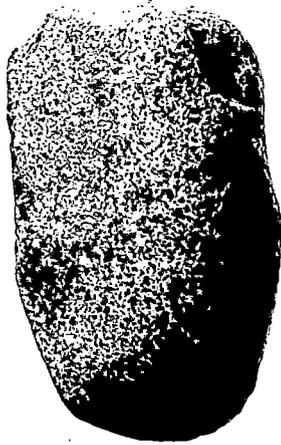
Joffre Coe has pointed out the evolutionary development of the atlatl weight from a strictly utilitarian function, when the weights were rectangular or oval, to the

⁴³William S. Webb, "Indian Knoll, Site Oh 2, Ohio County, Kentucky," The University of Kentucky Reports in Anthropology and Archaeology, Vol. IV, No. 3, Pt. 1, (Lexington: 1946). The atlatl, or spear thrower, acted as an extension of the arm, allowing the spear to be thrown further than by hand.

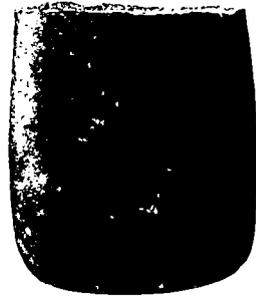
Plate 29

Polished Stone Celts

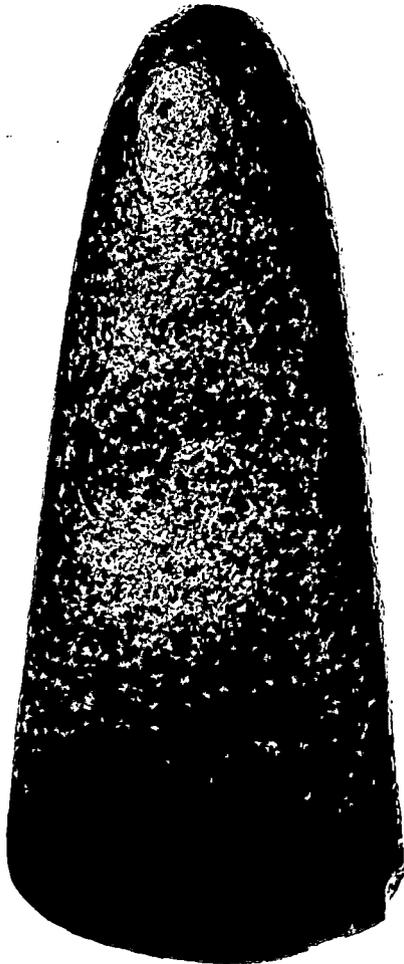
	Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
Row A	639a3	Npv17	Surface
Row B	619a605	Hxv7	Sq. -100R100, 9-20"
Row C	619a32	Hxv7	After scraper
Row D	619a32	Hxv7	After scraper



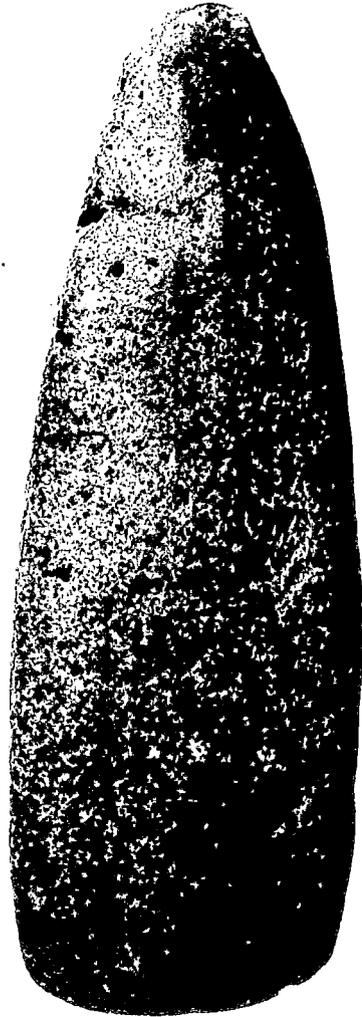
A



B



C



D



Polished Stone Celts

Plate 30

Weights and Fragments

Row A, grooved and pitted Boatstone atlatl weights
and fragments

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a33	Hxv7	After scraper
619a837	"	Sq. 35R145, Fea. 36
619a704	"	Sq. 35R85, Fea. 4

Row B, grooved and pitted Boatstone atlatl weights
and fragments

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a1118	Hxv7	Sq. 0L150, Fea. 105
619a245	"	Sq. 35R85, 9-19"
619a725	"	Sq. 35R95, Fea. 8

Row C, pecked atlatl fragment

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a34	Hxv7	After scraper

Row D, steatite gorget or net sinker

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a552	Hxv7	Sq. -75R100, 12-16"



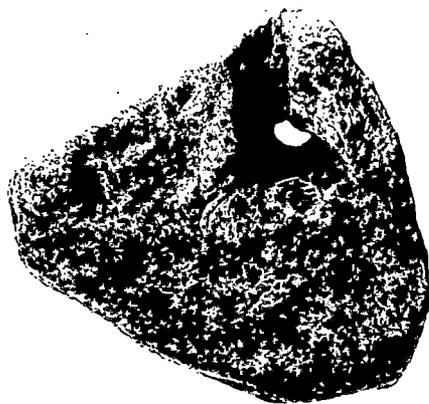
A



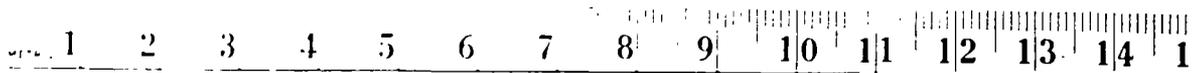
B



C



D



Atlatl Weights and Fragments, and Steatite Gorget

Plate 30

crescent shape, to the more elaborately made "butterfly bannerstone" type and the "boatstone" type which were more ceremonial in nature than their ancestor types. This increased elaboration of form of the atlatl, and its greater use as a ceremonial object came about with the decrease of the need for it as a food procuring weapon, i.e., after the advent of the bow and arrow. The ultimate ceremonial form of the atlatl is manifested in the so-called copper and chipped stone "maces" of Etowah, Spiro, and Moundville.⁴⁴

Pecked Atlatl Fragment (Plate 30c). A few of these artifacts were located in the survey. They are fragments of crescent shaped atlatl weights in the rough stages of manufacture. This assumption is based on comparison with similar unfinished specimens from a site in Piedmont North Carolina where hundreds of atlatl weights in various stages of manufacture have been found.

Polished Stone Pipes (Plate 31). Two polished stone pipes of chlorite were found in the basin. One of these, a small platform pipe typical of the Hopewellian, Middle Woodland period was found while walking behind the

⁴⁴Joffre Coe, News Letter of the Archaeological Society of North Carolina, No. XXX (Chapel Hill: April, 1955), pp. 6-7.

bulldozer at the Gaston site, looking for specimens.⁴⁵ The other pipe was found at the pelvis of burial No. 7 at the Gaston site. See Plate 46b for a photograph of the pipe in situ with the burial. This pipe was of the platform type with the bowl at the end of the platform stem, and at an obtuse 45 degree angle with the stem. The stem was engraved with a series of triangles with their bases touching, with the triangles filled with parallel lines (see Plate 31). Similar incising was around the lip of the bowl which had a rim extending beyond the bowl.

This type pipe has been described by Joffre Coe, and is of a much later period than the small platform pipe.⁴⁶ Sherds from the burial indicate that it was owned by the makers of the Gaston ceramics.

The small pipe is typologically related to the Hopewell-Middle Woodland culture period, indicating influence from the Ohio Valley area at an early time.⁴⁷ The larger engraved pipe type has been found associated with the Uwharrie Focus in North Carolina, and may indicate

⁴⁵James B. Griffin, "Culture Periods in Eastern United States Archaeology," Archaeology of the Eastern United States (Chicago: 1952), p. 358.

⁴⁶Coe, "The Cultural Sequence of the Carolina Piedmont," op. cit., p. 308.

⁴⁷Griffin, loc. cit.

Plate 31

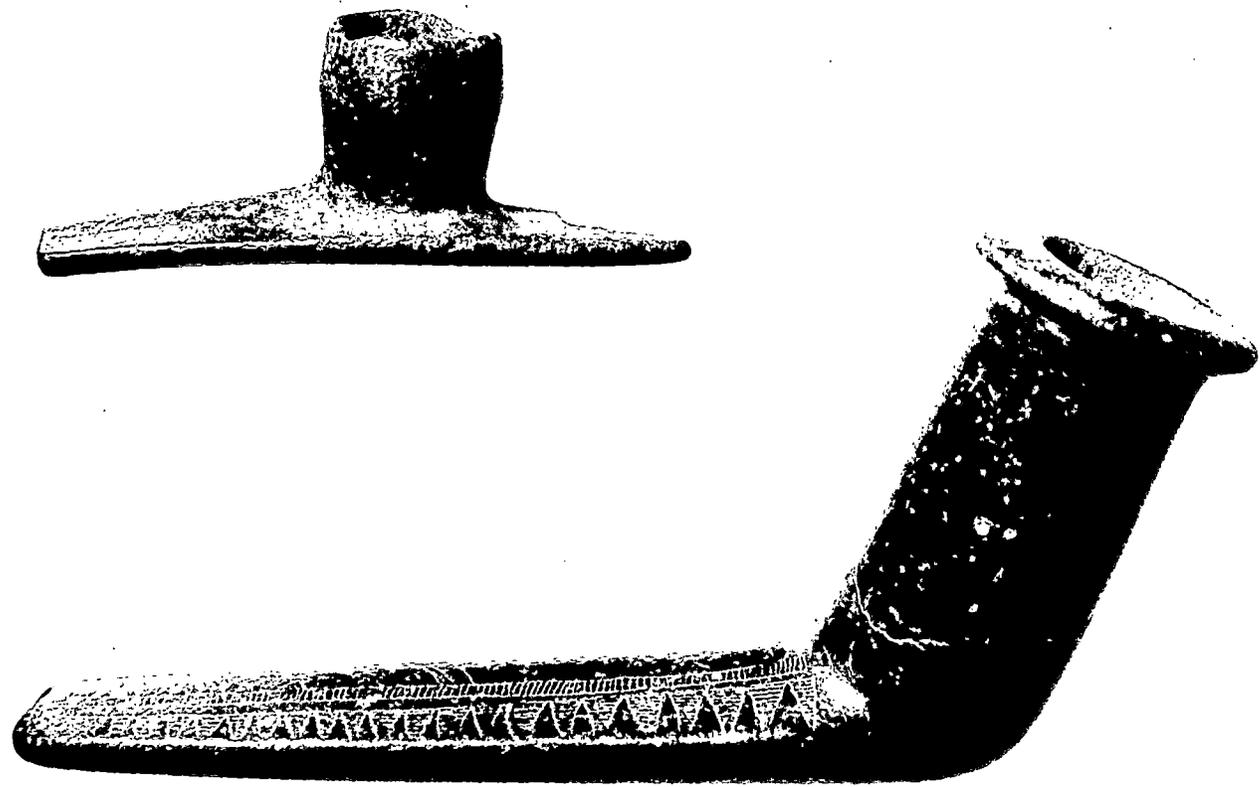
Polished Stone Pipes

Top, stone platform pipe of the Middle Woodland period.

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a1496	Hxv7	After scraper

Bottom, engraved chlorite pipe from burial seven at
the Gaston Site.

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a1497	Hxv7	Burial No. 7



Polished Stone Pipes

Plate 31

a Siouan influence at a late time period.⁴⁸ A few fragments of chlorite and steatite pipes were also found.

Abraded Stone (Plate 32). These artifacts are river pebbles, from the size of a marble to those weighing several pounds, that have been abraded on one or more edges. The abrasion appears to have been made by a rubbing motion of the stone against some other stone or object, since the abraded areas have a fine grained or smoothed appearance. Some stones have been abraded to such an extent that only a small portion of the original stream polished surface remains. This type abrasion could perhaps be produced by hammering, but the presence of the rubbed appearing abrasion was the criterion for this type.

Pecked Stone (Plates 33a and 34a). This group of artifacts is similar to the Abraded Stone type, but the range of size is not so great. Most of the stones of this type are as large as a man's fist or larger. They do not have the smooth abraded look, but are pitted as though pecked or hammered against another stone.

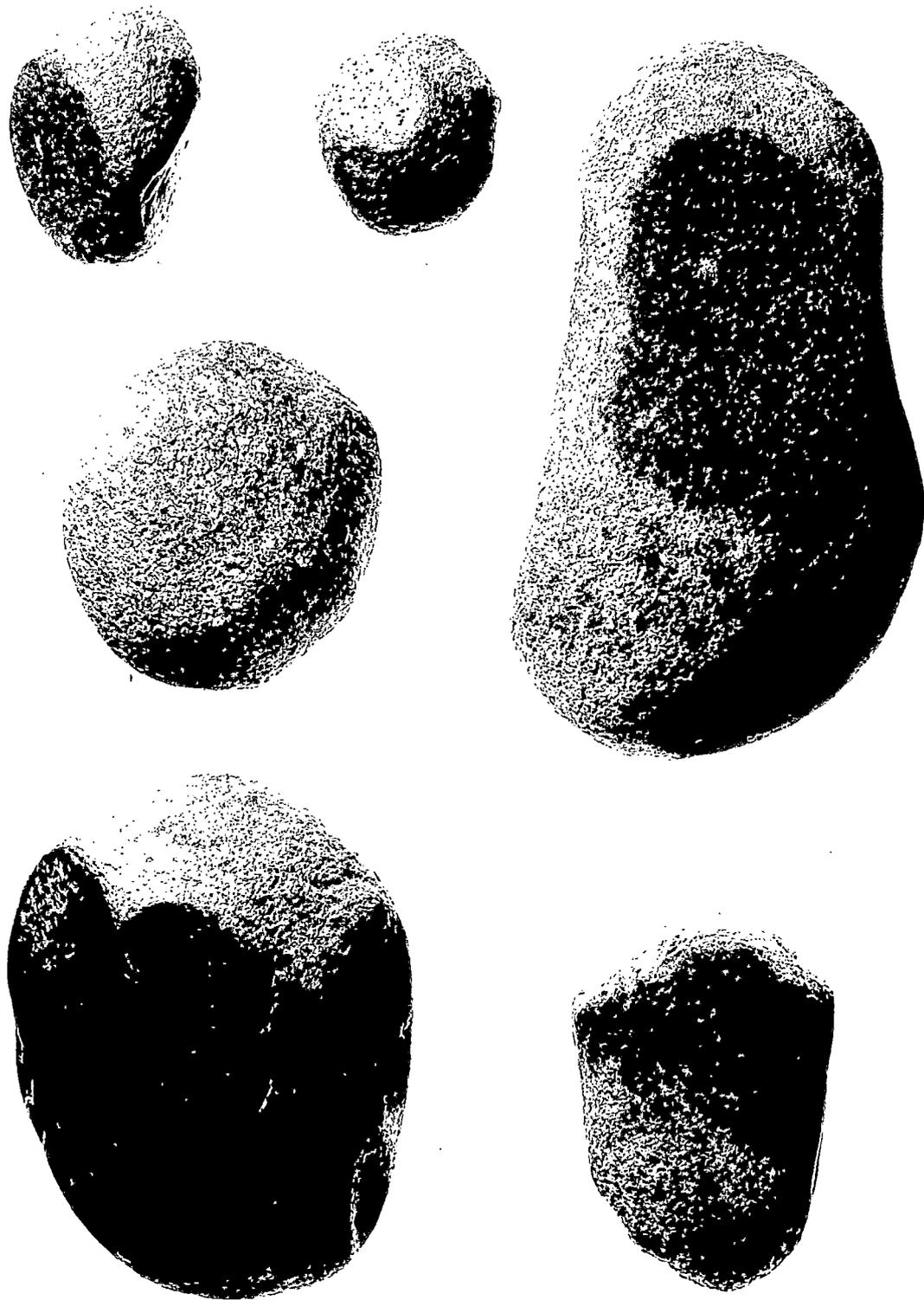
Center Pecked Stone (Plate 33b). These stones are from five to twelve inches across and two to three inches

⁴⁸ Coe, op. cit., p. 307.

Plate 32

Worked Rocks of the Abraded Stone Type

	Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
Row A	623a12 619a1277 619a7	Npv2 Hxv7 Hxv7	Sq. 1, 0-6" Sq. 35R235, Fea. 148 Surface
Row B	619a24	Hxv7	After scraper
Row C	619a7 619a21	Hxv7 Hxv7	Surface After scraper



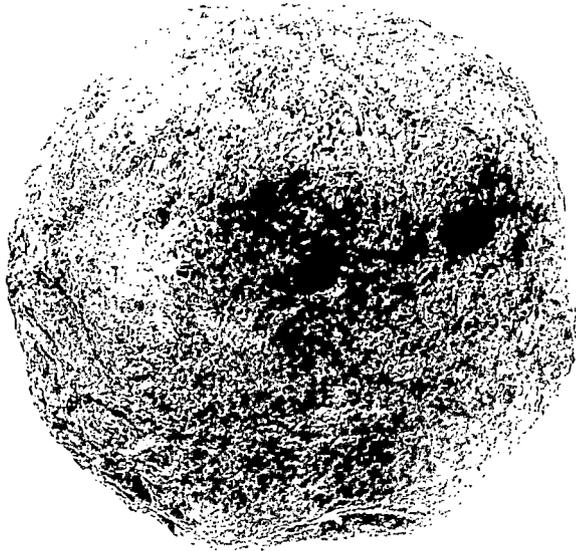
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15

Worked Rocks of the Abraded Stone Type
Plate 32

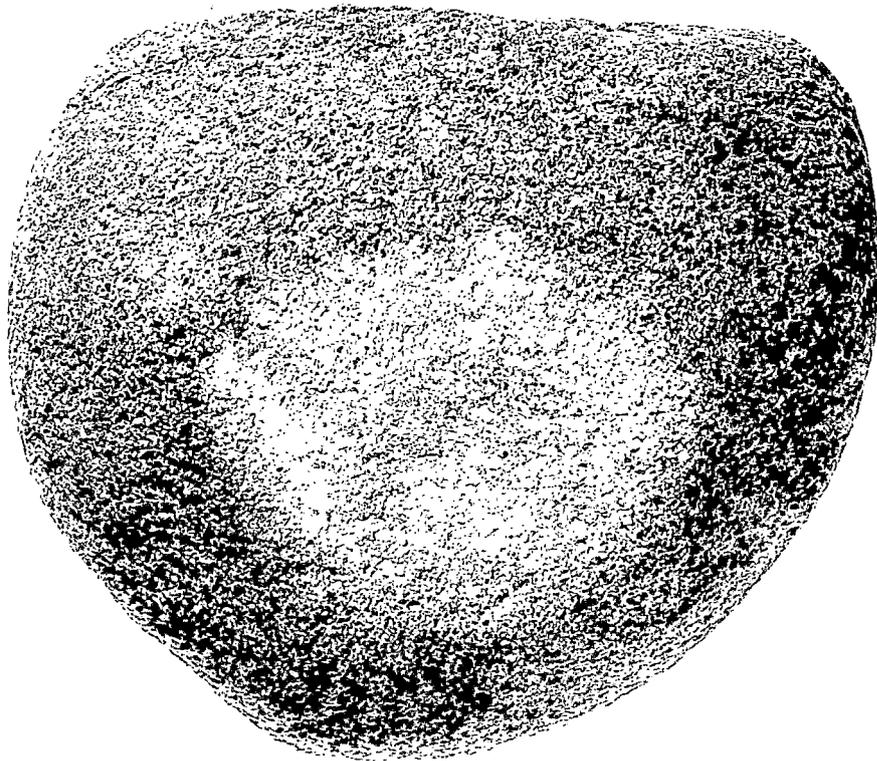
Plate 33

Stones

	Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
Row A, Pecked stone	619a1216	Hxv7	Sq. -25R230, Fea. 126
Row B, Center pecked stone	619a39	Hxv7	After scraper



A



B

10 11 12 13 14

Pecked Stone and Center Pecked Stone

Plate 33

thick. They have a pecked abraded area in the center of one or both sides as though used as an anvil.

Pitted Stone (Plate 34b). These stones have no consistent shape. They seem to have been any stone that was available. Some are river smoothed rocks and some are angular. They vary in size from two and a half to four and one-half inches across at the narrow side. The only worked surface as a rule is a pit on one or both sides of the stone, and sometimes two pits appear close together on one or both sides of the stone. These pits are three-quarters to an inch across and from one-quarter to one-half inch deep. They are usually round at the bottom, but an occasional specimen will have a conical shaped pit with an almost pointed bottom. Some specimens have a very shallow pit amounting to little more than a round abrasion on the stone. Most of the pits are centrally located on the stone.

Steatite Sherds (Plate 35). Small steatite sherds were found on several sites in the surface survey of the basin, and where the bulldozers had been clearing brush and had cut into a site several large fragments of steatite vessels were found. At the Gaston site (Hx v7), small steatite sherds were sometimes found during excavation of ceramic levels or in the pits. The largest specimens were located after the bulldozer had scraped off the black midden

Plate 34

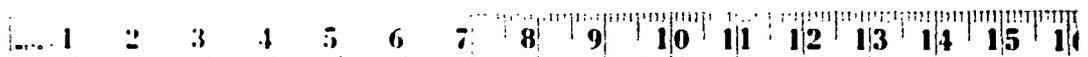
Worked Stones

Row A, worked stone of the Pecked Stone type.

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619a1216	Hxv7	Sq. -25R230, Fea. 126
679a3	Npv56	Surface

Row B, worked stone of the Pitted Stone type.

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
635a4	Npv13	Surface
619a1219	Hxv7	Sq. -25R240, Fea. 129



Worked Stone of the Pecked Stone and Pitted Stone Types

Plate 35

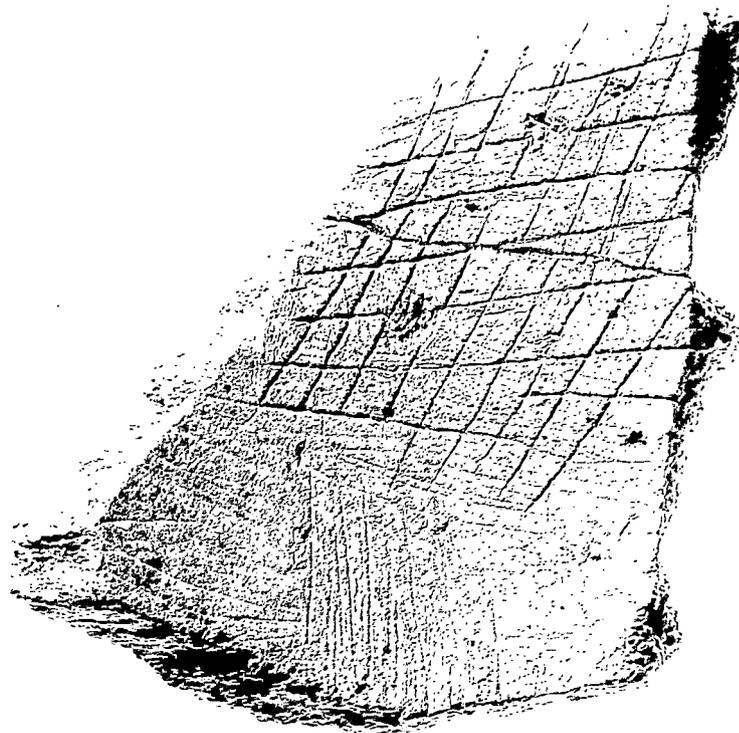
Steatite Sherds

Row A, interior of steatite rim sherd showing cross hatched design.

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
619p504	Hxv7	Sq. -40L60, yellow sand

Row B, exterior of steatite rim sherd showing rodent gnawed areas.

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
668p2	Npv46	Surface



A



B



Steatite Sherds

Plate 35

accumulation on the site down to the yellow sand level. In following the bulldozer, several large sherds were found in this yellow sand. One fragment (Plate 35a) had a cross hatched design incised on the interior near the rim of the vessel.

VI. DESCRIPTION OF OBJECTS OF CLAY

Clay Pipes and Fragments (Plate 36c-h). A variety of clay pipes and fragments was found at the Gaston site. The fragments indicate that the position of the bowl on the stem varied from a straight line, to a slight curve of the bowl from the stem. One pipe has an expanded bowl straight in line with the stem. (Plate 36c, bottom). The surface finish of the pipes varies from a hand smoothed, to a burnished surface. Stem shapes vary from those with parallel sides, to ones with the stem tapering away from the bowl.

One stem is square, (Plate 36f, top), and another has a shoulder around the end of the stem (Plate 36c, center, right). Some fragments have a series of bands extending around the pipe (Plate 36e). These bands are formed by fine rouletting, and are on fragments that are very highly polished, and thin. These fragments are similar to ones found by Lewis Binford in a survey of the Nottoway-Meherrin

River area, and may possibly represent influence from that area during a late period. Discussion of the relationship of this pipe type is found in a later section on interpretation.

The paste characteristics of some fragments indicate that they were probably made by the same potters who made the Type II ceramics, since they contain a high percentage of golden mica particles (Plate 36c, bottom; d, right; and g). This may indicate influence from the Clarksville area, since sherds with this mica content were a popular type in that area.

The specimen in Plate 36g is interesting in that it has a cross-hatched design surrounding the entire bowl.

European Trade Pipe Fragments (Plate 36a). Several European trade pipe stem and bowl fragments were found in the basin survey. Only one stem fragment was found at the Gaston site, and this was in the "Slump off the bank" at Sw. 60R5 where the first trench into the site was begun. The size of the stem hole is a diagnostic characteristic of time determination.⁴⁹ The holes in the trade pipe stems were measured, and found to date between 1710 and 1750 A.D.

⁴⁹Harrington, loc. cit.

Plate 36

Clay Pipes

Row A, trade pipe stems and bowl fragments.

Upper:	Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
	630a4	Npv8	Surface
	619a45	Hxv7	Bank at 6OR5
Lower:	641a3	Npv19	Surface
	630a4	Nbv8	Surface

Row B, nineteenth century pipe stem fragments.

638a3	Npv16	Surface
666a4	Npv44	Surface
619a3	Hxv7	Surface

Row C, Clay pipes of Indian manufacture.

619a1267	Hxv7	Sq. 35R235, Fea. 148
619a1267	"	" "
619a1267	"	" "
619a1267	"	" "

Row D, Clay pipes of Indian manufacture.

619a27	Hxv7	After scraper
619a27	Hxv7	After scraper

Row E, Clay pipes of Indian manufacture.

Upper:	619a559	Hxv7	Sq. -75R150, 0-8"
Lower:	619a547	Hxv7	Sq. -75R100, 8-12"

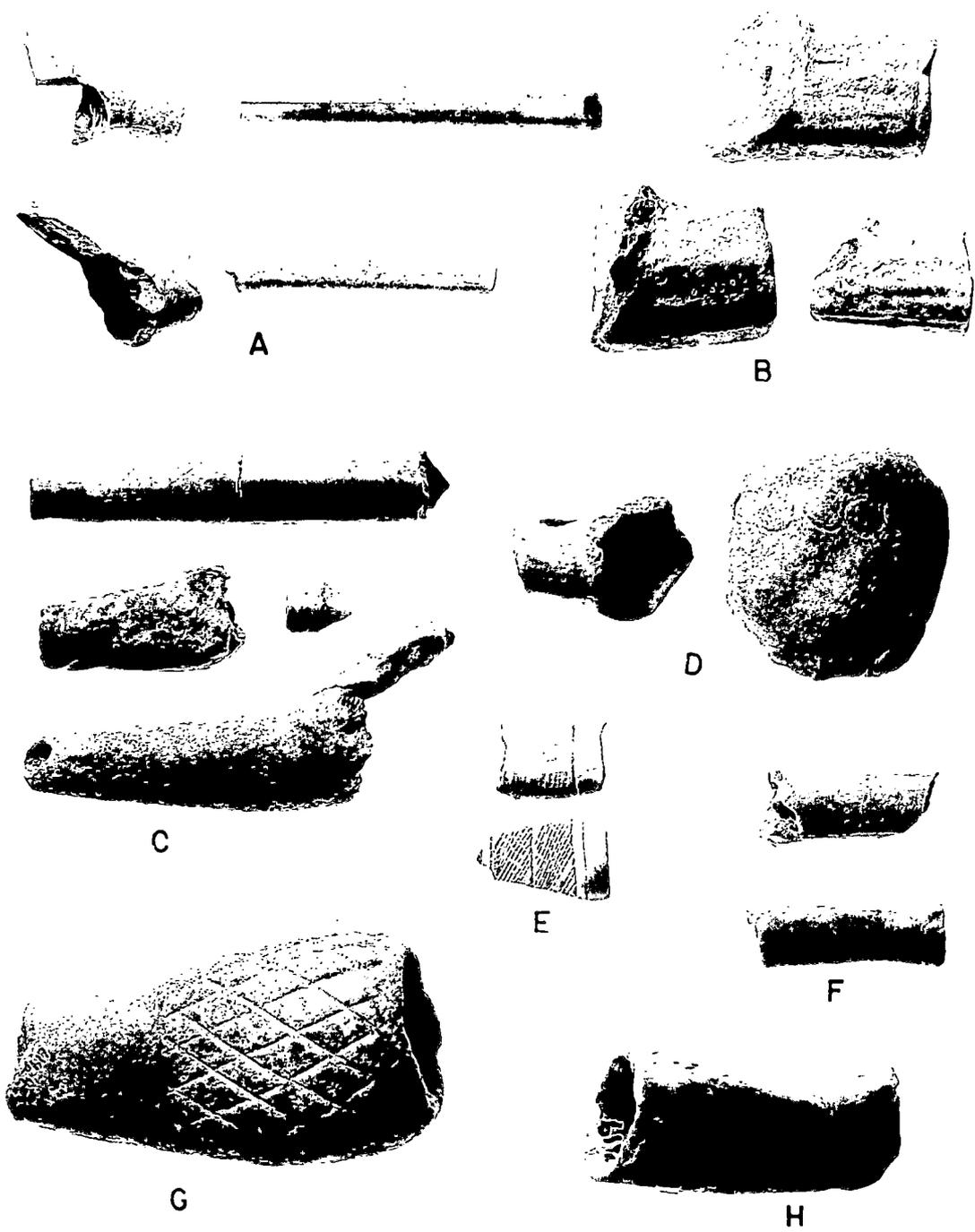
Row F, Clay pipes of Indian manufacture.

Upper:	619a369	Hxv7	Sq. 5OR5, 0-12"
Lower:	620a63	Hxv8	Sq. 25R30, 0-12"

Row G, Clay pipes of Indian manufacture.
& H,

619a409	Hxv7	Sq. 53R10, 12-16"
---------	------	-------------------

Row H	619a1242	Hxv7	Sq. 25R440, Fea. 138
-------	----------	------	----------------------



1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 1

Clay Pipes
Plate 36

Colonial Clay Pipe Fragments (Plate 36b). Several stems from nineteenth century clay pipes were found during the surface survey of the basin. They are of a more recent occupation of the basin than the Indian period.

Daub Fragments (Plate 40b). Fired daub fragments showing impressions of grass and other wattling were found during excavation of the Gaston site. These fragments were tabulated according to the number of fragments and their location. The presence of daub would probably indicate plastered walls of dwellings. The comparatively small amount recovered, however, would indicate that perhaps not all buildings were plastered.

Fired Dirt Dauber Nests (Plate 40c). Several of these were encountered while excavating pits on the Gaston Site. Their presence would perhaps indicate dwellings in the vicinity.

VI. DESCRIPTION OF OBJECTS OF BONE

Antler Celt (Plate 37e). In chopping a small profile on the bank of site Np v2 an antler celt was found. This celt was polished and sharpened near the cutting edge. The base was the base of the antler where it was fastened onto the skull. No other examples of such an artifact are known for related areas.

Worked Antler tips (Plate 38f). Several tips of antlers were found that had been cut from the main body of the antler by cutting a ring around it and breaking it. Some of these showed use on the pointed tip of the antler. Some other examples of worked antler and bone are shown in Plate 37a-c. Antler tips were probably used as arrowhead flaking tools.

Bone Needles (Plate 38a). Two bone needle fragments were found in pits at the Gaston site. They appear to have been made from slivers of bird bone and both had a drilled hole. They were one-quarter of an inch wide, very thin and highly polished. They were not pointed, but flat and slightly rounded on the end. One was four inches long, but was broken at the hole.

Bone Fish-hook (Plate 38d). Two examples of fish-hooks were found. One was a completed hook an inch long. The other was a half of a hollow bone with an oval cut into it. This could then be cut to make one fish-hook.

Bone Beamer (Plate 39c). A few bone beamer fragments were found at the Gaston site. The two illustrated in Plate 39c are the head and distal ends of a wild turkey tibia. These were found together in Fea. 38, and are probably the ends of the same beamer. The side of the bone being worked so thin probably resulted in its being broken.

Plate 37

Bone Artifacts

Row A through C, worked antler and bone fragments.

	Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
Row A	619a1075	Hxv7	Sq. -60L140, Fea. 95
Row B	623a3	Npv2	Surface
Row C	620a45	Hxv8	Sq. 25, 6-12"

Row D, bone with small worked graving tip.

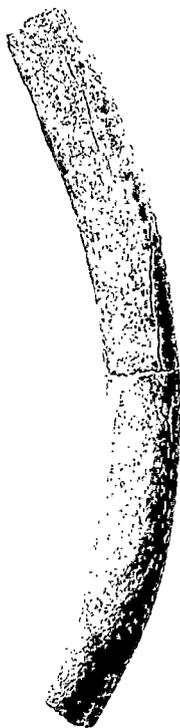
	Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
Row D	619a1333	Hxv7	Sq. -85R50, Fea. 161

Row E, antler celt with sharp cutting edge.

	Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
Row E	623a3	Npv2	Profile trench



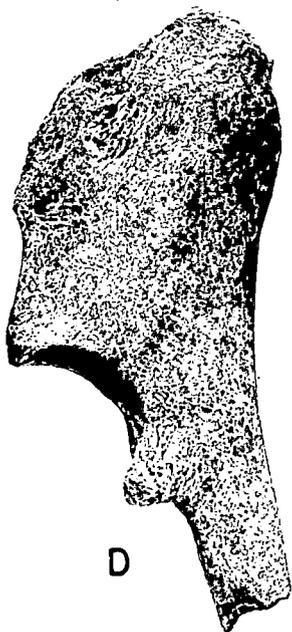
A



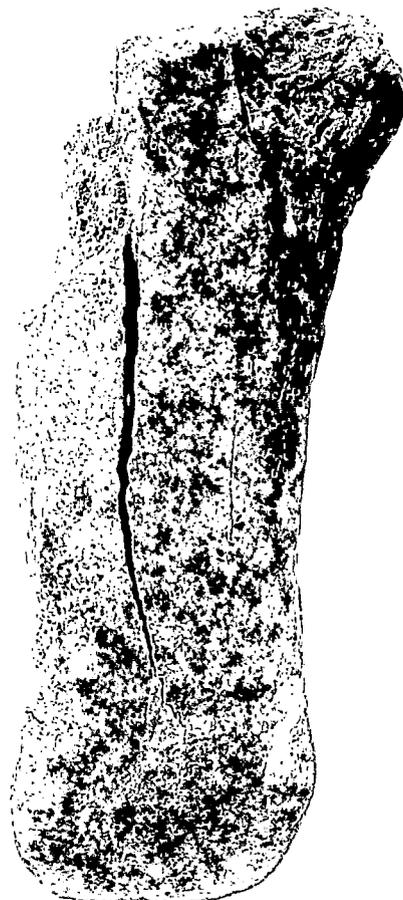
B



C



D



E



Plate 38

Bone Awls, Fishhooks and Worked Antler

Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
Row A, bone needles		
619a890	Hxv7	Sq. 35R175, Fea. 48
619a725	Hxv7	Sq. 35R95, Fea. 8
Row B, bone awls; left, is the Procyonlotor (ulna of a coon)		
619a1379	Hxv7	Sq. 0L20, Fea. 180
619a1439	"	Sq. -10L10, Fea. 195
619a1379	"	Sq. 0L20, Fea. 180
619a1379	"	Sq. 0L20, Fea. 180
619a1074	"	Sq. -60L140, Fea. 95
619a1170	"	Sq. -80L50, Fea. 116
619a914	"	Sq. 35R185, Fea. 53
Row C, small bone awls		
619a817	Hxv7	Sq. 35R135, Fea. 29
619a737	"	Sq. 35R95, Fea. 9
619a1439	"	Sq. -10L10, Fea. 195
619a1201	"	Sq. -25R230, Fea. 124
619a1439	"	Sq. -10L10, Fea. 195
619a1201	"	Sq. -25R230, Fea. 124
623a11	Npv2	Sq. 1, 0-6"
Row D, left, fishhook blank; right, completed fishhook		
619a736	Hxv7	Sq. 35R95, Fea. 9
620a34	Hxv8	Sq. 0, 12-18"
Row E, worked bird bone projectile points		
619a1438	Hxv7	Sq. -10L10, Fea. 195
623a10	Npv2	Sq. 1, 0-6"
Row F, worked antler tips		
620a99	Hxv8	Sq. 60R30, Fea. 1
619a1075	Hxv7	Sq. -60L140, Fea. 95



Bone Awls, Fishhooks and Worked Antler

Bone Projectile Points (Plates 38e and 39b). Several sharpened, hollowed out deer toes were found in excavating the Gaston site. These were probably used as projectile points. Bones of other animals were also found with a sharpened point and hollow at the base, probably used for the same purpose. The point on the left in Plate 39b is made of a bird bone. All these sharpened, hollowed, bone or antler objects were classified as Bone Projectile Points.

Bone Awls (Plates 38b,c and 39a). Quite a few bone awls were found during excavation. Most seem to have been made from slivers of deer bone, but some are of bird, and a few from other animals. Plate 38b is an awl made from the ulna of a coon. All are sharpened to a round or oval point, and many show signs of prolonged use, being very highly polished.

Bone from Refuse Pits. Large quantities of animal bone were recovered from pits during excavation. All fragments were saved even though some pits contained many pounds of bones. This animal bone refuse was examined by Dr. F. S. Barkalow and his graduate students in comparative Zoology at North Carolina State College, and their complete report is included in the Appendix.

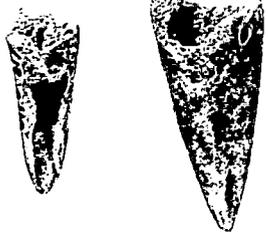
Plate 39

Bone Awls, Projectile Points and Beavers

	Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
Row A, bone awls			
	619a847	Hxv7	Sq. 35R145, Fea. 38
Row B, left, bird bone projectile point			
right, deer toe projectile point			
	619a849	Hxv7	Sq. 35R145, Fea. 38
Row C, bone awl fragments, the head and distal ends of a			
wild turkey tibia			
	619a848	Hxv7	Sq. 35R145, Fea. 38



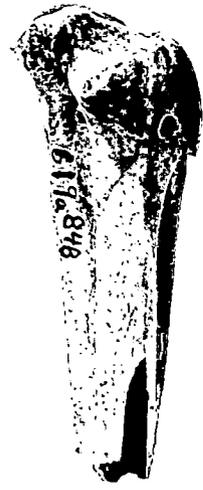
A



B



C



1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14

Bone Awl, Projectile Points and Beavers

VIII. DESCRIPTION OF ETHNO-BOTANICAL OBJECTS⁵⁰

Hickory Nut Shells (Plate 40d and f). Several pits at the Gaston site contained charred hickory nut shells. Feature 32 contained a quantity of hickory nut shells and the cotyledon of hickory nuts. These are probably the Pig-nut Hickory. A charred hickory nut meat is shown in Plate 40f.

Pine Cones (Plate 40e). Feature 130 contained a quantity of charred pine cone scales, pine wood twigs and oak wood fragments. The charred rachis of several small pine cones were also found (Plate 40e).

Shell (Plate 40a). Quite a few pits at the Gaston site contained large quantities of shell. The large majority of these shells were fresh water mussels, but a few snail shells were also found. These fresh water animals must have been utilized by food to some considerable extent as evidenced by their frequent concentration on the surface of Indian sites, and in refuse pits.

Wood Charcoal. Large quantities of wood charcoal were frequently found in pits obviously used as fire pits. These pits did not usually contain very much cultural

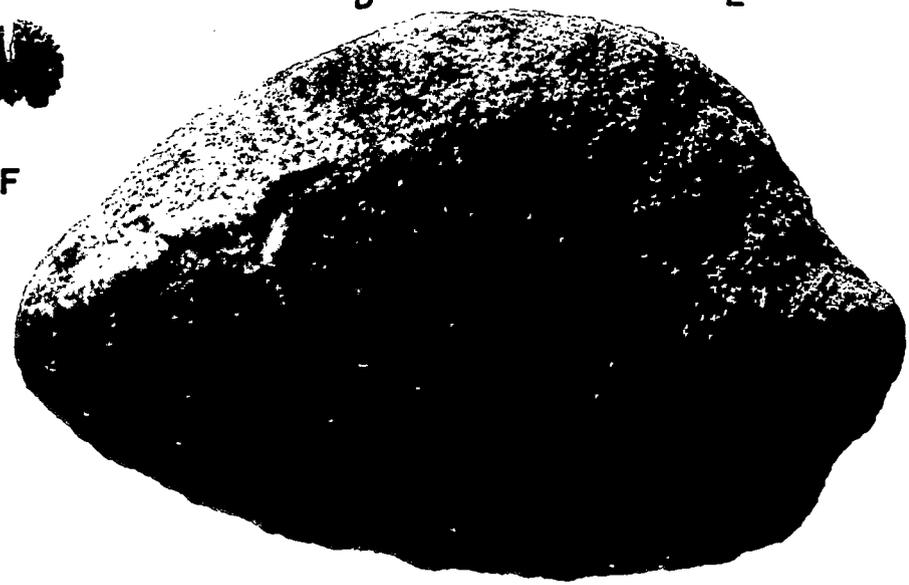
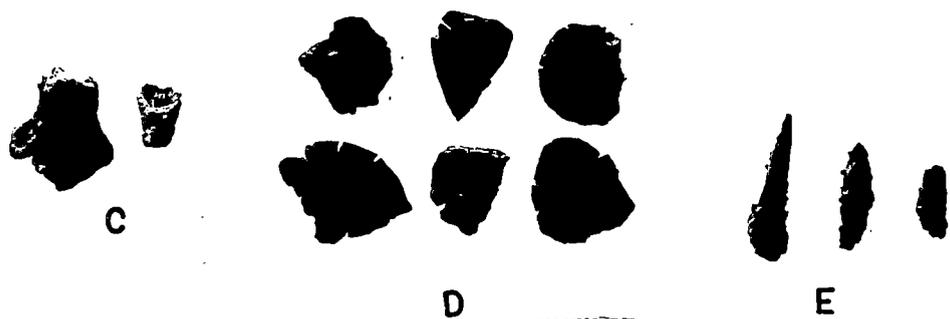
⁵⁰Dr. Edison Adams of the Botany Department at the University of North Carolina examined this material and identified the specimens.

material. Other pits used as refuse pits contained quantities of pottery and artifacts along with wood charcoal. Charcoal samples from several such pits were sent to the University of Michigan for radiocarbon analysis, and their report is presented elsewhere in this study.

Plate 40

Shell, Daub, Ochre, and Ethno-botanical Objects

	Catalog No.	Site No.	Location
Row A, mussel and snail shells found in large quantities on Indian sites, and in refuse pits.			
left:	623m31	Npv2	Sq. 1, Fea. 1
center:	619m1125	Hxv7	Sq. 0L150, Fea. 105
right:	620m27	Hxv8	Sq. 0, 0-6"
Row B, fired daub fragments indicating presence of plastered walls			
upper left:	619m1124	Hxv7	Sq. 0L150, Fea. 105
upper right:	619m1189	Hxv7	Sq. -25R220, Fea. 121
lower:	619m1100	"	Sq. -70L140, Fea. 102
	619m1124	"	Sq. 0L150, Fea. 105
	619m896	"	Sq. 35R175, Fea. 48
Row C, fired dirt dauber nests indicating the presence of houses			
	619m1273	Hxv7	Sq. 35R235, Fea. 148
Row D, charred hickory nut shells			
	619eb825	Hxv7	Sq. 35R135, Fea. 32
Row E, charred rachis of small pine cones			
	619eb1222	Hxv7	Sq. -25R240, Fea. 130
Row F, charred hickory nut meat			
	619eb475	Hxv7	Sq. 55R5, 12-18"
Row G, worked lump of red ochre			
	619m135	Hxv7	Sq. -60L60, 63"



Shell, Daub, Ochre, and Ethno-botanical Objects
Plate 40

CHAPTER IV

THE INTERPRETIVE ANALYSIS OF THE AREAL SURVEY

I. ASSUMPTIONS UNDERLYING THE USE OF THE SERIATION TECHNIQUE IN THE CERAMIC ANALYSIS

In the archaeological survey of the Lower Mississippi Valley conducted by Phillips, Ford and Griffin the technique of ceramic seriation was used by Ford in his analysis of the pottery types.¹ Seriation is a method devised to enable the archaeologist to place his pottery types in a time sequence relative to one another. An explanation of the typological concept involved in pottery classification is given by Phillips, Ford and Griffin, and also a detailed explanation of the assumptions and methodology involved in the use of the seriation technique.² A summary from their report of the assumptions is quoted later in this section.

The seriation technique is based on the variability of the relative popularity of types through time. This variability is a result of changing cultural ideas through time. Just as in our culture the popularity of various

¹Philip Phillips, James A. Ford, and James B. Griffin, "Archaeological Survey in the Lower Mississippi Alluvial Valley, 1940-1947," Papers of the Peabody Museum of Archaeology and Ethnology, Vol. XXV (Cambridge: 1951).

²Ibid., pp. 61-69; 219-236.

types of clothing changes with time, so in Indian culture the popularity of pottery types changed through time. The popular dress type for a certain period of time we call the "style". When the archaeologist uses the seriation method he is placing in their relative position in time, the pottery styles of the Indians.

He does this on the assumption that these styles occur in a certain percentage relationship one to the other at any particular point in time, and that the relationship constantly changes, and is never the same at any two periods in time. This is based on the assumption that when a new type is developed, or is introduced into the culture, its percentage of popularity is relatively small compared to the popularity of the prevailing style of the time. As time passes, and the new type gains in popularity, its percentage relationship will increase until it reaches its peak of popularity, at which time it will begin to decline. When this is plotted on a graph it is represented by a long single peak curve.

When several types of similar objects are plotted graphically, they will constitute a series of overlapping single peak curves representing the popularity peaks of the various types through time. To illustrate this, take the can opener in our own culture. The early can openers were of the "pump" variety that chewed open the lid of the

can, a later type was the "twist" type that had a wing-nut type screw on the side that cut open the lid. A third type is fastened on the wall and is operated by a crank. If the relative popularity curves of these types were plotted, they would form three overlapping curves. If percentage figures were available for the relative popularity of these three types at one period in time, and the "pump" type constituted seventy per cent, and the "twist" type twenty per cent, and the "crank" type ten per cent, then this particular relationship of percentages would have occurred at a relatively early period in our graph. If, on the other hand, the "crank" type constituted eighty per cent, and the "twist" type fifteen per cent, and the "pump" type only five per cent, then it would indicate that this set of percentage figures would be placed so that they fitted the graph somewhere near the late period.

This is what the archaeologist does when he classifies his pottery into types, and proceeds to construct a seriation graph from the relative percentages of the types as they occur on different village sites.

Before a description of the procedure involved is undertaken, a summary of the assumptions underlying the seriation technique will be presented as taken from Phillips, Ford, and Griffin. These assumptions are as follows:

- A. The distribution of prehistoric populations of the Survey Area was relatively stable.
- B. The majority of the village sites were probably inhabited for a short time as compared to the entire time with which we are dealing.
- C. The culture of the area in the main probably changed gradually rather than by means of mass migration from other areas.
- D. If propositions A and C were true, the pottery types which we had defined would each show a single-peak popularity curve when measured through time, but the duration of such peaks, and the resulting curves, would vary from one type to another.
- E. If D is true, then all the pottery-type frequency curves would be different in each part of the area on each time horizon, and a distinct pattern will appear when each part of the area is viewed through time.
- F. Our sampling technique has been successful in getting samples representing continuous segments of time in all parts of the area and also in securing enough material from the sites which we will treat to give a more or less reliable picture of the material available on the surface.³

From these assumptions it should be evident, that to use the seriation technique, it is necessary to assume that the percentage relationship of types as plotted at any one period in time, represents the relative popularity of those types at that time. In other words, it is assumed by the archaeologist, that the percentage relationship that exists between the pottery types he finds on a site, represents the popularity of these types among the people who occupied the

³Ibid., p. 223.

site at a particular period of time.

Therefore, if the types represent the occupation of the site by different peoples at different times, then the seriation graph the archaeologist constructs is nothing more than the percentage of the types of sherds the archaeologist found on the site, and could not possibly represent anything in terms of a culturally significant development of pottery types through time. When the chance of migrations of whole groups into an area is present, or when the chance of a long occupation of some, or many, of the sites in the seriation is present, then the validity of the seriation tool is decreased. For this reason the assumptions as outlined by Phillips, Ford and Griffin should be kept in mind by the archaeologist at all times when using the technique of seriation. It should be remembered that the technique was developed with agricultural pottery making cultures in mind, because it is assumed that there would be some homogeneity, and cultural continuity in such cultures. If this factor is forgotten or ignored, and percentage relationships between such things as projectile points and blades extending across cultural lines from Paleo-Indian to Historic times, are worked into a seriation graph, and some cultural significance in terms of cultural continuity is said to be derived therefrom, it would seem to be pushing the seriation technique a little beyond its intended limits.

II. THE METHOD OF THE CERAMIC SERIATION

ANALYSIS OF THE SITES

With the foregoing assumptions in mind, the procedure was as follows. The percentages for the pottery types from each site were computed on a calculating machine, and recorded on the analysis cards. These percentages were then plotted on a strip of one-half inch wide graph paper as a bar. Rather than having the starting point for the bars at the left, a line in the center was used as the starting point, and the percentage was halved, and a half plotted on each side of the center line. Sufficient space was kept between the bars to prevent overlapping.

Each bar, representing a pottery type, was plotted with a different colored pencil to aid in visually identifying the pottery type represented by the bar. Each strip was labeled with the site number.

After all the sites containing seventy or more sherds were plotted on a strip, the strips were then placed one above the other and the bars arranged so that they form an ascending or descending pattern from bottom to top. In

moving the bars in various positions in relation to one another, a pattern should appear if the types are valid as indicators of culture change through time. This pattern represents the single-peak curve, which on this type graph is shown as a bulge at the height of popularity for that particular type.

It is assumed that each strip, representing a site, is a picture of the popularity of the various types at a particular point in time when the site was occupied. Therefore, when the strips are arranged so that the majority of the types form a pattern, it is assumed that either the top or the bottom of the graph represents the older sites, and the other end represents the most recent sites. Which end is the oldest and which the most recent can not be determined by the seriation method. This must be determined by the evidence from the stratigraphic excavations.

In the first ceramic analysis, no pattern could be seen to appear as the strips were placed in various positions in relation to one another. The stratigraphic excavations also did not show a consistent pattern for the types as established at that time, other than the fact that Simple-stamped pottery consistently appeared in the top levels. This was not considered as sufficient evidence for the validity of the other types, so the second analysis was undertaken.

The second analysis was conducted in much the same manner as the first, using the newly established ceramic types. This time the pattern as seen in the seriation chart in Fig. 16 was established. Since the Gaston Simple-stamped type pottery appeared at one end of the seriation, and was also found in the plowed soil primarily, it was assumed that this end of the graph represented the late period. This threw the Vincent types as the oldest, and the Clement types as mid-way in time between the Vincent and the Gaston types. The stratigraphic evidence tended to support this conclusion. Figures 38 and 43 show the stratigraphic relationship of the various types, at the Gaston and Thelma sites.

A point which should be remembered in regard to these seriation graphs is that there are a number of variables involved, and the resulting graph may or may not represent a true picture of the ceramic relationships, but if the seriation is verified by stratigraphic excavation, then the assumption is that the graph is valid. It is valid, however, not as an exact picture of the relationship between sites, but as an indicator of relationships between ceramic types. Therefore, discussion as to the relative position of two sites that are near each other in the seriation is fruitless, however, sites from the area near the top of the graph could be compared with sites near the center and

at the bottom, but any closer comparison between sites would be pointless. One thing should be remembered in regard to these seriation graphs. The bulges of the major types are the significant thing, not the tapering ends which may be the result of intrusion or disturbance. The reader should keep this in mind when studying seriation graphs.⁴

III. A SUMMARY OF THE POTTERY TYPE RELATIONSHIPS FROM THE SITES IN THE SURFACE SURVEY

The seriated pottery type sequence of the sites in the Roanoke Rapids Basin is shown in Fig. 16. As can be seen, the Vincent series types occur in high percentages in sites near the bottom of the seriated sequence. This indicates that these sites were the earliest sites occupied by ceramic making people in the basin. A high percentage of the sites with Vincent series pottery predominating are located at the western end of the basin.

As the percentage bars for the Vincent series decrease, the Clement series bars increase. Along with this increase occurs an increase in the Net types. The

⁴James A. Ford, Measurements of Some Prehistoric Design Developments in the Southeastern States, Anthropological Papers of the American Museum of Natural History (New York: 1952), pp. 328-331.

Seriated Pottery Type Sequence of the Sites in the Roanoke Rapids Basin

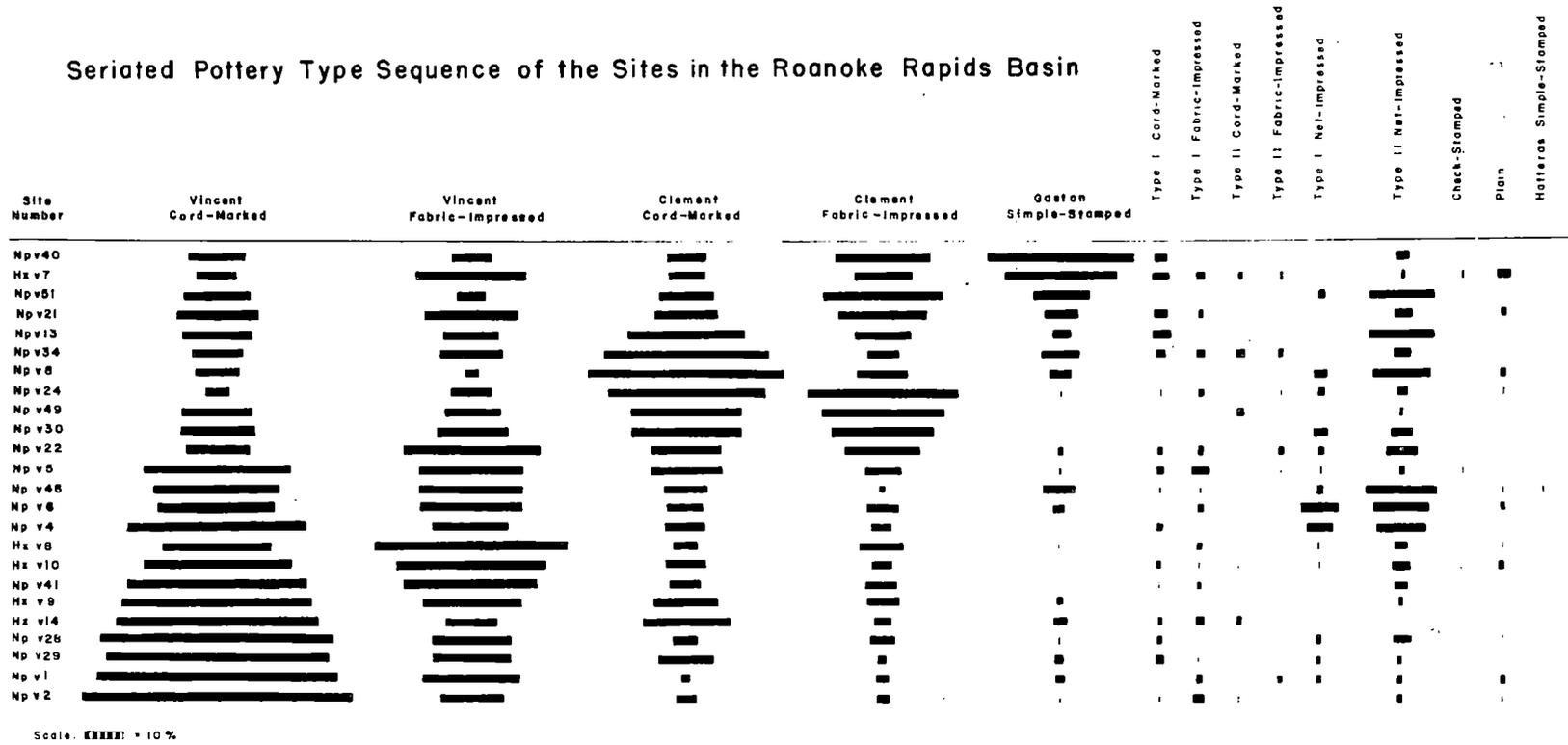


Figure 16

PERCENTAGE TOTALS FOR THE SITES IN THE CERAMIC SERIATION

Site No.	Sherd count	Vincent Cord	Vincent Fabric	Clement Cord	Clement Fabric	Gaston Simple Stamped	Type I Cord	Type I Fabric	Type II Cord	Type II Fabric	Net I	Net II	Check Stamped	Plain	Hatteras Simple Stamped	Total %
Npv40	71	14.1	9.9	9.9	23.9	36.6	2.8					2.8				100.0
Hxv7	618	9.9	27.5	9.2	14.5	27.5	4.0	1.9	.7	.3		.7	.5	3.2		100.0
Npv51	70	17.1	7.1	14.3	30.0	14.3					1.4	15.8				100.0
Npv21	117	21.4	23.9	16.2	22.2	7.7	2.6	.9				4.2		.9		100.0
Npv13	125	18.4	14.4	29.6	13.6	4.0	4.0					16.0				100.0
Npv34	99	13.1	16.2	42.4	8.1	9.1	2.0	2.0	2.0	1.0		4.1				100.0
Npv8	72	11.1	2.8	50.0	12.5	5.6					2.8	13.9		1.3		100.0
Npv24	969	6.2	10.3	40.5	37.7	.1	.2	.9			1.5	2.1		.3		100.0
Npv49	71	18.3	14.1	28.2	31.0				1.4			7.0				100.0
Npv30	99	19.2	18.2	28.3	26.3						3.0	5.0				100.0
Npv22	295	15.9	34.9	16.9	18.6	1.0	1.0	1.0		1.4	1.8	7.5				100.0
Npv5	336	37.8	26.5	17.9	9.2	.6	1.8	3.9		.3	.3	1.4	.3			100.0
Npv41	260	46.5	33.5	7.7	7.7		.4	1.2				3.0				100.0
Hxv10	690	38.3	38.5	9.9	5.0	.4	1.2	.4	.6		.3	4.1	.1	1.2		100.0
Hxv8	1476	27.8	49.3	6.4	10.9	.4		1.6			.5	2.6		.5		100.0
Npv46	884	31.5	26.7	11.3	1.7	7.7	.6	.5			1.4	18.0		.5	.1	100.0
Hxv9	76	48.7	25.0	15.8	7.9	1.3						1.3				100.0
Hxv14	91	52.7	13.2	22.0	4.4	3.3	1.1	2.2	1.1							100.0
Npv6	112	30.4	25.9	8.9	8.0	2.7		.9			8.9	13.4		.9		100.0
Npv4	125	46.4	19.2	10.4	4.8		1.6				5.6	12.0				100.0
Npv28	602	60.6	19.6	6.4	6.4	.3	1.0	.3			.8	4.3		.3		100.0
Npv29	161	57.1	20.5	13.7	1.9	1.9	1.9	1.9	.6			1.2	1.2	1.2		100.0
Npv1	96	62.5	25.0	2.2	3.1	2.2		1.0		1.0	1.0	1.0		1.0		100.0
Npv2	636	70.1	15.7	5.2	3.0	.5	.6	2.5	.8		.3	1.1		.2		100.0
Total	8151															

Table I

majority of the Type II sherds appear at this same time, though few were found in the survey. The Type II sherds are those that closely resemble Coe's Roanoke Series from the Clarksville area.

As a decline in the Clement series percentage is seen, an increase in the Gaston Simple Stamped sherds occurs. Along with this increase there is an increase in the Type I Cord-marked percentage, the type that resembles Coe's Clarksville cord-marked. Also appearing to be associated with this time level is the small amount of check stamped sherds represented on Hx v7, along with the Plain type. Site Np v46 should perhaps have been seriated higher in the graph as indicated by the relatively high percentage of Gaston Simple Stamped pottery, and by the fact that the only sherd of Hatteras Simple Stamped (known to occur at the historic level), was found on this site. However, the high percentage of Vincent type material also occurring on the site, caused the bar to be placed lower.

From Fig. 16, it would appear then, that there was a developmental sequence of pottery types from an early popularity of the Vincent Series, to a later popularity of the fine sand tempered Clement Series along with the Net types, and these in turn were replaced in popularity by the Gaston Series.

IV. THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE ARTIFACTS AND CERAMIC TYPES FROM THE AREAL SURVEY

The ceramic seriation chart in Figure 16 was used as a basis for the analysis of the artifacts. The sites that seriated near the top of this chart containing a high percentage of Gaston type pottery have been tabulated in Table II. Of the seventy-six projectile points on these sites, all but five were of the triangular types. Twenty-seven Clarksville type points, and twenty-five Roanoke points account for the majority of projectile points found on these sites.

Table III is a tabulation of the sites seriated below the Gaston ceramic sites, and containing a high percentage of Clement type pottery. Although the projectile point count drops considerably, the triangle types are about equally divided with the known pre-ceramic stemmed types. There were no Clarksville type points found on these sites.

Table IV shows the relationship between sites with a high percentage of Vincent type pottery and the artifacts on these sites. It is notable that again the Clarksville points are virtually absent, only one being found on the Thelma site (Hx v8). This site also has the widest variety of projectile point types, indicating a long occupation of

the site by many different cultural groups. It is interesting to note that eight of the nine Thelma points are associated with the Clement-Vincent ceramic period. An increase in the Halifax type is also evident, and if this type had not been found in a very old pre-ceramic context, it might be concluded that the Halifax projectile points were associated with Vincent type ceramics. Erosion had evidently revealed more of the deeper cultural deposits on these Vincent sites than on the Clement-Gaston sites. It should also be borne in mind that there are almost twice as many sites with Vincent pottery than there are those with Gaston and Clement types combined.

The significant information revealed by these three tables is that there is a definite association between the Clarksville type points and the Gaston type ceramics. Eliminating the projectile points that are definitely assigned to pre-ceramic contexts as a result of their being found in stratified layers, it appears that the triangle Roanoke projectile point was the major type used during the Vincent-Clement-Gaston occupation of the basin, or in other words, during ceramic making times.

The above conclusions are further illustrated in Table V. This table is composed of sites that were not included in the ceramic seriation chart because they had less than seventy sherds. They are also sites that contain

more than two projectile points. All of these sites contain a majority of Vincent-Clement type ceramics, with the exception of Np v45 which contains fifty per cent Gaston pottery, and Np v60 which contains eighteen per cent Gaston type sherds. These two sites are also the only ones in this group of sites that have Clarksville type projectile points, again illustrating the association of Gaston ceramics with Clarksville points.

The projectile point type with the largest total from these sites is the Roanoke point, indicating again the association of this type with the Vincent-Clement culture period.

Analysis of the excavations conducted at the Gaston and Thelma sites reveal further the relationships found in this analysis of the basin survey data.

Table VI shows the relationship between the projectile point types and the stone material used. This table reveals that the most popular material for the Clarksville projectile points was white quartz. The material preferred for the Roanoke points was white quartz and slate. The popular Halifax material was white quartz. This material was available locally, which may account for its preference for projectile points in cultures separated by thousands of years.

A comparison between known pre-ceramic projectile

point types with ceramic serations is absurd. However, the presence of a wide variety of projectile point types on a site, indicating the occupation of the site by a number of cultural groups, is significant. Site Hxv7, Hxv8, Npv20, Npv29, and Npv30 are such sites (Table II-V). Hxv7 and Hxv8 were excavated, and the pre-ceramic context of several of these points was verified at Hxv7, the Gaston Site. The oldest type point found during the survey was found on site Npv2, and is described under the category "Other".

V. THE INTERPRETIVE SUMMARY OF THE AREAL SURVEY

The basin survey revealed the presence of seventy-three concentrations of cultural material in the area to be flooded. Analysis of the ceramic material revealed fourteen pottery types representing three major periods of pottery style changes. These three main series from oldest to most recent are the Vincent, which represents the earliest popular ceramic style; the Clement, which replaced the Vincent in popularity; and the Gaston, which was the latest popular style, and which shows considerable influence from the Siouan ceramic tradition further into the Piedmont.

Stone projectile points collected during the survey represent a variety of known and unknown culture complexes dating from perhaps ten thousand years ago, to within the historic period. There is a definite correlation between

the Clarksville type projectile point and the Gaston type ceramics, and between the Roanoke point and the Vincent-Clement pottery.

Typologically the Gaston ceramic material is related to ceramics used by known historic groups, therefore, the Gaston occupation of the basin is thought to have taken place between A.D. 1500 and A.D. 1700.⁵ This Gaston ceramic material is related to the earlier Clement series, and is thought to have developed out of a Vincent-Clement ceramic tradition. The Vincent-Clement ceramics could be placed in the Roanoke Culture Period on the basis of its relation to the Clarksville Area, and is thought to have extended from the first introduction of pottery into the basin around A.D. 500, to about A.D. 1500, when the Gaston types began to develop out of this Roanoke ceramic tradition.

A number of projectile points known to have occurred in pre-ceramic contexts were also found in the survey. These include the Guilford, Halifax, Savannah River, Morrow Mountain types. Several sites contained a number of these pre-ceramic types, indicating occupation of the site by cultural groups over a long period of time. Sites Hxv7, Hxv8, Npv30, Npv29, Npv20, are such sites (Tables II-V).

⁵Estimate made in January 1956 for display at the State Museum in Raleigh, North Carolina.

Verification of the pre-ceramic context of a number of these types was found on the Gaston Site, and is reported in a later section.

ARTIFACTS FROM SITES HAVING HIGH PERCENTAGE OF GASTON POTTERY

<u>Site Number -</u>	<u>Npv40</u>	<u>Hxv7</u>	<u>Npv51</u>	<u>Npv21</u>	<u>Total</u>
<u>Projectile Points</u>					
Clarksville		27			27
Roanoke	2	22		1	25
Large Triangle	1	13		2	16
Crude Triangle	1	2			3
Thelma		1			1
Small Savannah River					
Large Savannah River		1			1
Halifax					
Guilford		1			1
Morrow Mountain					
Small Oval Blade					
Large Oval Blade					
Other		2			2
Total	4	69		3	76
<u>Objects of Stone</u>					
Abraded Stone		9		1	10
Pecked Stone	1	5			6
Center Pecked Stone		1			1
Pitted Stone		1			1
Steatite Sherds	1	6			7
Celts and Fragments		2			2
Drilled Stone Gorgets					
Scraper					
Pecked Atlatl Fragment		1			1
Mortar		1			1
Chipped Stone Ax					
Pecked Stone Ring					
Stone Pipe Fragment					
<u>Objects of Clay</u>					
Clay Pipes and Frag.	1	1		1	1
Daub Fragments				1	1
European Trade Pipe Frag.					
Colonial Clay Pipe Frag.		1			1

Table II

ARTIFACTS FROM SITES HAVING HIGH PERCENTAGE
OF CLEMENT POTTERY

<u>Site Number -</u>	<u>Npv13</u>	<u>Npv34</u>	<u>Npv8</u>	<u>Npv24</u>	<u>Npv49</u>	<u>Npv30</u>	<u>Total</u>
<u>Projectile Points</u>							
Clarksville							
Roanoke		1					1
Large Triangle							
Crude Triangle						2	2
Thelma	1		1			1	3
Small Savannah						1	1
Large Savannah						1	1
Halifax							
Guilford							
Morrow Mountain			1				1
Small Oval Blade	1						1
Large Oval Blade						1	1
Other		1	1			1	3
Total	2	2	3			7	14
<u>Objects of Stone</u>							
Abraded Stone							
Pecked Stone	2			1			3
Center Pkd. Stone							
Pitted Stone	1						1
Steatite Sherds	2					1	3
Celts							
Drilled Gorgets							
Scraper							
Pecked Atlatl							
Mortar							
Chipped Ax						1	1
Stone Ring							
<u>Objects of Clay</u>							
Clay Pipes							
Daub Fragments							
Trade Pipes			7				7
Colonial Pipes							

Table III

ARTIFACTS FROM SITES HAVING HIGH PERCENTAGE
OF VINCENT POTTERY

Site Number -	Npv22	Npv5	Npv46	Npv6	Npv4	Hxv8	Hxv10	Npv41	Hxv9	Hxv14	Npv28	Npv29	Npv1	Npv2	Total
<u>Projectile Pts.</u>															
Clarksville						1									1
Roanoke			3			5		1		1		4			14
Large Triangle			4			7		1							12
Crude Triangle						1					1				2
Thelma						4					1				5
Small Savannah															
Large Savannah						1	1					2			4
Halifax	1		1			7	1				2	2		1	15
Guilford						1									1
Morrow Mountain						1									1
Small Oval Blade						5								1	6
Large Oval Blade						1						2			3
Other	1					4						3		1	9
Total	2		8			38	2	2		1	4	13		3	73
<u>Objects of Stone</u>															
Abraded Stone							1								1
Pecked Stone	2									1		1			4
Center Pkd. Stone							2								2
Pitted Stone									1						1
Steatite Sherds			5							1	1	3			10
Celts						1									1
Drilled Gorgets			1			1									2
Scraper						1									1
Pecked Atlatl															
Mortar					1										1
Stone Ring															
Stone Pipe		1													1
<u>Objects of Clay</u>															
Clay Pipes												1			1
Daub Fragments															
Trade Pipes															
Colonial Pipes															
<u>Objects of Bone</u>															
Antler Celt (from bank profile)														1	1

Table IV

ARTIFACTS FROM SITES WITH VINCENT-CLEMENT POTTERY, THAT
WERE NOT INCLUDED IN THE CERAMIC SERIATION CHART*

Site Number -	Npv11	Npv12	Npv14	Npv15	Npv17	Npv18	Npv20	Npv36	Npv45**	Npv56	Npv59	Npv60***	Total
<u>Projectile Points</u>													
Clarksville									2			1	3
Roanoke	1	1	1	2	3	2		3	2	5		3	23
Large Triangle				2						4			6
Crude Triangle	2									2			4
Thelma			1			2	1						4
Small Savannah			1										1
Large Savannah				2			2				2		6
Halifax		1					2						3
Guilford		1					3						4
Morrow Mountain		1		1									2
Small Oval Blade							3				2		5
Large Oval Blade							3				2		5
Other						1	1						2
Total	3	4	3	7	3	5	15	3	4	11	6	4	68
<u>Objects of Stone</u>													
Abraded Stone										1			1
Pecked Stone	2												2
Center Pkd. Stone							1			1			2
Pitted Stone					1		1						2
Steatite Sherds													
Celts					1								1
Drilled Gorgets										1			1
Scraper													
Pecked Atlatl													
Mortar													
Stone Ring													
Stone Pipe													
<u>Objects of Clay</u>													
Clay Pipes													
Daub Fragments													
Trade Pipes													
Colonial Pipes													

* Sites included in this table are those having less than seventy sherds, and more than two projectile points.

** 50% of the pottery from this site was Gaston.

*** 18% of the pottery from this site was Gaston.

Table V

PROJECTILE POINTS FROM SURFACE SURVEY OF SITES
IN THE BASIN ACCORDING TO THE TYPE OF STONE**

Material**	S	Q	W	C	F	D	Total
<u>Projectile Points</u>							
Clarksville	5		27	4			36
Roanoke	22	5	38	3	1		69
Large Triangle	15	7	18				40
Crude Triangle	2		9	1			12
Thelma	6	1	5		1		13
Small Savannah R.	1	1			1		3
Large Savannah R.	2	6	3		1	2	14
Halifax	1	3	15				19
Guilford	3	3					6
Morrow Mountain	3		4				7
Small Oval Blade	4		8				12
Large Oval Blade	4	3	3		1		11
Other	6	3	4		2		15
Total	74	32	134	8	7	2	257

* This table represents the total for all sites in
the survey

** S= Slate, Q= Quartzite, W= White quartz,

C= Crystal quartz, F= Felsite, D= Diorite

Table VI

CHAPTER V

EXCAVATION OF THE GASTON SITE

I. DESCRIPTION OF THE GASTON SITE

Hx v7 (Plate 41a). One mile upstream from Hx v6, in a large bottom land enclosed on the upstream and downstream sides by a high ridge of land extending to the river's edge, is the Gaston Site. The site is located near the downstream side of a ridge of rock, where the elevation above the river is the highest, being about thirty feet. There is a declining slope away from the site toward the downstream side, and toward the foot of the basin rim at the side away from the river. At this lowest point near the base of the basin rim, there is a swamp, and it is here that the Seaboard Airline Railroad fill and track parallel the river.

There is a small island and some canal locks near the bank which represent what is left of a portage canal which was used to by-pass the rapids, which are near the ridge of land above the site (Plate 41b). See Map 7 for a map of the Gaston Site.

The site extends from the ridge downstream for about two hundred yards and possibly more, and for about a hundred yards between the river and the swamp. Part of

the site was undoubtedly cut away when the canal was constructed, causing the present river position to be somewhat further into the site than previously.

The soil is composed of river deposited sand colored black near the surface by the midden and humus of occupation. The sand underneath this two foot midden mantle is yellow. The presence of river deposited sand at an elevation of thirty feet above the present level of the river, is evidence of the magnitude of some of the floods which must have inundated the basin in the past. The presence of the ridge of rock above the site is the reason the deposited sand has managed to escape the meanderings and floods of the Roanoke. On the downstream side of these ridges of rock the elevation of the bottom land above the river is invariably higher than elsewhere throughout the basin, and at this site it is higher than usual, thus affording an excellent village and camp site. Another factor probably influencing the utilization of this site for occupation, is the same as that which resulted in the construction of the canal at this location. That is, if the river is used for transportation the boats must be portaged around the rapids, thus funneling all river travelers over this site.

The site had been in cultivation, and bulldozers had done very little disturbing of the surface to any depth.

A wider variety of cultural material was found on

Plate 41

- a. The Gaston Site looking west, showing the rapids to the right, and the point of rock to the left that caused the stratification of the site.
- b. The rapids and canal lock looking west from the Gaston Site.

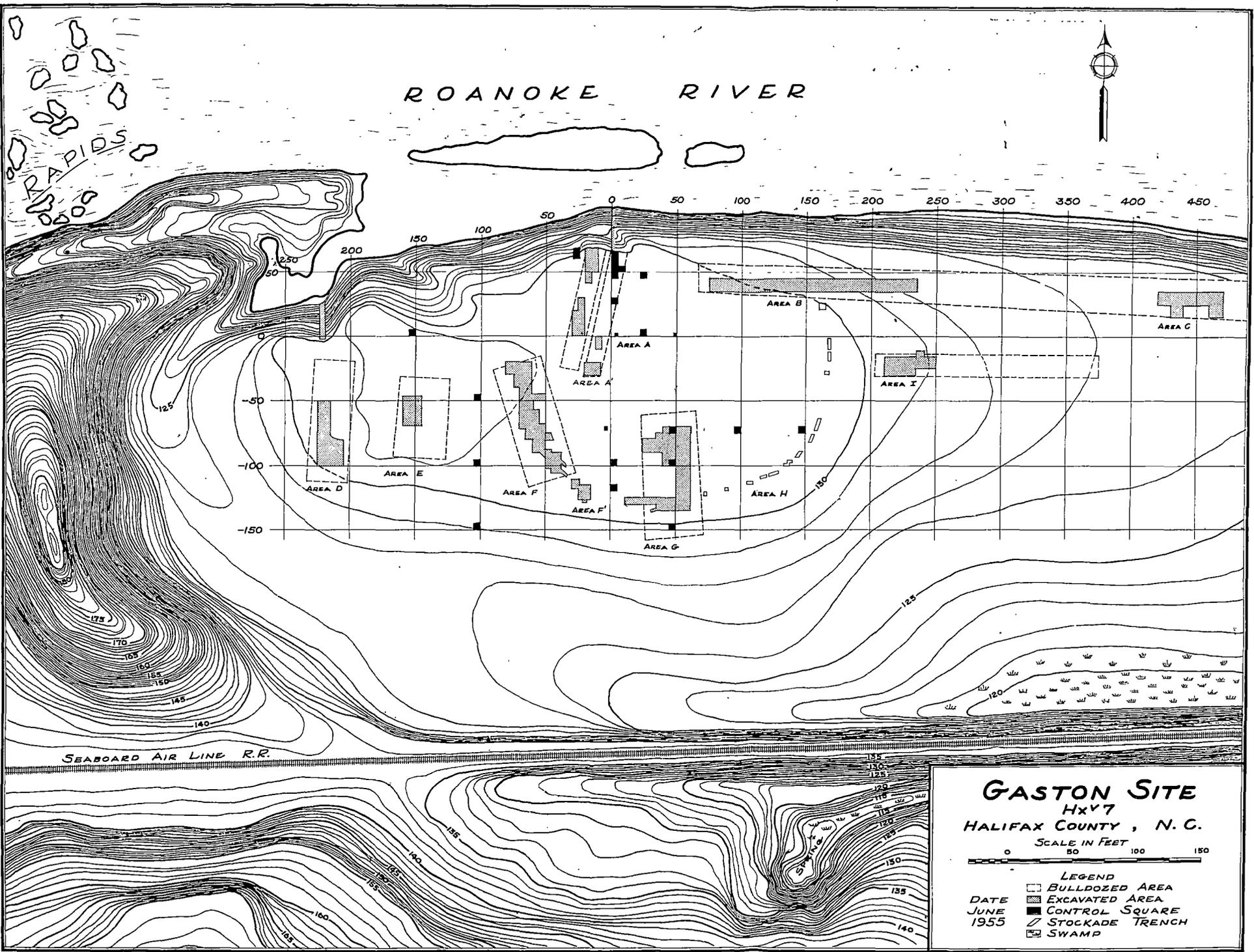


a
Gaston Site Looking West



b
Rapids and Canal Lock Looking West
Plate 41

ROANOKE RIVER



GASTON SITE
 Hxy7
 HALIFAX COUNTY, N. C.

SCALE IN FEET
 0 50 100 150

- LEGEND**
- ▨ BULLDOZED AREA
 - ▩ EXCAVATED AREA
 - CONTROL SQUARE
 - - - STOCKADE TRENCH
 - ~ SWAMP

DATE
 JUNE
 1955

this site than on many of the others, so this, plus the geological factors already mentioned, resulted in this site being selected for excavation.

The purpose of the excavation was to determine whether or not stratigraphy existed that would aid in further interpretation of the data collected through the survey of the basin. If stratigraphy or superposition of cultural material could be found, it would enable a more complete relative and absolute determination of the cultures once occupying the basin, and give a reference point upon which to analyze the surface collections from the seventy-three sites.

II. THE METHOD OF EXCAVATING THE CERAMIC LEVEL CONTROL SQUARES AT THE GASTON SITE

The first step in excavating this site was to survey it with a transit, and establish a base line and a zero line. The base line ran east and west and the zero line, north and south. Stakes were driven along these lines every twenty-five feet.

The excavated squares and areas were numbered according to their position in relation to the base and zero lines. All squares to the north of the base line are plus squares, and those to the south are minus squares. All squares to the right of the zero line when facing north are

R squares, and those to the left are L squares. Thus, square -70L60 is seventy feet south of the base line, and sixty feet left of the zero line. The right, south corner is used as the one to designate a square.¹

An approach trench five feet wide was dug on the edge of the river bank at the zero line, to a depth of three feet. This was done for the purpose of determining the depth of the midden deposit on the site. The midden depth at this point was twenty-four inches, and under this mantle of black midden was a light yellow colored sand. A few chips were found in this yellow sand, and further examination of the yellow sand was planned after control squares of the midden deposit were excavated.

It was found through excavation of this approach trench, that a change in the color of the midden deposit could be detected at the bottom of the plowed soil level. This change varied from eight to eleven inches depending upon how deep the bulldozers had disturbed the surface of the ground above the square. Because of this visible change in the soil color between the plowed and the undisturbed levels, all squares were excavated to this soil change in one unit, and the remainder was taken in six

¹Method used by the Research Laboratory of Anthropology at the University of North Carolina.

inch levels.

The approach trench was continued for three five-foot squares along the zero line. The method of procedure follows.

All soil from all levels in the square was sifted in an eighteen by twenty-four inch wheeled cart with a three-eighths inch mesh screen bottom. This cart was rolled rapidly back and forth on a frame. All bone, worked chips, projectile points, sherds, etc., were picked out of the sifter, and placed in paper bags marked with the site number, square number, and level in inches.

When the midden deposit had been sifted in this manner, and the yellow sand was reached, it was trowelled in order to reveal any pit outlines that intruded into this yellow sand. When these were present, their size and position was plotted on a graph of the square. Any notes as to depth of pits, contents, relationships, and other incidental information, were made on this same graph of the square. All pits were given feature numbers and they were excavated and sifted. A shovel was used in the pits until large fragments of bone or pottery began showing up in the screen, or until some object was struck by the shovel. When this happened, a trowel was used to work more carefully around the object. A detailed method of feature excavation is included in a later section of this report.

Figure 17 shows the vertical profiles of the control squares at the Gaston Site. Figure 18 illustrates some of the horizontal profiles of control squares, and others are illustrated on the charts showing the various areas cleared by the bulldozers.

III. METHOD USED IN EXCAVATING WITH BULLDOZERS AND ROAD GRADERS AT THE GASTON SITE

After twenty five-foot squares were excavated at various intervals over the site, it was felt that an adequate control sample had been made, and that what was needed was a larger sample of the pits which intruded into the yellow sand at the bottom of the midden layer. For this purpose two road graders were brought to the site to remove the twenty-four inches of midden from a section of the site paralleling the river at the downstream end.

A strip twenty feet wide and one hundred yards long was removed by the graders in less than a day. While they were at work, they were followed, and any artifacts found were kept and marked "after scraper". The drivers of the graders were instructed to watch for pits and burials, and artifacts. Many objects were no doubt destroyed in this process, but in the very limited time available for excavation of this site, it proved to be an excellent method for recovering much more information than would be possible

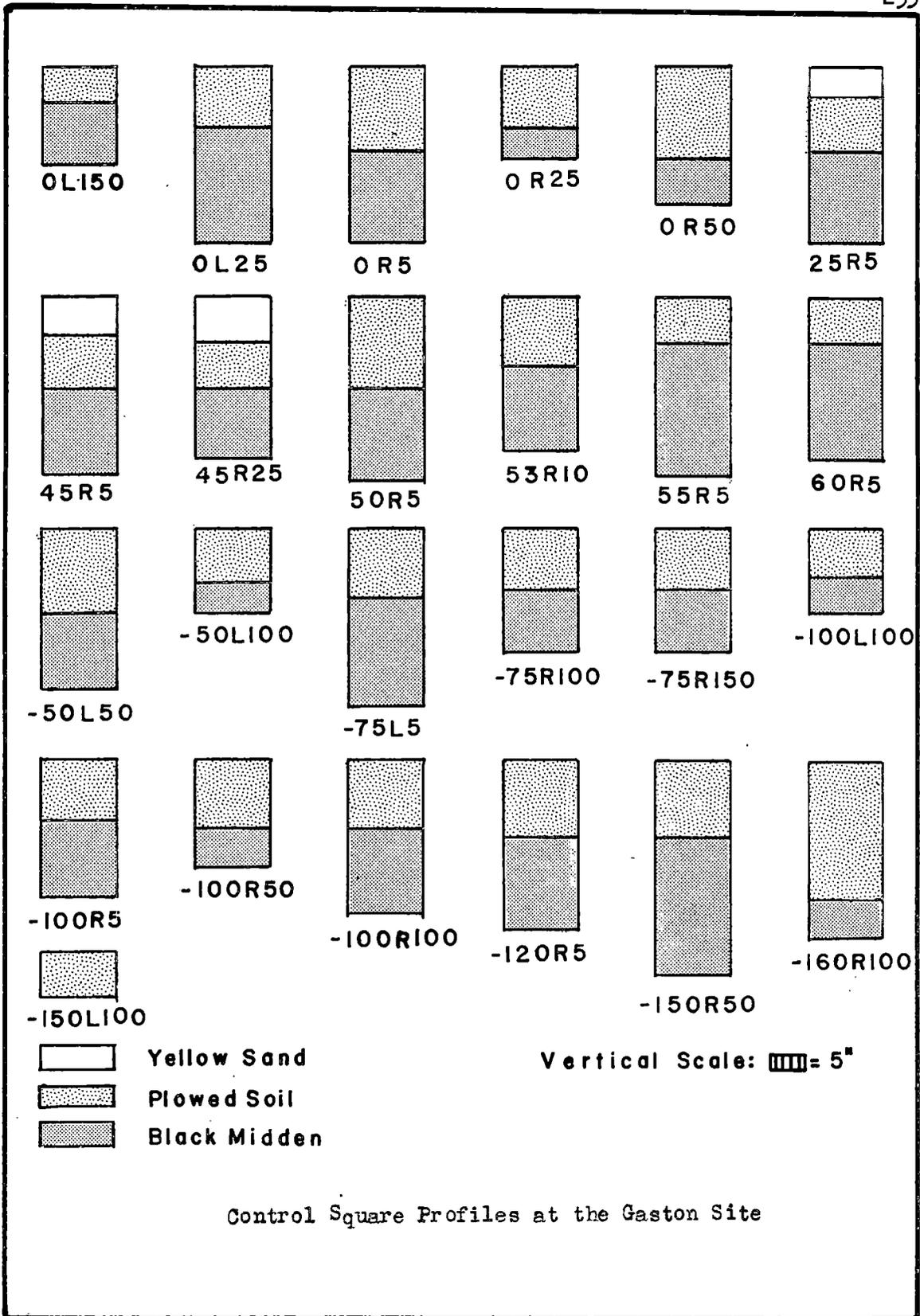


Figure 17

Figure 18

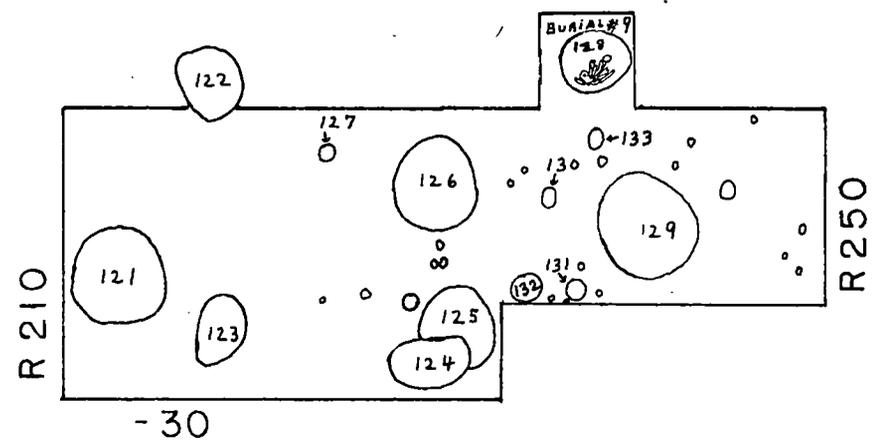
Areas I, A', F' and Control Squares at the Gaston Site

Area I, (See Map 7) showing outline and position of the features excavated in the area.

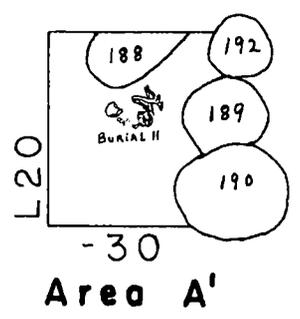
Area A', showing position of burial #11, and features near it.

Area F', showing rock pile, (feature 65-A) and clay piles in relation to a row of stockade wall postmold patterns.

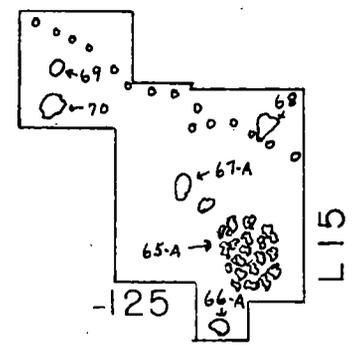
Control Squares, horizontal profile of several control squares showing pit outlines intruding into the yellow sand at the bottom of the square.



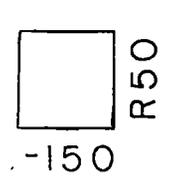
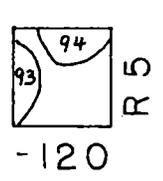
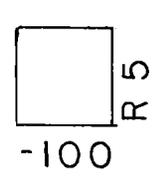
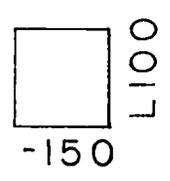
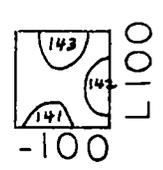
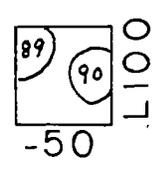
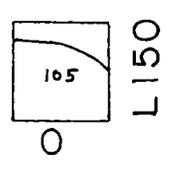
Area I



Area A'



Area F'



Control Squares

Hx v7

Scale = 5'

Figure 18

otherwise. Objects such as boatstones, celts, gorgets and even a fragile platform pipe were recovered behind the graders (Plate 42).

When the graders were nearing the bottom of the midden layer the drivers were instructed to watch for the dark pit outlines in the yellow sand, and to stop scraping an area when these began to show clearly. As an area was finished by the graders, sticks were placed in the discolored pit areas so that they could be located later when the sun had faded the soil and made the pits more difficult to see (Plate 43a).

Bulldozers as well as road graders were used for the purpose just described, and it seems appropriate to mention something of the relative merits of these two types of machines.

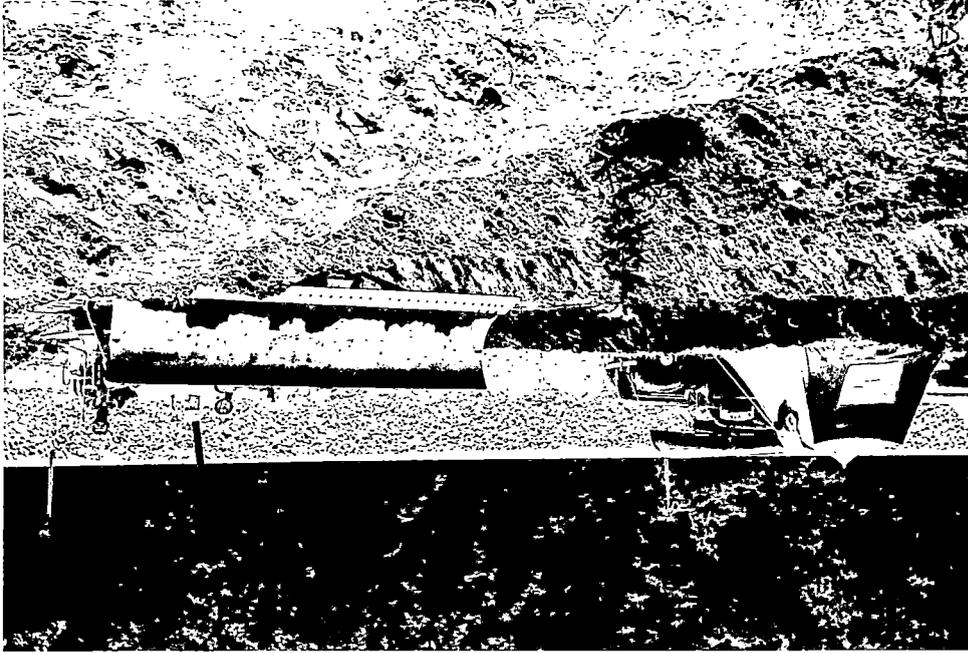
At this site where sand was being moved, the bulldozer was much more effective in moving more sand in a shorter time, and was also more successful in leaving a smoothed surface at the pit level. This was due to the caterpillar treads which tended to sit on top of the sand, while the large wheels of the road graders would sink into the soft sand if the load they were pushing became very heavy. The graders were forced to work slower, and to shave the ground in smaller bites. On sites where clay, rather than sand is being moved, there would be an advantage

Plate 42

Using Bulldozers and Road Graders at the Gaston Site

- a. looking for artifacts in area disturbed by road graders at the Gaston Site.
- b. bulldozer removing midden from the Gaston Site. Camp site to the left, railroad fill to the south of the site in the background.

Using Bulldozers and Road Graders at the Gaston Site
b
Plate 42



in using road graders, so smaller levels could be removed, thus giving more opportunity for the archaeologist to observe the removal of the midden in a more controlled manner.

IV. THE METHOD OF EXCAVATING THE FEATURES EXPOSED BY ROAD GRADERS AND BULLDOZERS AT THE GASTON SITE

After the pits were exposed by the road graders and bulldozers, measurements were made from the base and zero lines, and a line was strung as a reference in the scraped area. From this line, ten foot squares were marked off with string, and the square was troweled. This was done so that a photograph of the discolorations in the square could be made, and the post mold patterns and pits plotted on a graph of the square. The photographs were taken from the top of the sifter frame and were always taken with the camera facing south. This is not as desirable as taking a photograph of a square with the camera lens directly over the center, but it is a good means of recording what was seen from that angle (Plate 43b).

The sand presented a problem here that probably would not be encountered in a clay soil. The troweling of the ten foot area to expose the soil discoloration for photographing and plotting, could not be done fast enough to prevent the first part troweled from fading. In order to



a

Bulldozed Area Showing Features Marked with Sticks



b

Trowelled Square Showing Feature Outlines

combat this, a canvas was placed over the first half as it was troweled, and then removed when the last half was finished. The result was two halves of the square with different moisture contents and colors. The canvas was done away with in favor of a gradually changing color tone. On cloudy days this problem did not present itself since the moisture evaporated at a slower rate, and the troweling could be finished before much fading of the soil color was evident.

After being photographed and plotted on a graph of the square, the pits were excavated and sifted, and the material from each placed in a bag with the site number, square number, and feature number written on the side. The pits were cleaned of discolored soil to the edges and the bottom. Usually the sifter was placed over a pit just excavated, and the soil from the next pit sifted into it. After excavation of the pits in one ten foot square was completed, the adjoining ten foot square was strung off and the process repeated.

The square sheets on which the excavated pit outlines were plotted were all combined into a master graph of the excavated area. Each one of these bulldozed areas was assigned an area letter from A through I, and each area plotted can be seen in Figures 19 through 24.

Sometimes when excavating a feature in these bull-

dozed areas, or in the process of excavating a control square, a concentration of pottery or animal bone was encountered. These were cleaned with the trowel and brushes, and photographs made before the concentration was removed. One such concentration of pottery was found in feature 199 while excavating square 50R5 (Plate 44a), and when the fragments were glued together, they formed the large pot fragment of Clement Fabric Impressed pottery seen in Plate 10.

Plate 44b shows the bottom plate of a turtle shell with two square holes cut into one edge. This was found while excavating feature 129. Features containing burials were given a burial number and referred to by the burial number. Plate 44c shows burial #1 in feature 9. The burials are discussed in a separate section of this report.

V. DESCRIPTION OF THE EXCAVATED FEATURES AT THE GASTON SITE

The features at the Gaston site consisted primarily of large pits shown in Figures 19-24. The few pits shown that have no numbers are those that were not excavated.

After the bulldozers had removed the midden deposit from an area, the trowelled squares were plotted on a graph. If the excavated pit outline was different from the visual outline when first plotted, the correction was made on the square sheet.

Plate 44

- a. pottery concentration in feature 199, later glued together to make large fragment of Clement Fabric Impressed pot (Plate 10).
- b. worked turtle shell in feature 129 showing square cut holes.
- c. burial #1 in feature 9 at the Gaston Site.



a



b

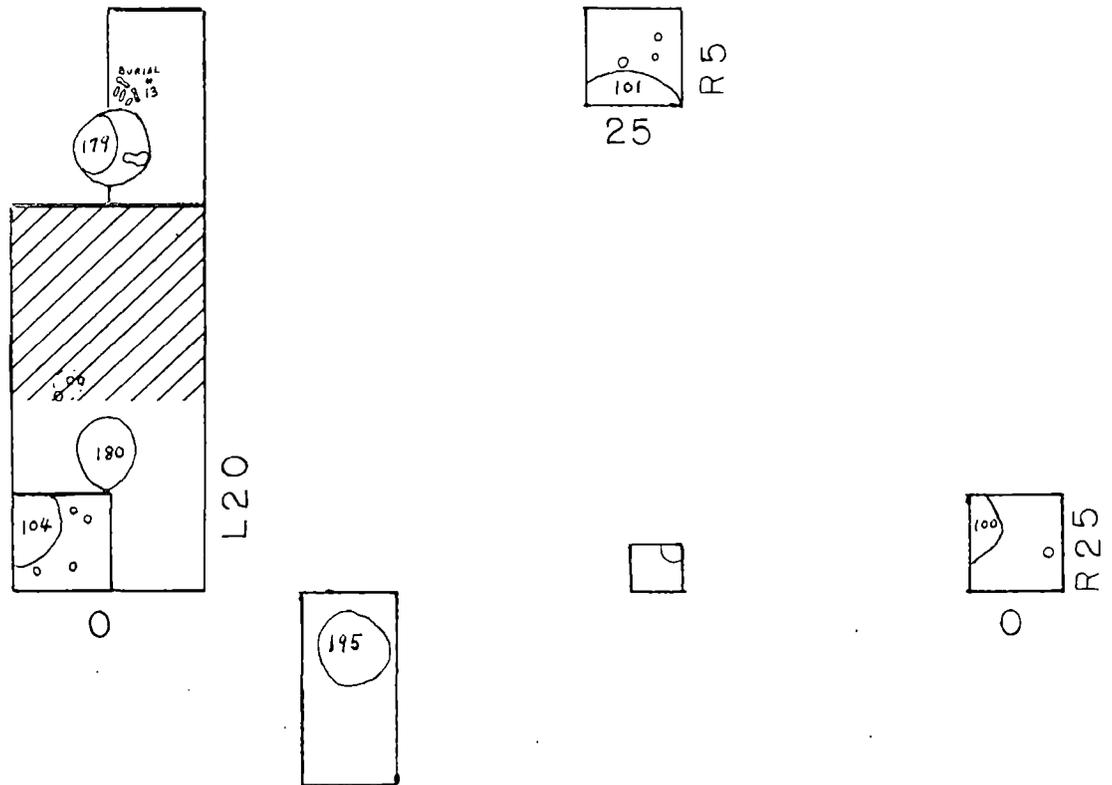
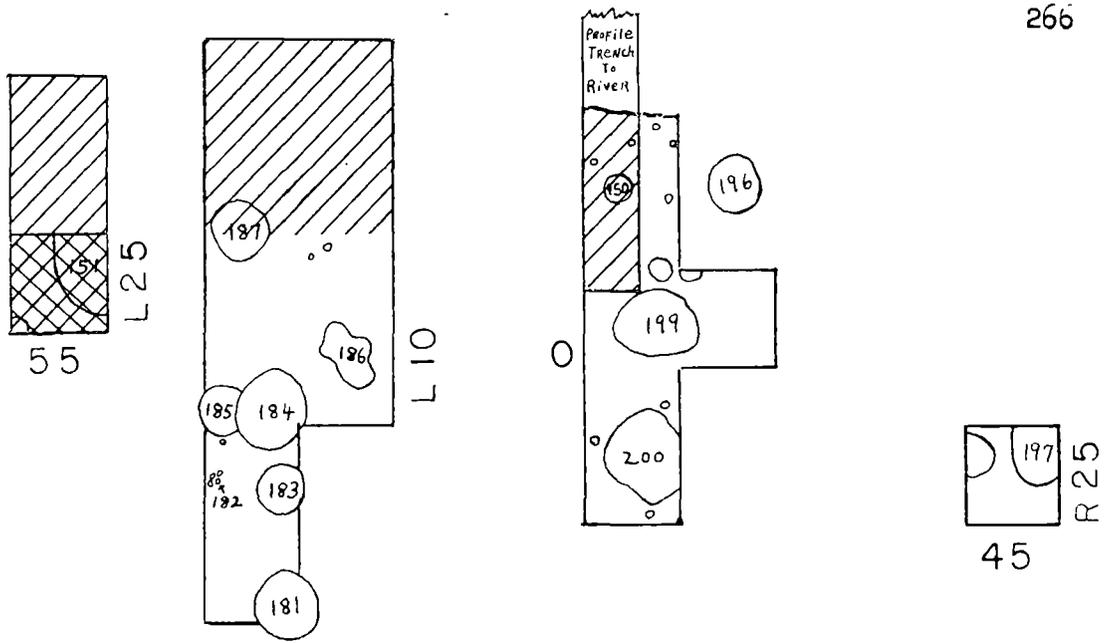


c

Pottery Feature, Worked Turtle Shell and Burial from Hx v7

Figures 19 through 24

These Figures illustrate the outline and position of the excavated features, burials and deep square excavations at the Gaston Site. The position of each area is shown on Map 7. The pit and posthole outlines were plotted at the level of the bottom of the midden accumulation on the site, after the midden was removed by bulldozers.

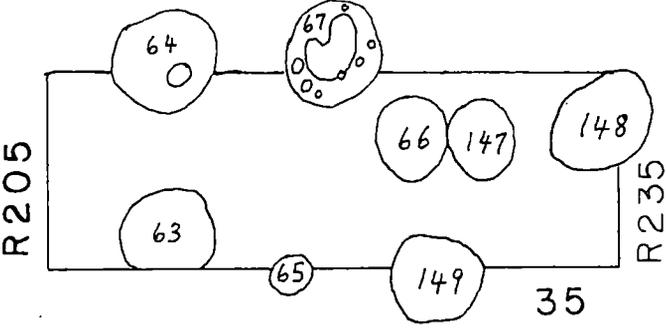
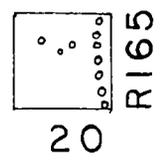
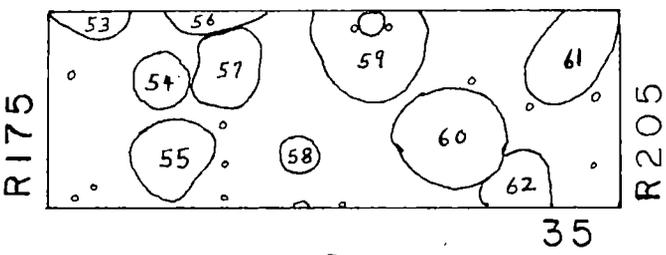
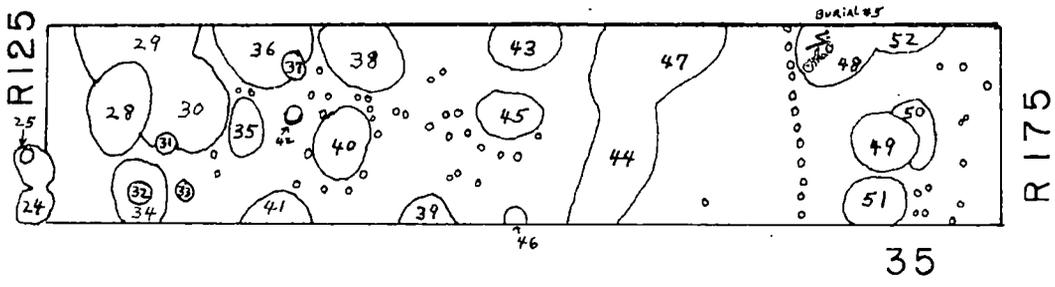
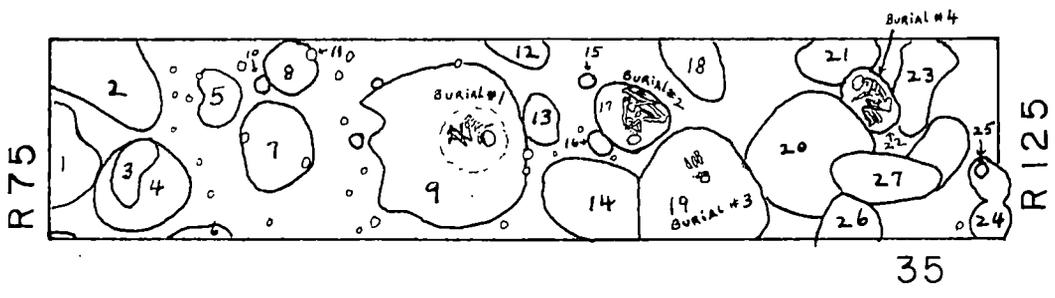


Hx v 7 Area A

Scale  = 5'

 = 6' Deep  = 9' Deep

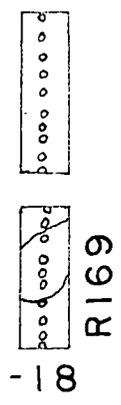
Figure 19

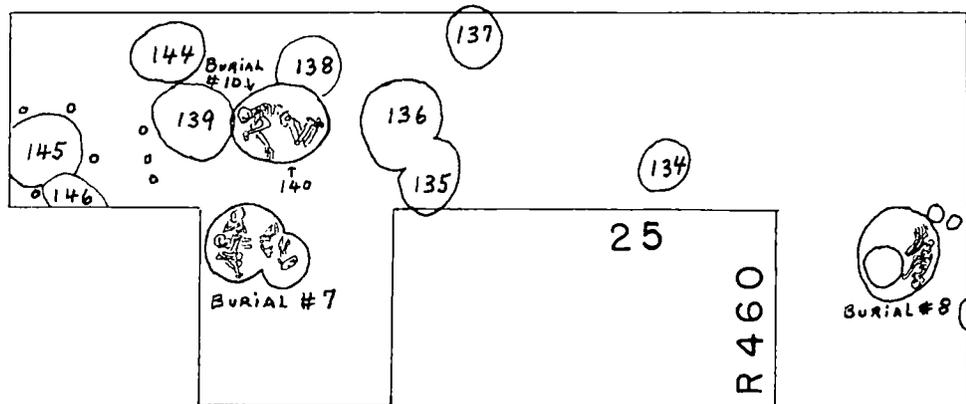


Hx v7
Area B

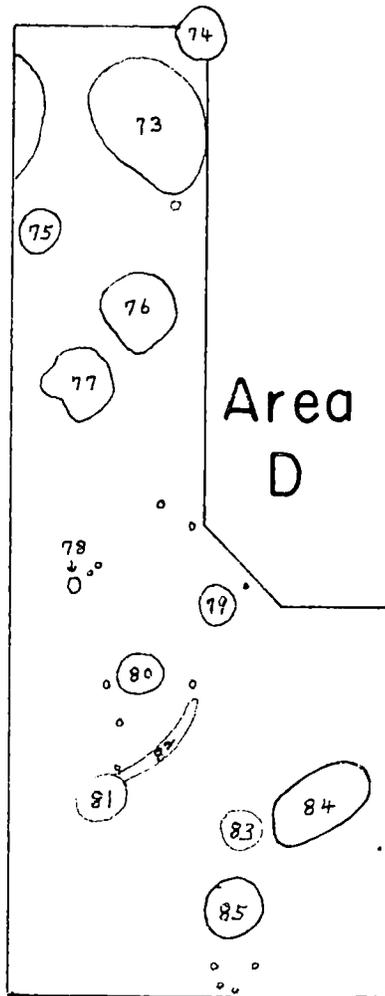
Scale  = 5'

Figure 20

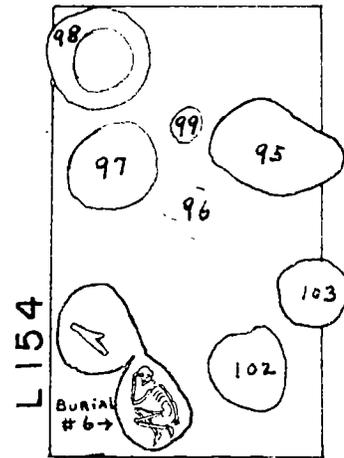




Area C



Area D



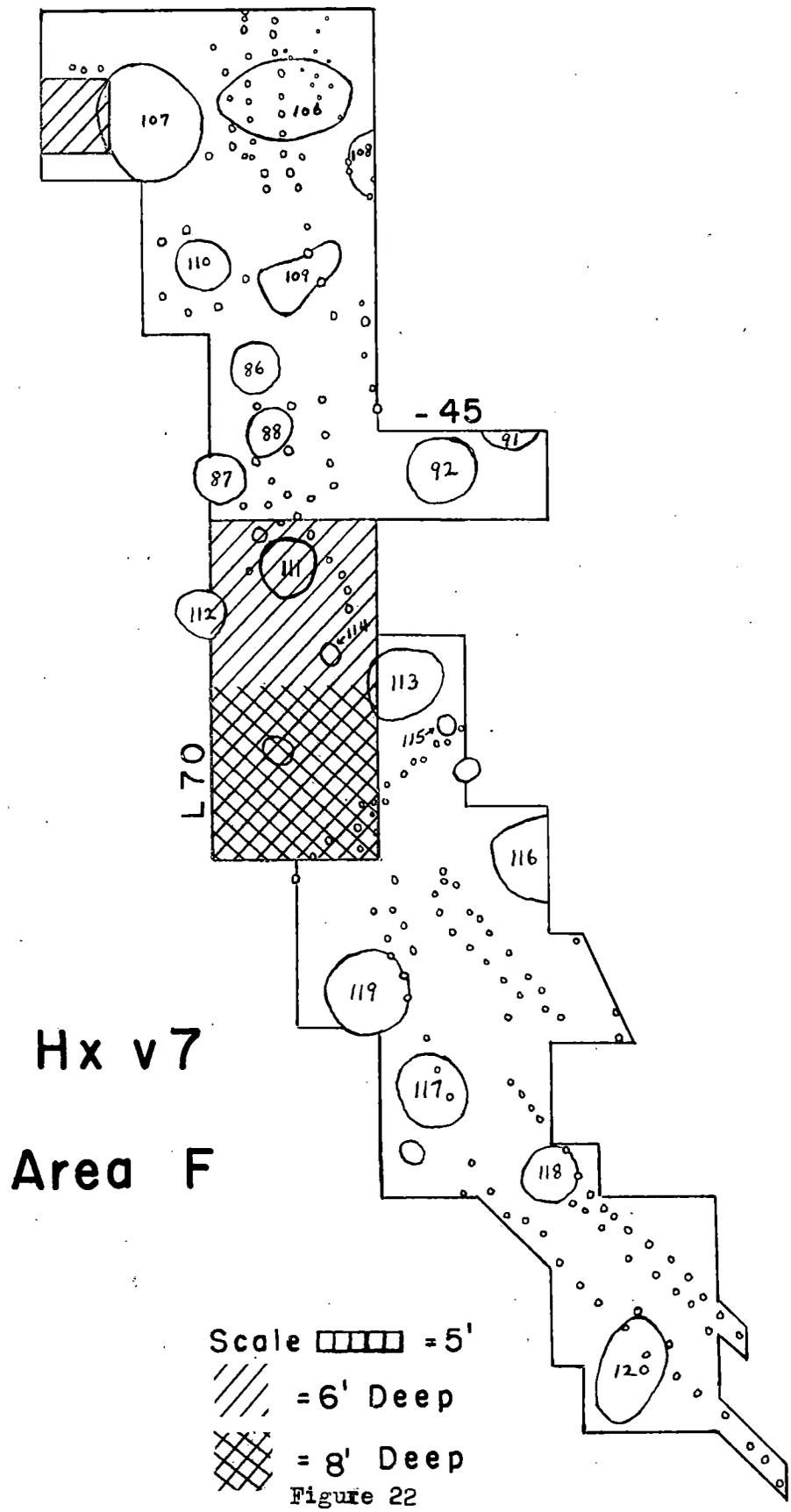
Area E

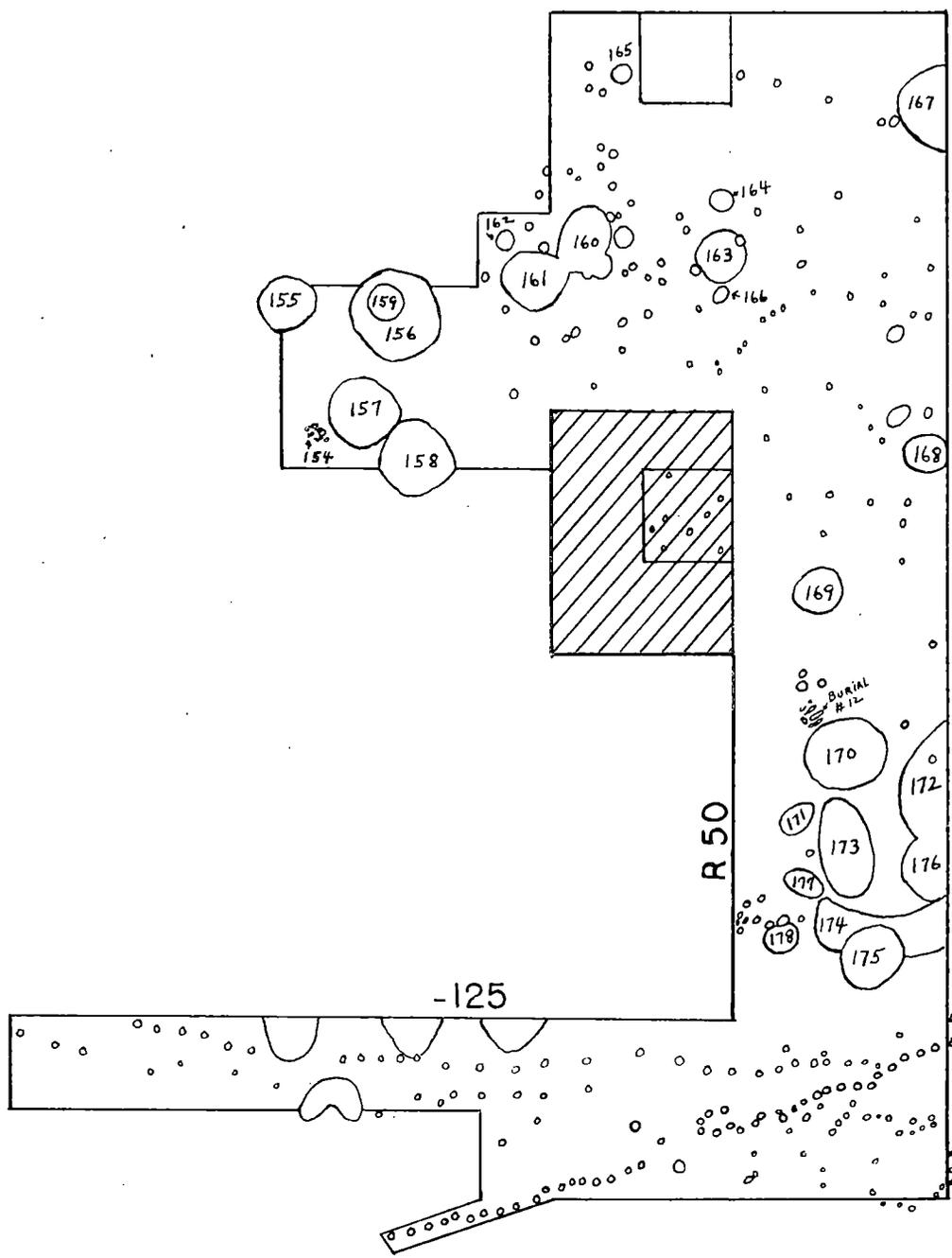
Hx v 7

Scale = 5'

-100

Figure 21



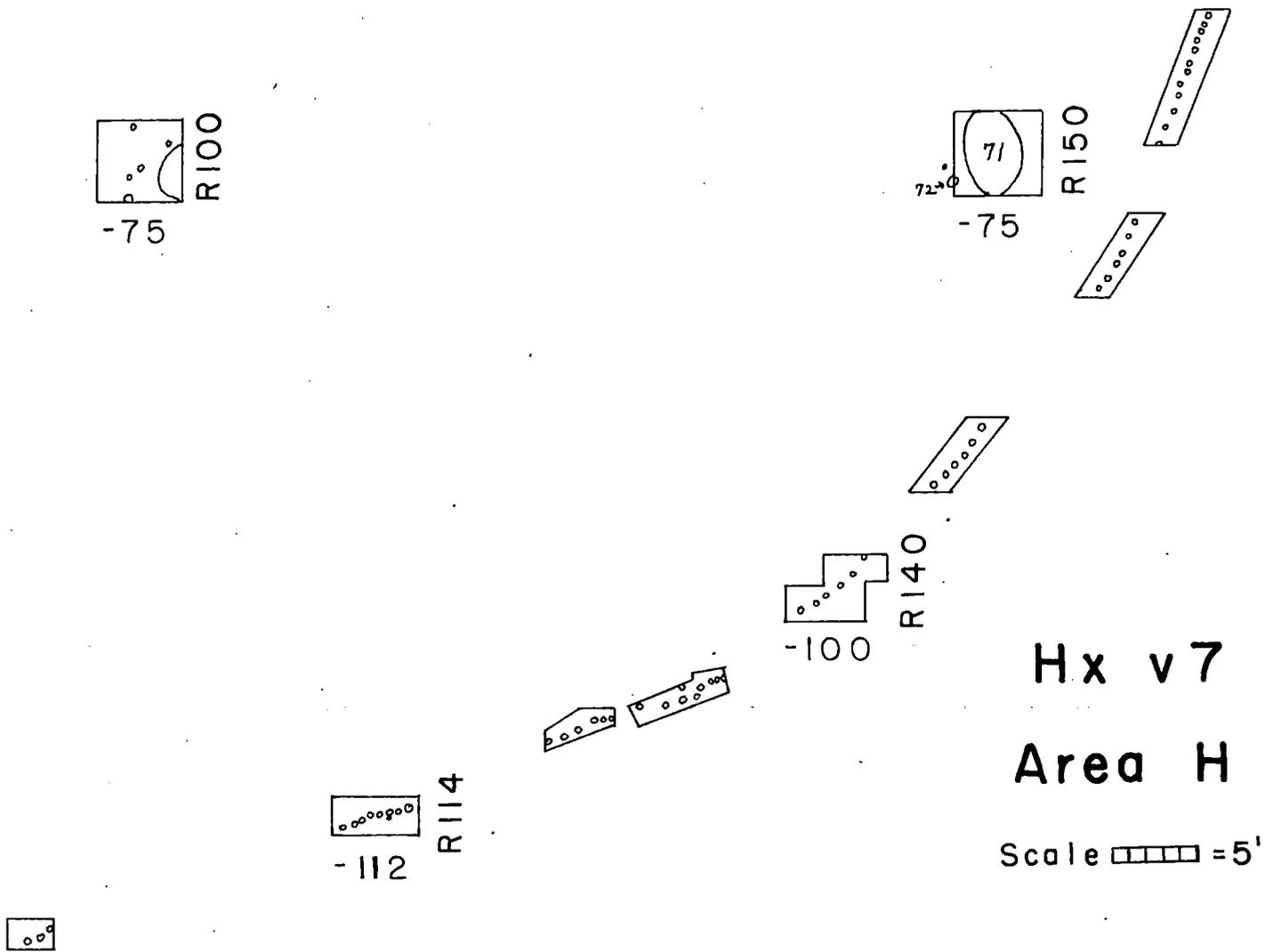


Hx v7 Area G

Scale  = 5'
 = 6' Deep

Figure 23

Figure 21



A detailed description of the two hundred features excavated at the Gaston Site does not seem to be warranted at this time, however, the features will be described in groups having similar characteristics. The location of the various features can be seen in the area charts, Figures 19-24.

Garbage pits. These features are called garbage pits because they contained quantities of animal bone, shell, sherds, charcoal, daub, and stone and bone artifacts. They are usually round in outline, and measure from two to seven feet across, and from six inches to four and a half feet deep. They were seen as a dark outline in the yellow sand at the bottom of the black midden accumulation on the site (Plate 43b). The method of excavating these features is described previously in this report. The following features are in the category of garbage pits as described here. L, 3-6, 12-14, 18, 20, 21, 26, 27, 34-36, 41, 43-45, 47, 49-54, 56-58, 61-66, 73-77, 79, 80, 81, 84, 86, 87, 90, 91, 96, 97, 100, 101, 104-106, 108-112, 116-119, 121-123, 126, 135-138, 141-144, 146, 150, 157, 161, 170, 172, 173, 175, 176, 179, 181, 183, 184, 186-189, 191, 192, 195, and 196.

Garbage pits with shell. Many pits contained large quantities of fresh water mussel shells. From those garbage pits that contained considerable quantities of shell,

samples of the types were kept. Plate 40a illustrates some of the types of shell found in these pits. The following pits were of the garbage pit type, but contained shell in some quantity: 28, 29, 38, 60, 102, 148, 155, 158, 160, 169, 180, 190, 197, and 198.

Small garbage pits. These pits are from one to two feet in diameter, and from four inches to two feet deep. They contained some midden material such as bone, sherds, and projectile points. Pits of this type are 16, 25, 46, 162, 165, and 171.

Garbage pits with human bone fragments. Several pits that appeared to be ordinary garbage pits, contained fragments of human bones. Feature 2 contained several human teeth; feature 71 also contained human teeth. Feature 72 appeared to be a postmold, and contained a fragment of a human skull, and jaw. Feature 199 contained large fragments of broken pottery (Plate 10 and 44a), and at the bottom of the pit was found twelve human finger and toe bones, and a few human teeth.

Garbage pits with light sand centers. Features 67 and 98 appeared at the subsoil level to be doughnut shaped pits, the center area matching the subsoil sand in color. When these pits were excavated, they proved to have black

midden underneath with a yellow sand fill in the center to a depth of six inches to one foot. These pits may represent pits that were open when the area was flooded, resulting in a clean sand fill in the center.

Fire pits. These pits contained quantities of charcoal and ashes, and appeared to have been pits containing fires: 99, 103, 127, and 159.

Fire pits with rock lined bottoms. These pits were characterized by containing quantities of burned charcoal, and in some cases bone, and having the bottom lined with fire-cracked stones. Pits of this type are: 23, 89, 92, 95, 107, 113, 120, and 139.

Small charcoal pits. These pits were characterized by containing large quantities of wood charcoal. They were from one to two feet in diameter, and were from three inches to one foot deep. They probably represent burned posts, however, some may have been fire pits. Pits of this type are: 69, 78, 115, 130, 131, 133, and 166.

Empty pits. A group of pits similar to the garbage pits were those containing nothing but black discolored soil. No sherds, no bone, no shell. Nothing large enough to stay in the three-eighths inch screen was found in these features. Features of this type are: 30, 39, 147, 149, 167, and 168.

Small empty pits. This group of pits range from one to two feet in diameter, and from four inches to two feet deep. They may have represented large postmolds, or pits dug for other purposes. They were all characterized by having nothing in them. Pits of this type are features: 15, 31, 33, 37, 42, 114, 132, 164, 177, and 178.

Pits with two postmolds. These pits had a postmold on opposite sides of the pit that appeared to be associated with it. Feature 59 was a large pit containing a dog burial, and above this was a small fire pit with a postmold on opposite sides. Feature 7 and 8 were pits of this type, being a fire pit with a postmold on each side. Feature 10 and 11 are the postmolds on either side of feature 8. Feature 163 was also a fire pit with a postmold on either side.

Pits with four postmolds. Features 40 and 88 were pits containing a dog burial, with four postmolds close to the pit on opposite sides. Feature 145 had the four postmolds, but contained nothing at all. Feature 200 had the four postmolds, and also contained a large quantity of sherds and bone. The bottom of this pit was lined with stones. Feature 9 was human burial #1, and had several postmolds around the pit, and contained a dog skull, however, the burial #1 may have intruded into the large pit

that is feature 9. The skull may have been part of a dog burial in feature 9.

Dog burials. Dog burials were encountered in several pits during excavation of the Gaston Site. These were fully articulated dog skeletons, and the pits appeared to have been especially dug for this purpose in most cases. The pits usually contained little else than the dog, a few sherds, and very little midden. Several dog burials were accompanied by large fragments of deer bone. Whether this represented burial of meat with the dog, or represented chance occurrence of the bone in the fill dirt, could not be determined. The deer bone appeared at the level of the dog in some burials, and not in the higher fill dirt. Besides the dog burials having postmolds around the pit, the following pits contained dog burials: features 55, 59, 83, 85, 93, 94, 134, and 156. A photograph of a dog burial that intruded into burial 7 is shown in Plate 46a. Under the dog burial in feature 151 was a human fetus.

Human burials. Since the pit outlines were given feature numbers before the pits were excavated, the human burials frequently have feature numbers as well as burial numbers. These features are described under the section on human burials. Feature 9 is Bu. 1, feature 17 is Bu.2, feature 19 is Bu.3, feature 22 is Bu.4, feature 48 is Bu.5,

feature 128 is Bu.9, and feature 140 is Bu.10.

Piles of clay. Because of their geographic association, the following features are described together. They may or may not represent a cultural association.

In area F' (Figure 18) was found, immediately below the bulldozed soil, a large pile of stones. These stones had been fired, and contained fragments of charcoal around and between them. Seven sherds were found associated with the stones. The pile of stones covered an area of three by five feet, and were piled a foot thick. Some of the stones had been abraded, and pecked, and one was pitted. This pile of stones is feature 65-A. One and one-half feet to the south of this pile of stones was a pile of red clay, one foot long by six inches wide and as many thick. This is feature 66-A. One foot to the northwest of this pile of rocks was another pile of red clay similar to the other one. Three feet to the northeast of the rock pile was another pile of red clay. This is feature 68 and is just inside the stockade wall pattern. In the top edge of this feature was found a fragment of glass and a cut nail. Whether this represents material brought in by the plow, or whether the clay piles are of recent origin, is not known. The piles of clay near the large pile of rocks appeared to represent a kiln and pottery making situation,

but the presence of the glass and nail in a pile of clay indicated that the clay may have been of recent origin.

Three feet to the northwest of the rock pile, and two feet from a pile of red clay, was a fire pit, feature 67-A. Northwest of this fire pit was another lump of red clay, feature 70. One and one-half feet north of this pile of clay was another fire pit containing ashes and charcoal. This is feature 69. These clay piles were not found in any other section of the Gaston Site during excavation. Their cultural relationship to the fired pile of rocks is not known. They may represent clay brought in to daub the stockade wall, or houses, since fired clay daub fragments were found throughout the excavation of the features.

Feature 32. An individual description of this feature, as well as several others, is needed due to its unique nature. This feature was a small pit, twelve inches across and six inches deep, that contained a quart of charred hickory nut shells. Some of these fragments are illustrated in Plate 40d.

Feature 82. This feature (Figure 21, area D), appeared to be the impression of a log laid horizontally on the ground at the subsoil level. It may have been a small ditch, but from the size, it appeared to be a log impression.

Features 124 and 125. These pits appeared as separate pits at the subsoil level, but below the subsoil they appeared to be the same pit. They were handled separately in the seriation, however, and as can be seen in the seriation graph of the features, Figure 37, they appear together at the Gaston ceramic period in the seriation.

Feature 129. This feature was a garbage pit in which was found the bottom plate of a box terrapin shell. Two square holes had been cut in the shell. A photograph of this shell as found in the pit is shown in Plate 44b.

Feature 148. This feature will be remembered by those excavating the Gaston site as the best pit dug because of the large number of sherds (1,062), bone, Clarksville type projectile points (11), and clay pipe fragments (10), that were found in this pit. As can be seen from the seriation chart of the features (Figure 37), this feature was high in the percentage of Gaston Simple Stamped type pottery. For this reason charcoal from the feature was sent to the University of Michigan for radiocarbon dating. A report of the radiocarbon dates from various features at the Gaston site appears in a later section of this survey.

Feature 152. This feature is hearth #1 in square

55L25 at a depth of sixty three inches at the Halifax level (Figure 30). This hearth, along with hearth #2, is described in the section on excavation of square 55L25 in this report.

Feature 153. This is a concentration of white quartz rocks at the fifty three inch level of square -60L60 at the Halifax level. This feature is described with the description of excavation of square -60L60 (Figure 32).

Feature 154. This was a group of four steatite sherds found in the yellow sand after the bulldozer had cleaned off the black midden deposit. They were found in square -95R35. Associated with these sherds was a concentration of hematite and limonite lumps. Some of these are illustrated in Plate 28a.

Feature 174. This feature appeared to be a shallow ditch six inches deep. The position of the ditch at the subsoil level is shown in Figure 23.

Feature 182. This feature was a pile of burned stones found in the yellow sand after the bulldozer had removed the midden deposit from the area at square 40L15.

Feature 191. Here was a hearth in square 60L10 at

the Savannah River level (Figure 36). This feature is described with the square description for 60L10. Charcoal from this feature was used in radiocarbon dating.

Feature 192-A. This was a postmold at the Savannah River level in square 60L10, Figure 36. It is included in the 60L10 description. Charcoal from this feature was used in dating the Savannah River cultural material.

Feature 193. This was a postmold at the Savannah River level in square 60L10. This feature, and 192-A, represents the only evidence for the use of upright posts, perhaps for dwellings, that was found at the Savannah River level at the Gaston site. This feature contained no charcoal.

Features used for radiocarbon dating. Charcoal from several features was sent to the University of Michigan for radiocarbon dating. A report of these features and the dates derived from the charcoal is included in a later section of this survey.

VI. METHOD OF EXCAVATING THE STOCKADE WALL POSTMOLD PATTERN AT THE GASTON SITE

After square 35R165 was troweled, a row of postmold patterns was seen to cross the square at a right angle to

the river (Plate 45a). This row consisted of twelve post-mold patterns in a straight line. In order to determine whether or not the row was a stockade wall pattern, another square was dug ten feet further into the site. The row continued in this square also. Twenty feet further from the river a trench two and one-half by eight feet was dug along the path of the post mold pattern (Figure 24 and Plate 45b). This procedure was followed until twelve such trenches had been dug and the pattern located against the yellow sand. The pattern curved upstream, and at the point where it almost paralleled the river, it was two hundred feet from the river. The upstream side of the pattern was never located, although several rows of post-mold patterns were found in bulldozed areas (Figure 22), none of these seemed to be a continuation of the same stockade wall that had been followed in the trenches. Not all of these postmold patterns were excavated, but several were numbered and sifted and the contents saved. Seven sherds were found in the few stockade postholes that were excavated. Of these seven, five were of the type Gaston Simple Stamped. Though this evidence is flimsy, it is thought that it is sufficient to date the stockade wall as belonging to the Gaston ceramic period. This conclusion is supported by the fact that 55.5 per cent of the Gaston features fall within the area of the stockade wall, while

Plate 45

The Stockade Wall Postmold Patterns

- a. square 35R165 at the Gaston Site showing row of stockade wall postmold impressions.
- b. trench of the type used to locate and follow the stockade wall postmold pattern, shown in the bottom of the trench.



a



b

The Stockade Wall Postmold Pattern

Plate 45

the Clement features are concentrated outside the stockade wall to the east. Several Vincent type features are located inside the wall, but the small percentage of Vincent type sherds in the postmolds, indicated that it was not of this time period.

VII. THE METHOD OF EXCAVATING THE BURIALS AT THE GASTON SITE

When a burial was found in one of the pits it was excavated with grapefruit knives and brushes. The sand was removed from around the bones to a level even with the bottom of the bones. In some cases the area around the entire pit was excavated down to this level so that the outline of the pit would show clearly. In other cases the burial was left on a platform and a profile of the pit was cut to show the relationship of the burial to the bottom of the pit. All burials were photographed after being cleaned, and allowed to dry for several days before attempting to move them. The skull was removed in the block of sand supporting it, and the skull and the remainder of the bones taken up and packed in boxes of sand.

Only two burials had an artifact associated with them. Burial number ten had a triangular projectile point in the hand, and burial number seven had a stone pipe on the pelvis. This stone pipe was photographed in situ in

various stages of excavation as it was uncovered (Plate 46b). All burials were drawn on a graph of the square in which they were located. Their position in the pit, their degree of preservation, and the associated material was noted on the graph. Sketches of the burials are in Figures 25-28.

The skulls were glued together in the laboratory whenever possible. Several skulls were badly crushed as a result of the weight of the bulldozer passing over the pit. The reconstructed skulls were taken to Dr. Marshall T. Newman, Associate Curator of Physical Anthropology at the Smithsonian Institution in Washington, D. C., for analysis, and his report is included in the appendix.

VIII. DESCRIPTION OF THE BURIALS AT THE GASTON SITE

Burial #1 (Figure 25). This burial was fully flexed on the left side, with hands near the skull, in an oval pit. The top of the skull was located at a depth of seventeen inches from the bulldozed level, which was the bottom of the midden accumulation on the site. At the same depth as the skull, and located near the feet of the burial, was a skull of a dog. Lying across the legs of the burial was a deer bone. A photograph of this burial is shown in Plate 44c. The skull was oriented toward the south-east. A photograph of the skull is shown in Plate 54. The burial appears to have been an adult male.

Plate 46

Burial Seven

- a. burial 7 looking west, showing dog burial in foreground that intruded into burial 7. Bone under pelvis of dog is human humerus.

- b. close-up of burial 7, showing engraved stone pipe in situ. Burial was near the surface, and was crushed by weight of the bulldozer.



a



b

Burial Seven at the Gaston Site

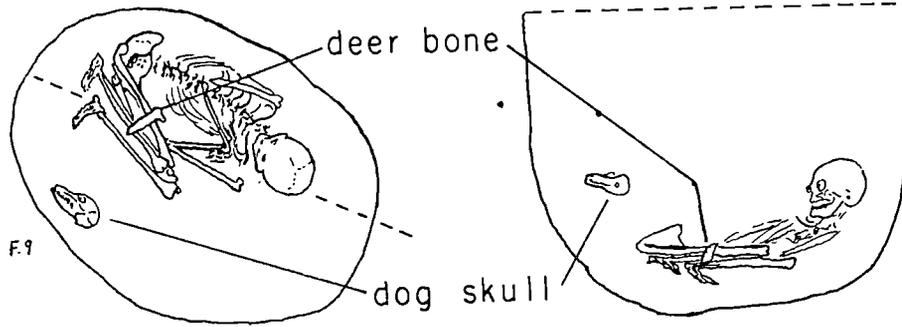
Plate 46

Burial #2 (Figure 25). This burial was lying on the right side with the left hand near the right knee, and the right hand on the left knee. It was in a slightly sitting position with the skull considerably higher than the rest of the body, and resting on a stone in the edge of the pit. The skull was nine inches from the bulldozed level. The pit was round in outline, and was twenty-five inches deep below the bulldozed level. The orientation of the skull was to the south.

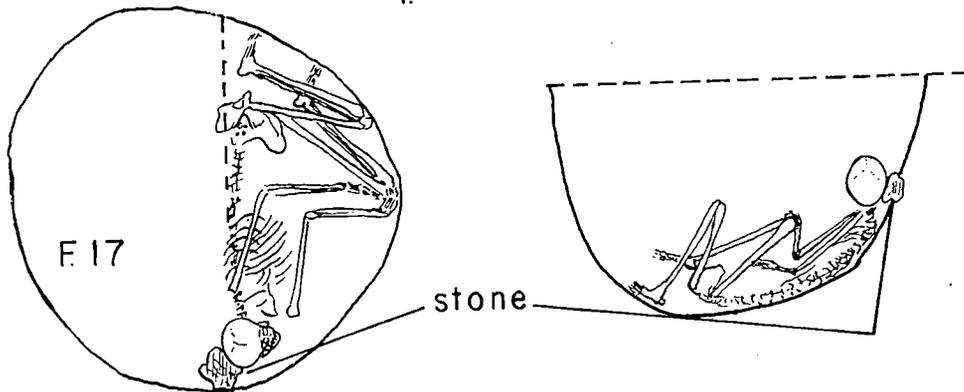
Burial #3 (Figure 25). This burial consisted of a skull and three long bone fragments, located at the level of the bulldozer cut. It appeared to have been a flexed burial with the orientation toward the southeast. It was in a large midden pit, and the outline of the burial pit could not be seen.

Burial #4 (Figure 26). This burial was tightly flexed, lying on the right side, in a small oval pit. The orientation of the skull was toward the northwest. The skull was located at a depth of three inches below the bulldozed level, the hands were in front of the face. A tip of a projectile point was located one inch from the spine at the back of the neck.

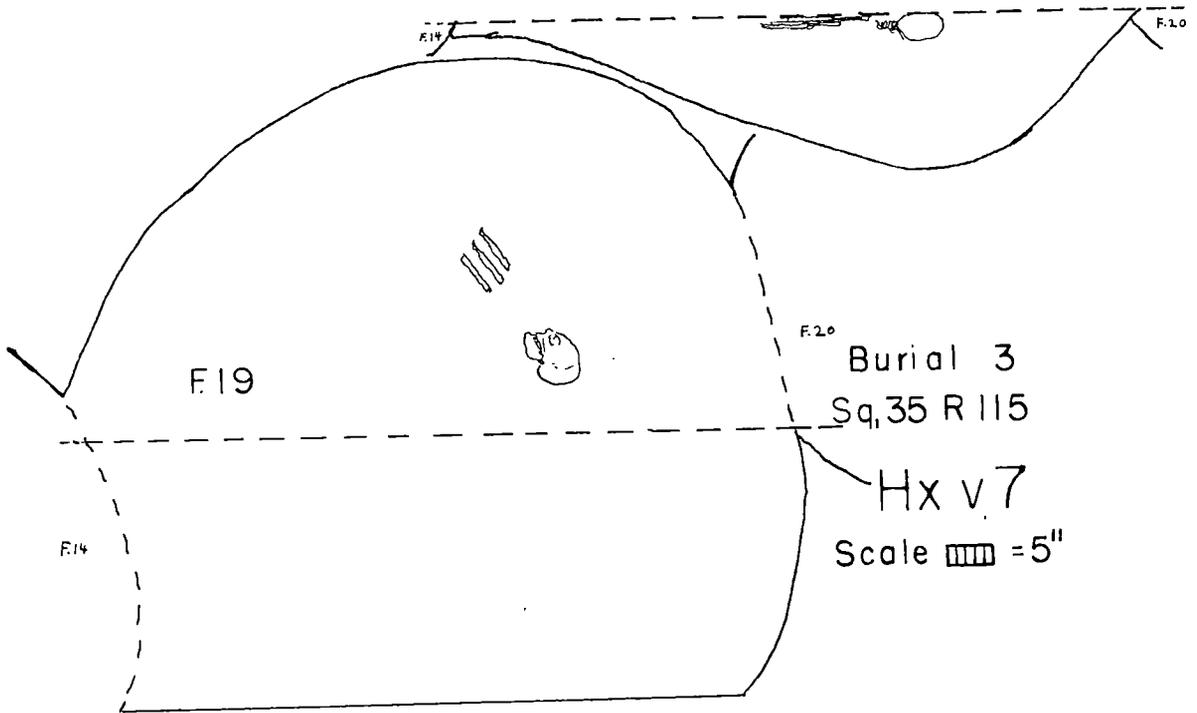
Burial #5 (Figure 26). Burial five appeared to be



Burial 1
Sq. 35R105



Burial 2
Sq. 35R115



Burial 3
Sq. 35 R 115

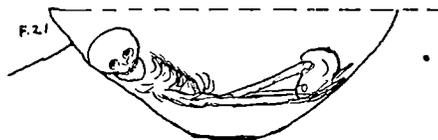
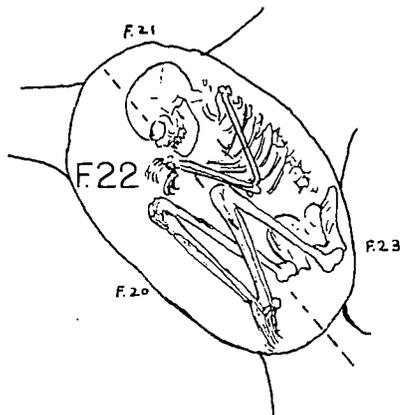
Hx v.7
Scale  = 5"

Figure 25

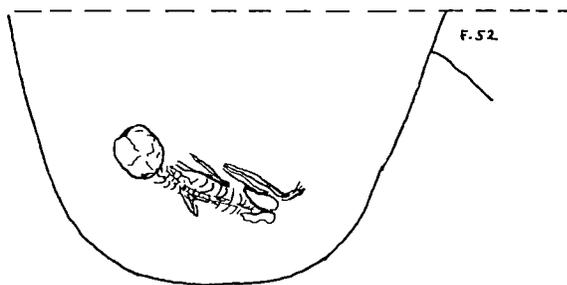
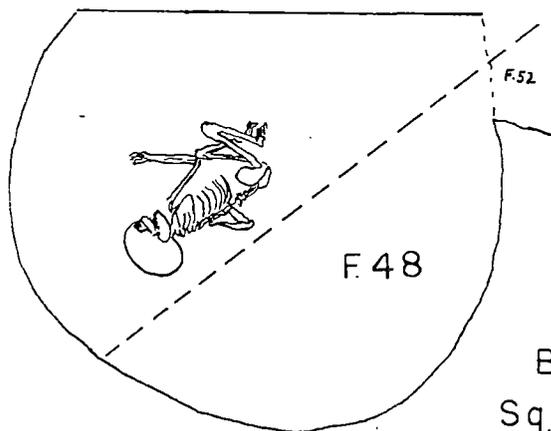
that of a child of four or five years of age. It was lying on the left side, flexed, with the skull oriented toward the southwest. The burial was in a pit with abundant midden material. Shell, bone, and sherds were located below and around the burial. The pit was a large round pit, and had evidently been dug for another purpose than for burial of the child.

Burial #6 (Figure 26). Burial six was a large adult burial, lying semi-flexed on the right side, oriented toward the north. The right hand was at the forehead, and the left arm was extended and the hand was at the left heel. The skull was located at the level of the bulldozer, and as was the case with many burials, was crushed from the weight of the machine. The preservation of this burial was very poor.

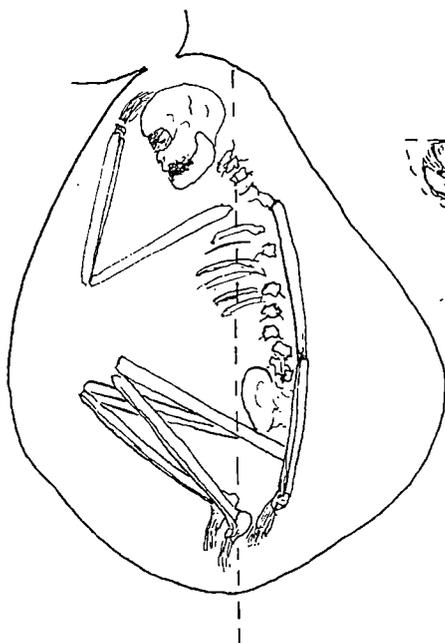
Burial #7 (Figure 27). This burial contained parts of two individuals. The skull had been crushed by the bulldozer, but the remainder of the bones were undisturbed. The torso and skull of one individual was lying on the back, oriented toward the northeast. The pelvis of the same individual was lying at right angles to the torso, with the legs extended toward the southeast. Both femurs had been broken, and were found under the dog burial that intruded into the human burial. Lying across the pelvis



Burial 4
Sq. 35 R125



Burial 5
Sq. 35 R 75



Burial 6
Sq. - 70 L140

Hx v 7
Scale  = 5"

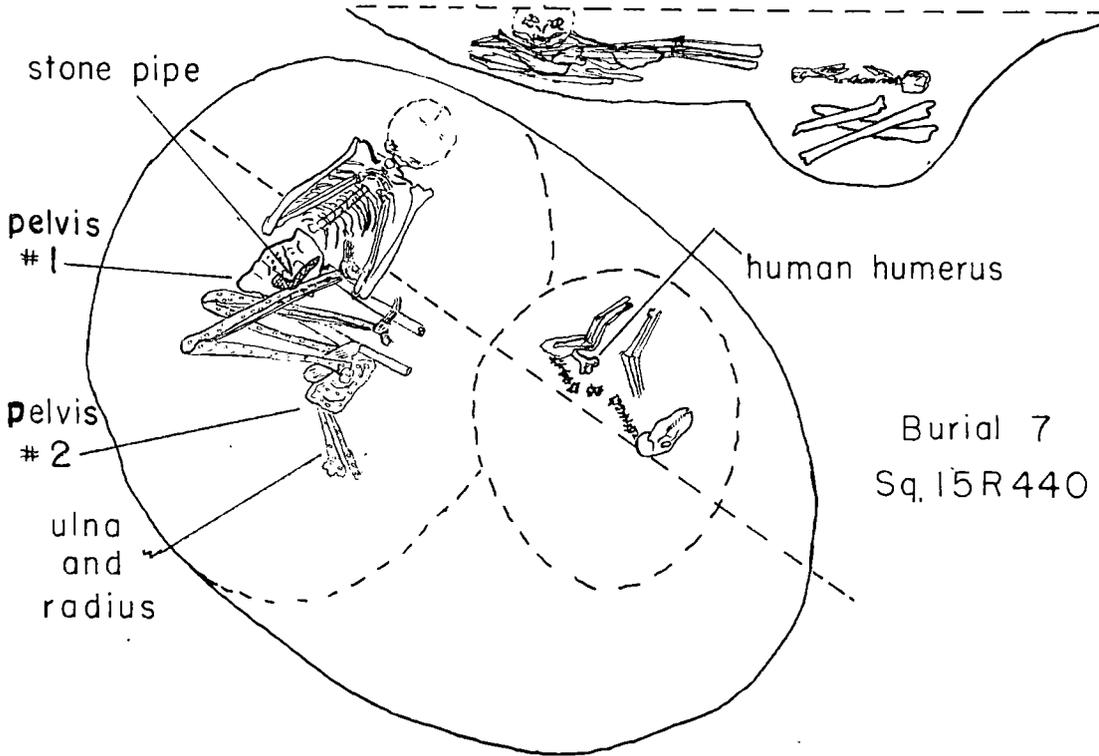
Figure 26

and broken femurs of this burial were the legs and pelvis of a second individual. Near the pelvis, with the ends extending under the pelvis, was found an ulna and radius. No other bones were in the pit.

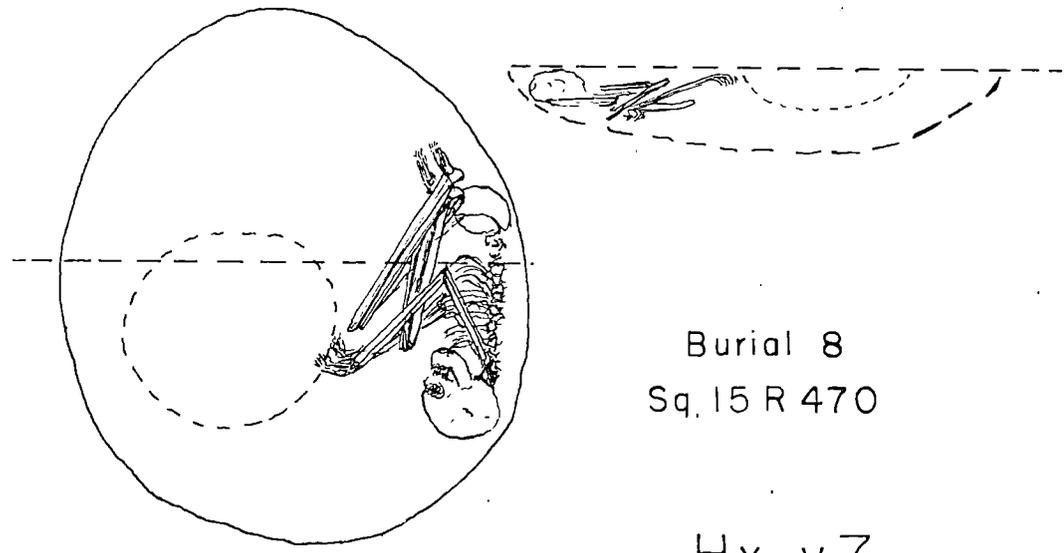
A round pit visible at the level of the bottom of the burial pit, had intruded into the human burial, and contained a dog burial at the same level as burial seven. The broken distal end of a human humerus was found near the pelvis of the dog, and under the dog was found the missing broken distal ends of the femurs from burial seven (Plate 46).

Located on the pelvis of burial seven (pelvis no. 1), was a polished stone pipe of chlorite. This pipe had been broken across the bowl, and the break was fresh, and obviously had been broken by the weight of the bulldozer. This pipe is illustrated in Plate 46b in a close-up photograph of burial seven, and also in Plate 31.

Pelvis no. 2 with the legs, and ulna and radius, must have represented a flexed burial placed on top of burial seven, at the same time or later time as the interment of burial seven, with the head oriented in the opposite direction. At a later time the dog burial pit must have been dug directly over this burial represented by pelvis no.2, and when bones of this burial were encountered, another pit was dug that intruded into burial seven and



Burial 7
Sq. 15R440



Burial 8
Sq. 15 R 470

Hx v7

Scale  = 5"

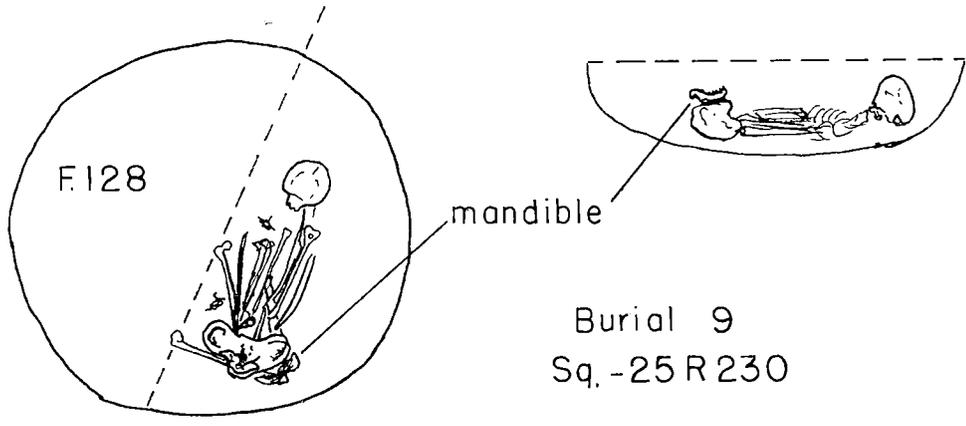
Figure 27

resulted in breaking of the femurs. This could account for the humerus from the burial represented by pelvis 2, and possibly the femurs from burial seven, being in the dog burial pit.

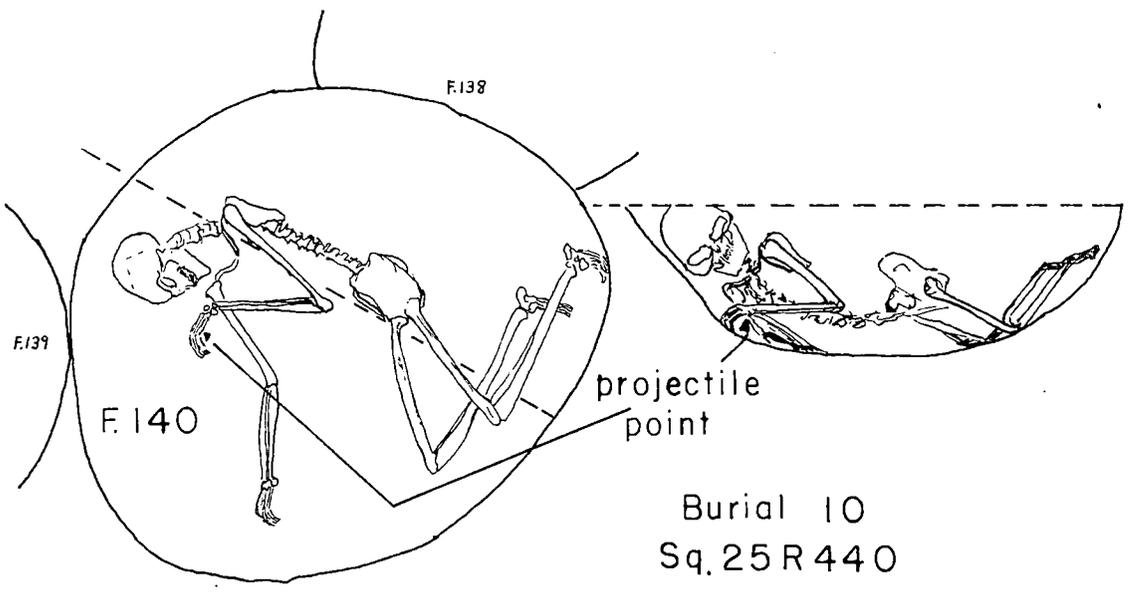
Burial #8 (Figure 27). This was a tightly flexed burial, with the hands in a position in front of the face. It was located in the side of a large round pit, which may not have represented the outline of the burial pit. Near the hands was a black outline and fired area of a pire pit. The skull was at the level of the bulldozed cut. The orientation was to the south. The burial was in a poor state of preservation.

Burial #9 (Figure 28). Burial 9 was a bundle burial, with the skull face down in a northeastern direction from the long bones. The pelvis was at the opposite end of the long bones. The mandible was located at the pelvis. The pit was round, and contained a quantity of midden material, bone, shell, and sherds.

Burial #10 (Figure 28). Burial ten was semi-flexed on the right side, oriented toward the west. The right arm was extended away from the body, the left arm was near the face and right shoulder. In the curve of the fingers of the left hand was found a triangular projectile point

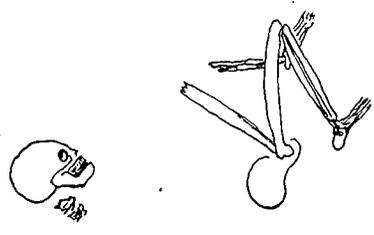


Burial 9
Sq. -25 R 230



Burial 10
Sq. 25 R 440

Burials 12 & 13,
few fragments of bone



Burial 11
Sq. -30 L 10

Hx v 7

Scale  = 5"

Figure 28

of the Roanoke type. The skull was at the level of the bulldozer cut, and the bones were in a poor state of preservation.

Burial #11(Figure 28). Burial eleven was located in the yellow sand, with no pit outline visible, at the bulldozed level. It appeared to be a flexed burial, but the arms were missing, as well as the ribs, and backbone. The orientation was toward the west, lying on the left side.

Burial #12 and # 13. These burials were represented by a few bone fragments found in the yellow sand after the bulldozer had passed over the area. There were enough bones to definitely establish that they were human, but nothing more.

Burial #14. This burial was not found in the field, but in the laboratory. In excavating square 55L25, in feature 150, a dog burial was found. This was cleaned with a brush until the outline of the dog could be seen, then the bones were taken up with a trowel and put in a bag and labeled as a dog burial.

In his identification of the bone material from the features, Dr. F. S. Barkalow found that with this dog burial were the bones of a fetal human infant. This infant must have been directly under the dog burial, taken up along with the dog, and therefore not observed in the field.

IX. SUMMARY OF THE BURIALS AND ASSOCIATED
MATERIAL AT THE GASTON SITE

The burials at the Gaston Site were usually flexed, and placed in a round to oval hole. Grave offerings, if any, were confined to perishable goods leaving no evidence. One burial, however, contained an engraved stone pipe of chlorite. This particular burial contained remains of two and possibly three individuals.

A number of dog burials were found, and in one instance a human fetus was evidently buried under a dog.

One bundle burial was found, indicating that this method of interment was occasionally used. The burial pit was usually dug especially to receive the deceased, and backfilled shortly after. Occasionally, however, an open garbage pit would be used to bury small children.

Table VII lists the sherds and other objects found with the burials, or in the burial fill. As can be seen from the totals of the various pottery types, the Clement Series pottery was the most predominate type found with burials. Burials one, two, four, five and nine were evidently burials made during the popularity of Clement type ceramics. Burials four, six, seven, ten, and the dog burial near burial seven, all contained Gaston type sherds, and were probably buried sometime during the late occupation

OBJECTS FROM THE BURIAL FILL DIRT AT THE GASTON SITE

Burial Number	Gaston	Type I Cord	Type II Fabric	Clement Cord	Clement Fabric	Type II Cord	Type II Fabric	Net II	Vincent Cord	Vincent Fabric	Other
1				4	2						
2		1	1	32	10	6		2		2	
3	none										
4	1		1	8		1			2	1	
5			2	11		1			5	1	
6	7	1	4	12	18				1	4	3 rocks, 3pp.
7	2	1	3	4	6					3	stone pipe
7 below dog	1		1	1							
8			2	1				1			red ochre, crude triangle
9				14	3						
10	2	3		22	9	1			3		1 steatite sherd, 2 Clarksville P.P. 2 Roanoke P.P.
11-14	none										
Total	12	6	11	94	48	7		3	5	11	

Table VII

of the site, i.e., during the Gaston ceramic period.

No burials can, on the basis of the associated material, be assigned to the Vincent period occupation of the site.

Skulls and fragments from burials one, two, four, six, and nine, were examined by Dr. Marshall T. Newman at the Smithsonian Institution in Washington, D. C., and his report is included in Appendix A of this survey. The physical type of these skulls was found to be Neumann's Lenapid, or Hrdlicka's Algonkin variety.²

X. THE METHOD OF EXCAVATING THE PRE-CERAMIC LEVELS AT THE GASTON SITE

While cleaning the sides of several deep garbage pits, yellow quartzite chips were found in the yellow sand in the wall of the pit. In two pits a stemmed Savannah River type projectile point was found in this manner. This information, along with the fact that quartzite chips were found in the yellow sand when the first approach trench was begun on the site, prompted the digging of a profile trench from the surface of the site, to the level of the river (Figure 29).

In excavating this trench, and square 55L25, it was

²Marshall T. Newman, Appendix A.

found that the site was definitely stratified, with layers of sand bearing cultural material separated by layers of sand bearing no cultural material. A series of ten foot squares was then excavated to a depth sufficient to recover the cultural material in these deep layers. Areas where the bulldozers had previously removed the midden accumulation were chosen for the excavation of these ten foot squares.

The square was first cleaned of all postmolds, and pits previously dug were cleaned to be sure all black midden soil was removed. A trench was then dug along the side of the square in order to obtain a visual profile, if one was to be seen, and to give a control profile from which to work. This trench was three feet deep. The square was then shoveled off in six inch levels, all sand being sifted. Since the presence of chips in the sand indicated that an occupation level had been reached, all chips were kept from all of these pre-ceramic levels. This was done for future comparison with projectile point type material.

The first twelve to fifteen inches of the square was usually found to be sterile sand, with no chips or pebbles. When the discolored occupation level was reached, the chips began to appear. When the first chips appeared in the screen, excavation was continued in three inch,

instead of six inch, levels. When the first projectile point appeared in the screen, excavation then proceeded in two inch levels. At this stage, each shovel full of sand was sifted, and the screen examined before the next shovel of sand was thrown in. In this manner, each projectile point was located within a shovel width of accuracy horizontally, and within an inch of accuracy in depth.

Since the surface level above these squares had been removed by the bulldozer, a reading with a transit was taken on each side of the bulldozed area where the square was being dug. In this way the original level of the surface above the square was determined. When a projectile point was discovered, its depth was determined by use of the transit, and its horizontal position in the square was plotted on a graph. Each projectile point was placed in an individual bag on which its depth and specimen number were marked.

After an occupation level had been passed, and the presence of chips disappeared, the levels were increased to four inches until another chip and artifact level appeared.

In studying the charts showing the stratigraphic relationship of each projectile point, the following should be kept in mind. All projectile points that could be typed are included in the charts, and appear as a little symbol of that type on the chart. If three projectile points of

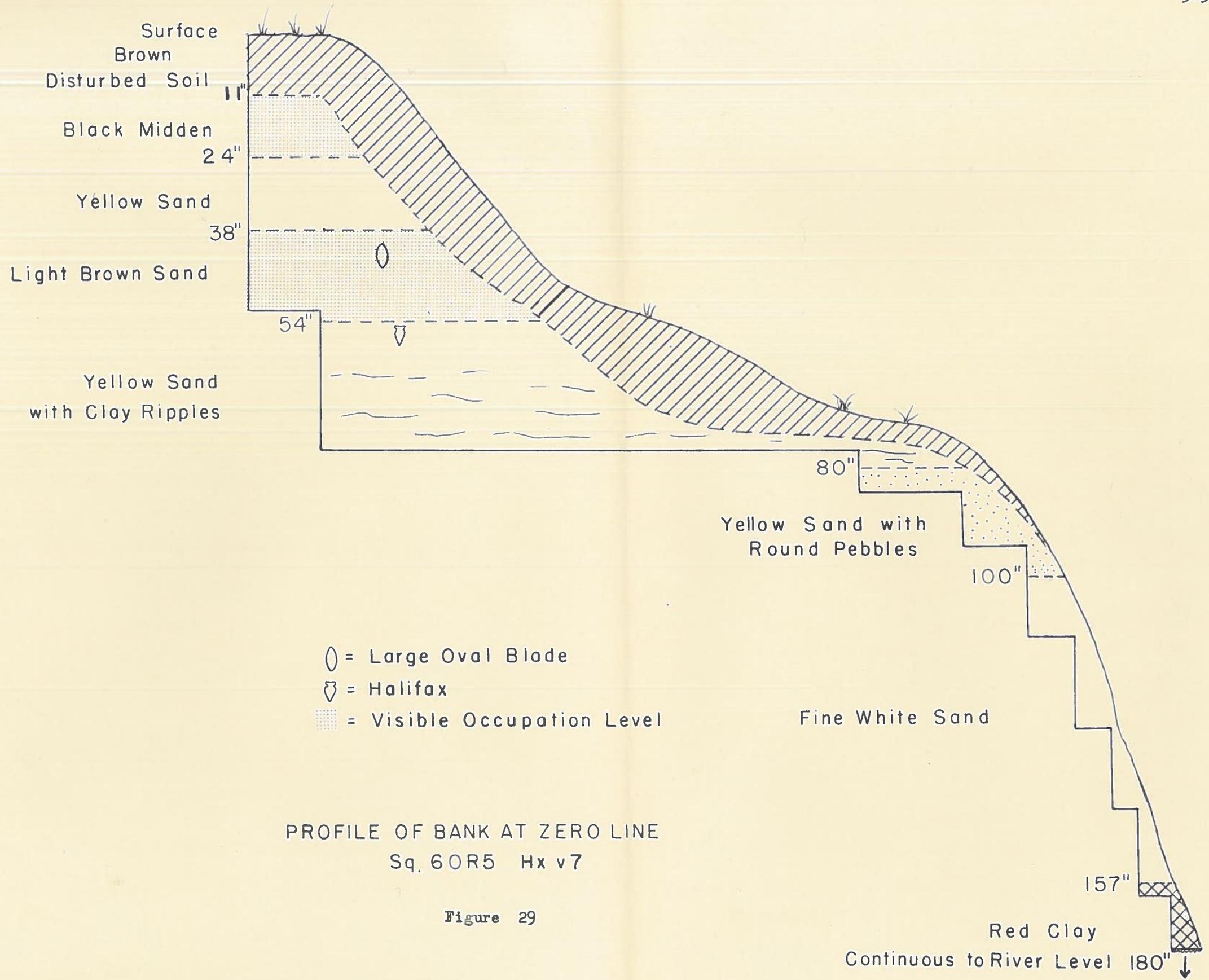
a particular type were found, three symbols of that point will appear at the level at which they were found.

If at the discolored level, usually containing Savannah River type projectile points, only Large Oval Blades were found, these are plotted as a symbol at the level at which they were found. If both Savannah River projectile points and Large Oval Blades were found in this level, only the projectile points were plotted on these charts for lack of space.

The description of the artifacts found in each square accompanied each figure illustrating the profile of that square. The squares are presented in the order excavated.

Excavation of the profile of the bank at the zero line, square 6OR5 (Figure 29). In order to check for possible stratigraphy, and to get a picture of the soil relationships below the midden accumulation on the site, a profile of the river bank was dug along the zero line beginning at square 6OR5.

In excavating this square below the black midden accumulation the presence of quartzite chips was noticed as the excavation approached forty inches in depth. A large oval blade was found at the forty-two inch level. Cleaning of the profile at this point revealed a darker



PROFILE OF BANK AT ZERO LINE
Sq. 60R5 Hx v7

Figure 29

layer of sand beginning at the thirty-eight inch level. The square was continued to a depth of fifty-five inches, and at the fifty-five inch level was found a projectile point of the Halifax type.

The discolored layer was clearly seen as the excavation was continued to a depth of eighty inches. The trench was extended at this level toward the river, and from this point on down the steep side of the bank, the trench was dug in a series of steps (Figure 29). At a depth of one hundred and eighty inches the red clay subsoil was encountered, and continued to the water level of the river.

After the discovery of the stratigraphy of the site in this square, the other deep squares on this survey were dug.

Excavation of square 55L25 (Figure 30, Plate 47).

This five foot square was excavated for the purpose of obtaining a profile of the site. The square was near the edge of the river bank, and a trench from the square out to the river was cut so that the profile could be photographed (Plate 47).

At the bottom of the midden accumulation a pit was found containing a dog burial. This burial is discussed under the section on features. This feature was removed,

and the sifting of the sand continued to the forty-eight inch level. Chips appeared in the screen at this level and continued to the seventy-two inch level. A brown discolored layer was seen on the profile between forty-eight and fifty-eight inches. No projectile points were found in this level. At the fifty-nine inch level a Halifax type projectile point was found. At the sixty-six inch level a chipped-notched ax was found at the same level as a hearth. This was hearth #1; underneath, separated by two inches of sterile sand was another hearth, #2. Charcoal was collected from these hearths in quantities sufficient to give a radiocarbon date. It is thought that hearth #2 should give a date for the Halifax material.

At the sixty-five inch level a Guilford type projectile point was found, and at the sixty-eight inch level a Halifax type point. Five pecked stones were found between the fifty-eight and sixty-three inch level.

The square was continued to a depth of nine feet, and no other cultural material was found below the seventy-two inch level.

Excavation of square -28L76 (Figure 31). This square is shown in Area F as a five foot square in the edge of feature 107. After the discovery of the discolored layer on the profile of the bank at the Gaston site, a

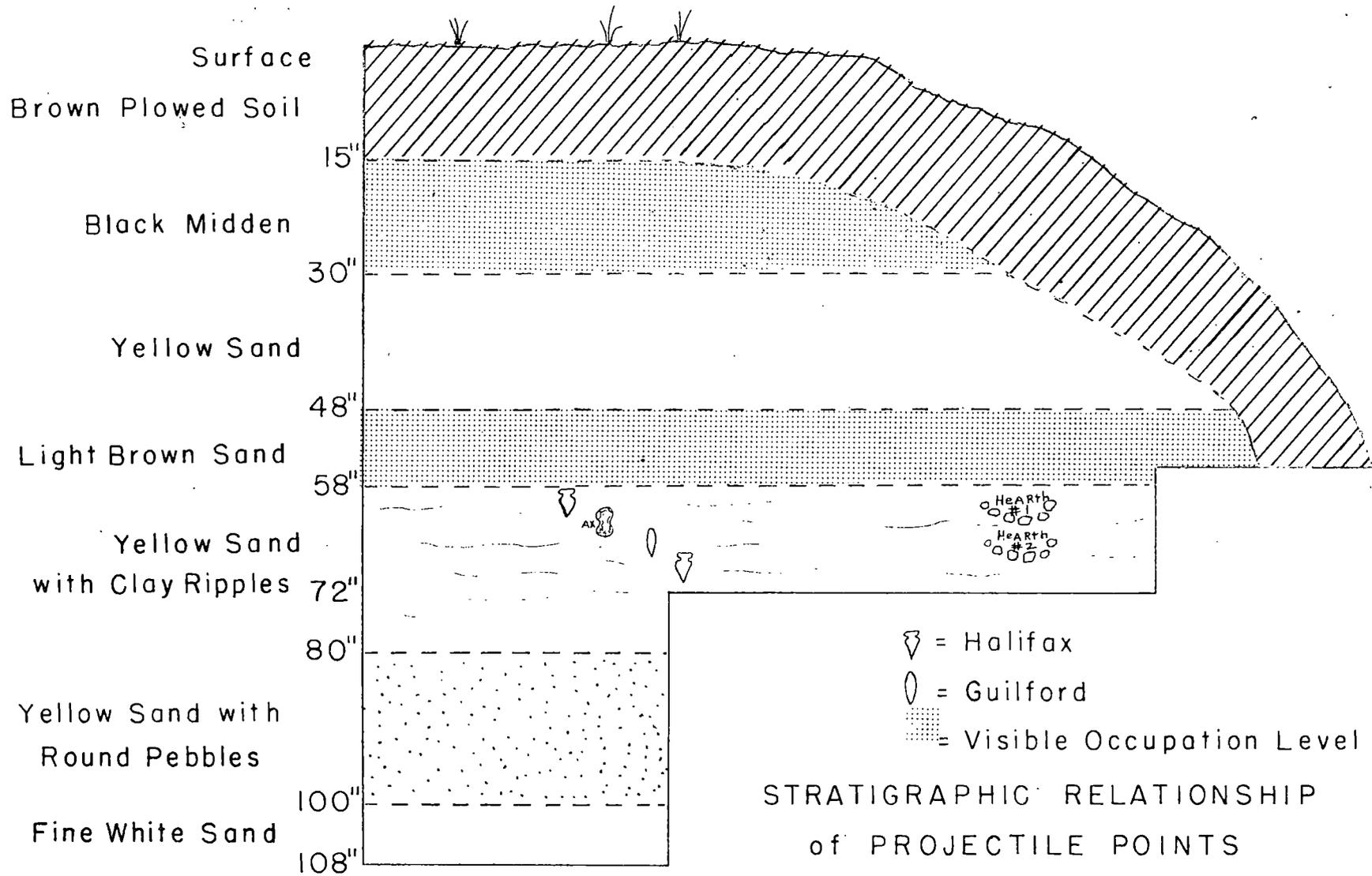


Figure 30

Plate 47

Profile of the Stratigraphy at the Gaston Site

Profile of the site at square 55L25 showing midden accumulation containing Clarksville points, Gaston pottery in the plowed soil; the black midden undisturbed by the plow, containing Roanoke points, Clement and Vincent pottery; a layer of yellow sand; a darkened layer containing Savannah River points; a lighter layer containing Halifax points, and below, the Guilford occupation level.

Surface

Plowed Soil
Clarksville
Gaston CI4= 215

Black Midden
Roanoke
Clement CI4= 370

Vincent CI4= 1040

Yellow Sand

Light Brown Sand
Savannah River
 CI4= 3900
 4280

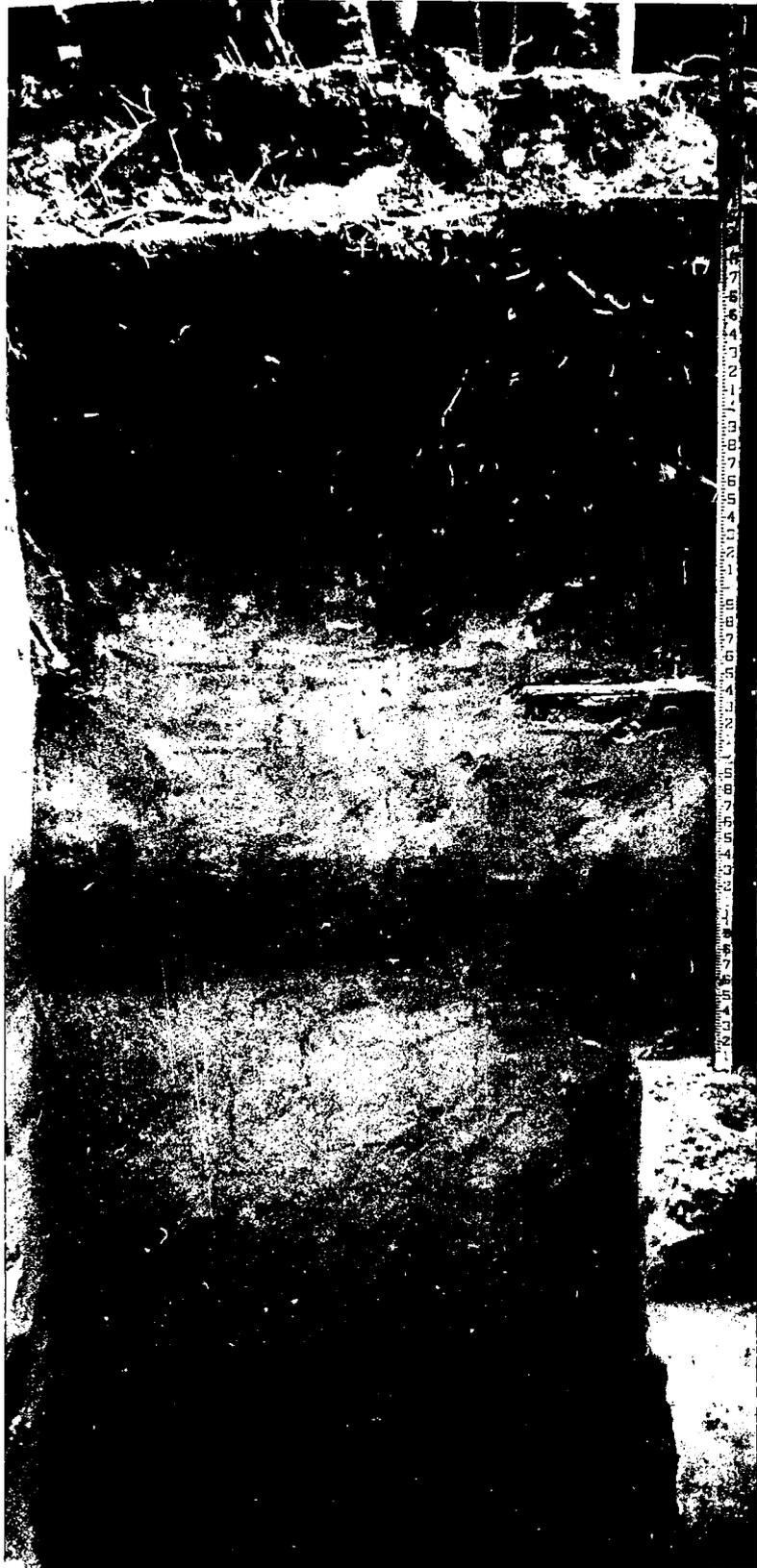
Halifax CI4= 5440

Guilford

Yellow Sand
 with
 Clay
 Ripples

Yellow Sand
 with
 Round Pebbles

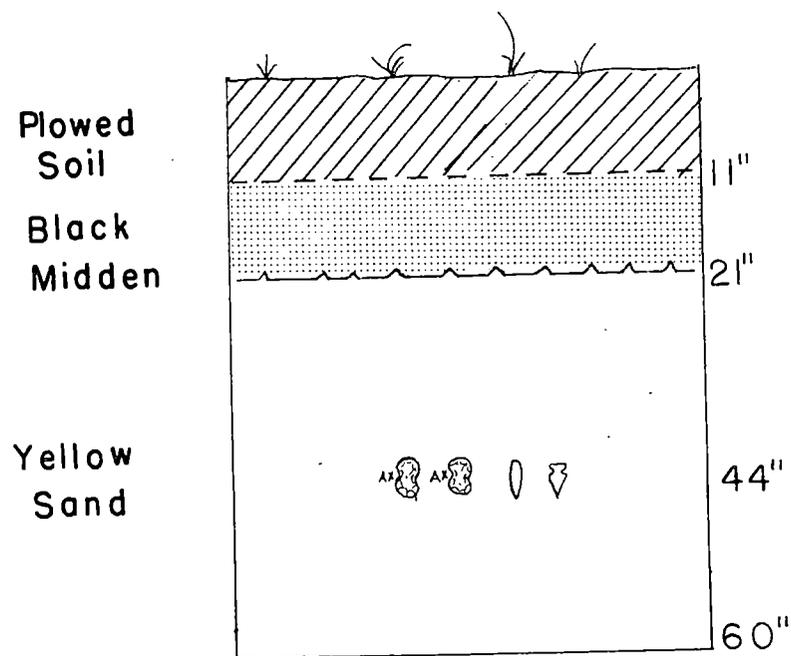
Fine White Sand



Profile of the Stratigraphy at the Gaston Site
 Plate 47

small square was dug, extending out from the side of the already excavated feature 107. This small square, three feet square, was dug in an attempt to discover whether or not the discolored level could be seen at this point. This was the primary purpose of digging this square, and the plan was to see if the occupation level extended this far into the site. If it did the plan was to dig a ten foot square in the vicinity. The discolored layer could not be seen in the profile of this square, but at the forty-four inch level two notched axes, and a Guilford and a Halifax type point were discovered. At this point the square was enlarged to a five foot square, and dug to a depth of sixty inches, but no further chips or artifacts were found. The relationship of these artifacts to the discolored layer in the profile of the bank is not known since it was not visible at this point.

In Figure 31, the bulldozed depth is shown as twenty-one inches; the depth of the midden deposit at this point on the site was thinner due to the fact that it was in a spot where a road had been cut previously. The twenty-one inch measurement for the depth of the bulldozed cut for this square was taken from the nearest profile of the bulldozed cut. This point was the highest point on the site at the present time, and if this was the case also in prehistoric times, this would account for the



▽ = Halifax
 ○ = Guilford
 ~ = Bulldozed Depth

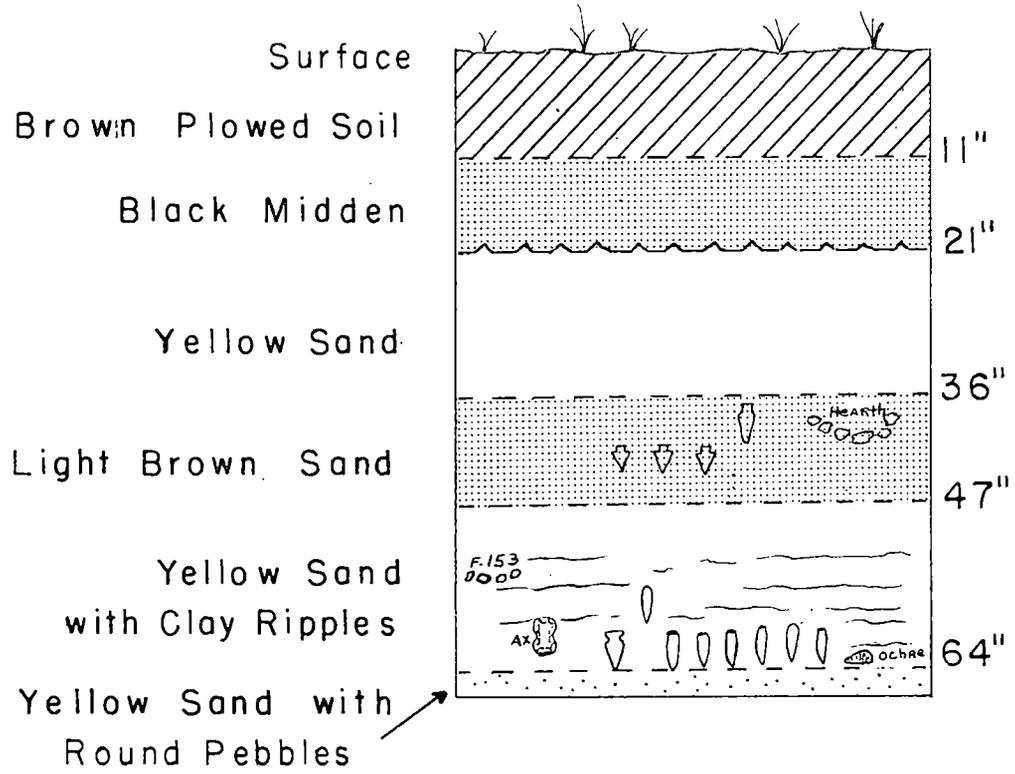
STRATIGRAPHIC RELATIONSHIP
 of PROJECTILE POINTS
 Sq. - 28 L 76 Hx v 7

Figure 31

relatively higher position of the Guilford and Halifax material in this test square.

Excavation of square -60L60 (Figure 32, Plate 48a). This square is located in Area F, Figure 22, and contained a series of postmolds, plus features 111, 112, and 114, that had been excavated after the bulldozer had cleared the area of the midden accumulation. These features had been excavated, and when excavation of the area was begun in order to locate the underlying stratified material, the holes where the features had been excavated were cleaned, and the area cleared of postholes and other intrusive pits. The excavation of this square was begun by digging a trench along the east side of the square, and across the south side. This isolated two corners of the square in a block, so that the profile could be seen and aid in excavation of the square by levels. The approach to the excavation of this square is shown in Plate 48a.

The discolored layer was not too easily seen on the side of the profile of the square, but appeared darker in some areas than in others. At this discolored level, between thirty-six and forty-seven inches, was found a hearth containing fifty-nine rocks and a base of a Large Savannah River type projectile point. This hearth was just at the edge of the square on the west side, and a



- ▽ ◊ = Savannah River
- ▽ = Halifax
- ◊ = Guilford
- ▣ = Visible Occupation Level
- = Bulldozed Depth

STRATIGRAPHIC RELATIONSHIP
of PROJECTILE POINTS
Sq.-60 L 60 Hx v7

Figure 32

small notch was excavated outside the square so as to include the hearth. This hearth is shown in Plate 51a. Charcoal was collected and was used in sample M 524 for radiocarbon dating.

Also found at the same level with the hearth were five projectile points and fragments. Three of these were of the type Small Savannah River, and the fourth was a Large Savannah River type base. The fifth fragment was the broken tip of a point, and was not typed, but the material and technique of manufacture resembled the Savannah River type. Also found at this Savannah River level were seven abraded stones, and at the fifty-one inch level a pile of stones was found, but no charcoal.

After passing the fifty-one inch level, the percentage of chips decreased sharply until the fifty-seven inch level was reached. The percentage of green slate chips increased at this point, and it was thought that this indicated the approaching of another occupation level. At that time the association of green slate chips with the Guilford occupation level had not become as obvious as it would later. At this point in the excavation of the square there occurred one of the most interesting incidents experienced during the project.

The square was being dug on Sunday and consequently there were approximately one hundred people standing

around the square watching the work. The excavating had reached a depth of almost five feet in the ten foot square, and two sifters were being operated sifting yellow sand. The six inches between the fifty-one and fifty-seven inch levels had been taken off in three inch levels without the discovery of any artifacts, only a few chips. To the crowd watching, this must have appeared as so much wasted effort, particularly since there were several men who kept remarking as to the futility and stupidity of it all. "How could there be anything down there that deep?" "Anyone could see that there would not be anything down there to find but sand." It was explained to them that if calculations were correct, some spear points of a particular size and shape would be found. A sketch of a Guilford type projectile point was drawn in the sand, and it was pointed out to them that this was the object of the search. However, the spectators did not seem to be convinced. Within a period of thirty minutes six Guilford type projectile points and one Halifax type were found at the sixty-three inch level. This feat of predicting what was coming, and then having the prediction proved in a dramatic manner, convinced the critics that those working were some sort of magicians, and they so informed the crowd for the remainder of the afternoon.

At the sixty-one inch level was found a chipped,

notched ax, and at the sixty-three inch level a large lump of worked red ochre, shown in Plate 40g. The square was continued to a depth of sixty-eight inches, but chips were not found beyond the sixty-three inch depth. The chart in Figure 40 shows the chip and projectile point relationship in this square.

Excavation of square -70L60 (Figure 33, Plate 48b).

Square -70L60 shown in Area F, Figure 22, contained some excavated pits and other intrusions. An area around each intrusion was cut out so that none of the intruded material remained. The square prepared for excavating is shown in Plate 48b.

This square was approached from square -60L60, and at the thirty-six to forty-nine inch level three Large Savannah River type projectile points were found. Also found at this same level was one Small Oval Blade.

At the fifty-four inch level a hearth was found, and lying among the rocks near the hearth were two Halifax type projectile points. The hearth is shown in Plate 49a, and a close-up of the points is shown in Plate 49b.

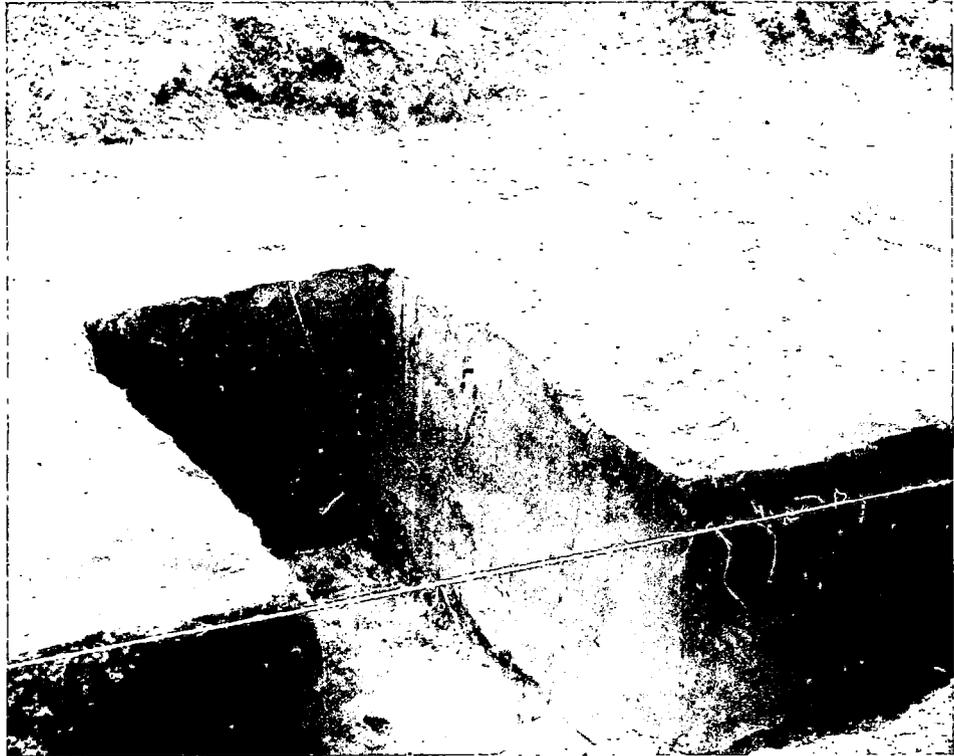
Other artifacts found in the fifty-two to fifty-eight inch level are five Small Oval Blades, six Halifax projectile points, two Guilford type projectile points, one Small Savannah River type projectile point, and one abraded stone.

Plate 48

Pre-Ceramic Squares Before Excavation

- a. Approach trench around the edge of square -60L60.
The Guilford occupation level is a few inches below the bottom of the trench.

- b. Square -70L60 before excavation. Square pits represent cleaned areas around excavated features previously excavated.

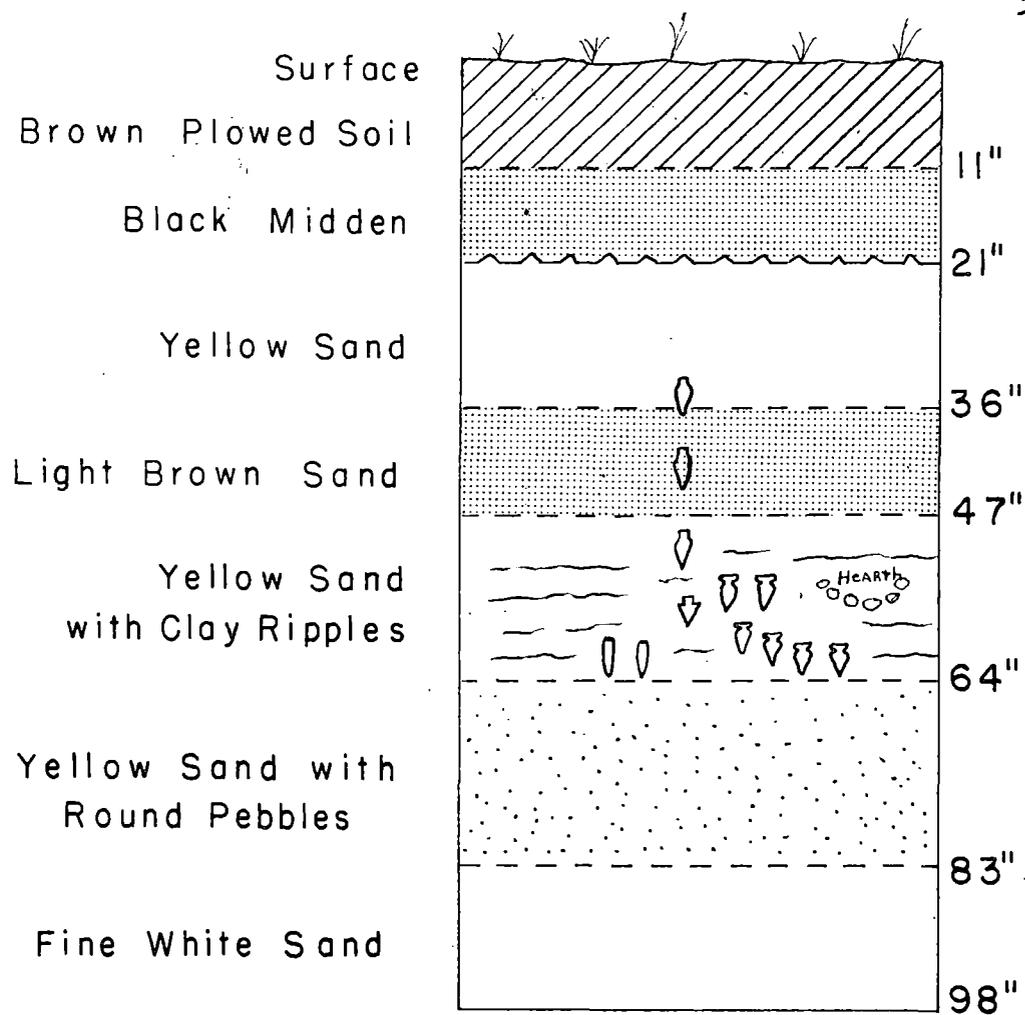


a



b

Pre-ceramic Squares Before Excavation
Plate 48



- ▽ = Savannah River
- △ = Halifax
- = Guilford
- ▒ = Visible Occupation Level
- ~ = Bulldozed Depth

STRATIGRAPHIC RELATIONSHIP
of PROJECTILE POINTS
Sq. - 70 L 60 Hx v 7

Figure 33

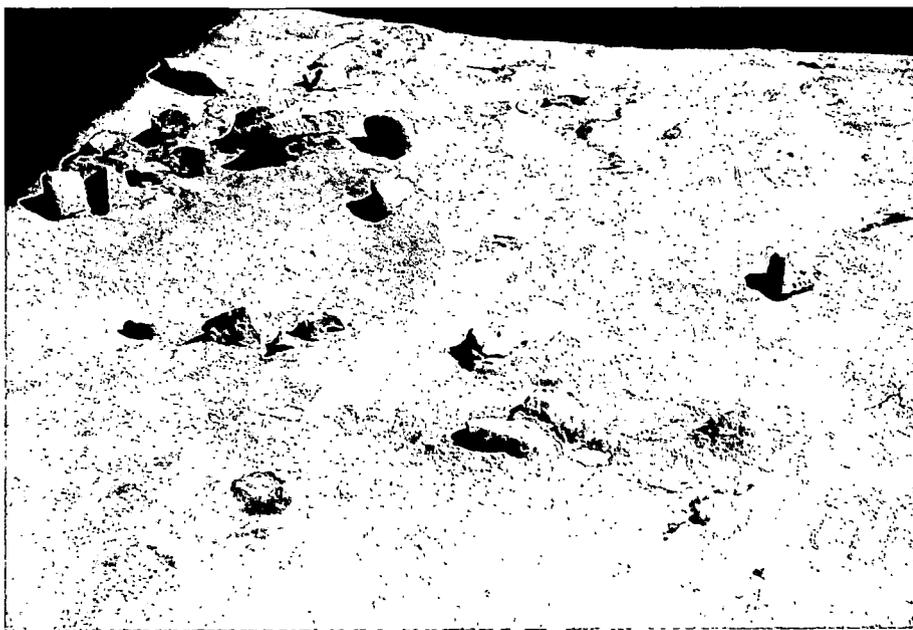
Plate 49

Hearth at the Halifax Level in Square -70L60

- a. Fired hearth rocks in square -70L60, with charcoal in the sand around and under the rocks.
- b. Close-up of the same hearth, showing two Halifax points in situ.



a



b

Hearth at the Halifax Level in Square -70L60

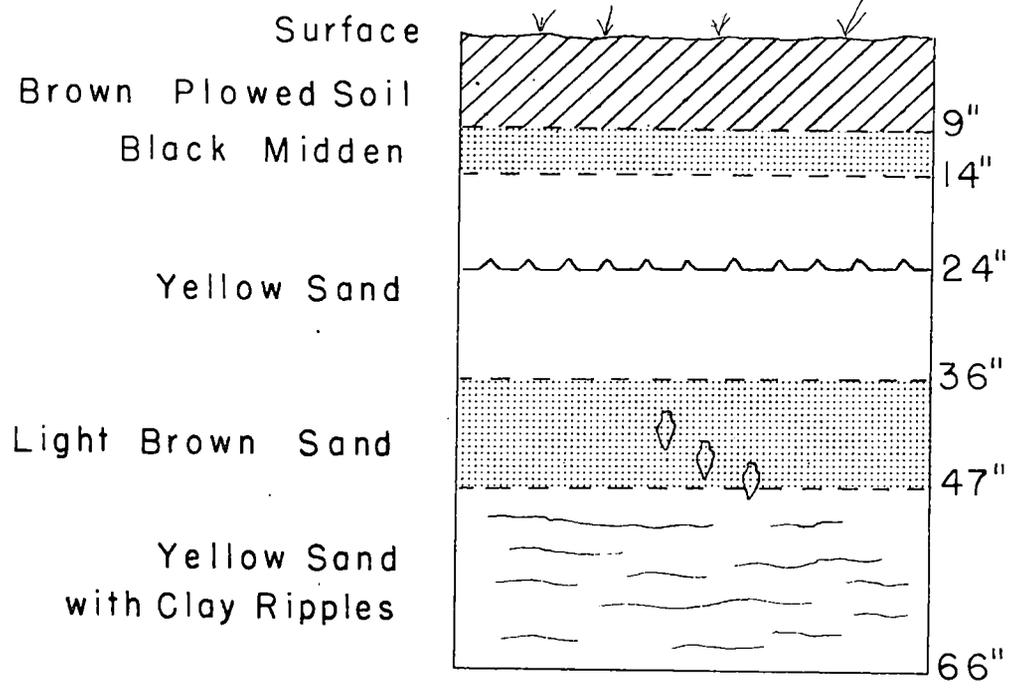
Plate 49

a concentration of white quartz stones was found at the same level as the hearth at the opposite side of the square.

Two Halifax type projectile points were found at a depth of sixty-three inches, the same depth as the Guilford points in the adjoining square. The hearth with the Halifax points was ten inches higher, however.

The square was excavated to a depth of nine feet in an effort to determine if further cultural material could be found deeper, but no chips appeared after a depth of sixty-three inches. One large abraded stone was found at a depth of seventy-seven inches, the deepest artifact found on the site. The chip type relationships from this square are shown in Figure 40.

Excavation of square -105R50 (Figure 34). This square is located in Area G, Figure 23. A five foot control square had been taken out at -100R50 before the bulldozers cleared this area of the midden accumulation. Eight postmolds were found in the bottom of the five foot control square, but after the bulldozer had passed over the area, nothing could be seen intruding into the subsoil. For this reason the area was chosen for a deep square to locate pre-ceramic occupation levels. The method of excavation of these pre-ceramic squares is described elsewhere in this report.



- ◇ = Savannah River
- ▣ = Visible Occupation Level
- ~ = Bulldozed Depth

STRATIGRAPHIC RELATIONSHIP
of PROJECTILE POINTS
Sq. -105 R50 Hx v7

Figure 34

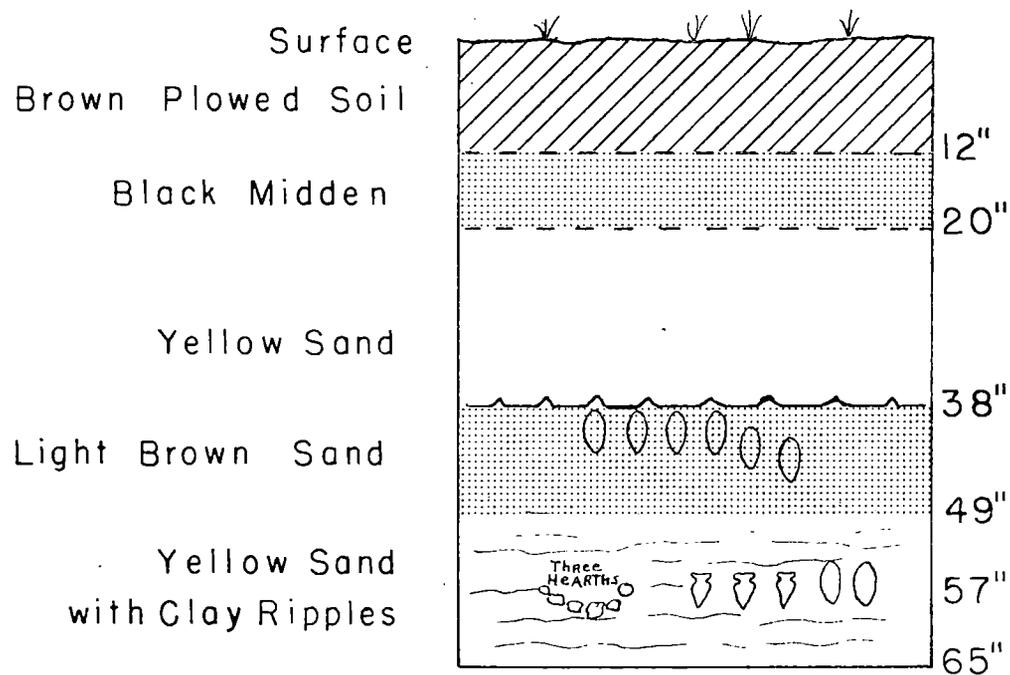
The midden accumulation at this part of the site was fourteen inches in depth, and above this particular square the bulldozer cut to a depth of twenty-four inches. From this level down to the thirty-six inch level the sand was sterile of cultural material. At the thirty-six inch level quartzite chips began to appear in the screen, and continued to the forty-seven inch level. Three Large Savannah River type projectile points were found in this level, one at the forty-one inch level, one at the forty-five inch level, and one at the forty-seven inch level. Also found in this level from thirty-six to forty-seven inches were three Small Oval Blades, and two Large Oval Blades.

The square was continued to a depth of five and one-half feet, but no more chips were encountered below the forty-seven inch level.

Excavation of square 10L20 (Figure 35, Plate 50).

In order to save excavating time, the bulldozer was allowed to excavate the trench at square 10L20 down to a level of thirty-eight inches. This eliminated the necessity of digging through sterile sand to get to the Savannah River level.

From thirty-eight to forty-nine inches, six large oval blades were found. No other artifacts other than



- = Large Oval Blade
- ▽ = Halifax
- ▒ = Visible Occupation Level
- ~ = Bulldozed Depth

STRATIGRAPHIC RELATIONSHIP
of PROJECTILE POINTS
Sq. 10 L20 Hx v7

Figure 35

chips were found at this level. The chip analysis for this square is shown in the chart in Figure 40.

At the fifty-eight inch level in this square, three hearths were found containing rocks. Charcoal from these hearths was collected to get a radiocarbon date for the Halifax material. Plate 50a shows hearths one and three, and Plate 50b is a close-up of hearth one, a discolored hearth area from which charcoal was collected.

Also found at the level with the hearths were three Halifax type projectile points and a flat stone with pits. One hearth had two fragments of a broken mortar among the rocks composing the hearth. Three abraded stones were found at this level, along with two Large Oval Blades.

After the hearths were removed and the soil washed for the charcoal, the excavation was continued below the fifty-eight inch level. A noticeable decrease in white quartz chips was seen, with an increase in the percentage of green slate chips. It was hoped that in this square perhaps the Guilford type projectile points could be found directly underlying the Halifax types. The chips were there, but the points and hearths were not. The square was excavated to a depth of sixty-seven inches. See the discussion of chip and projectile point relationships and the significance of the chip relationships in this square, in the section on pre-ceramic projectile point types in this report, under the Guilford point discussion.

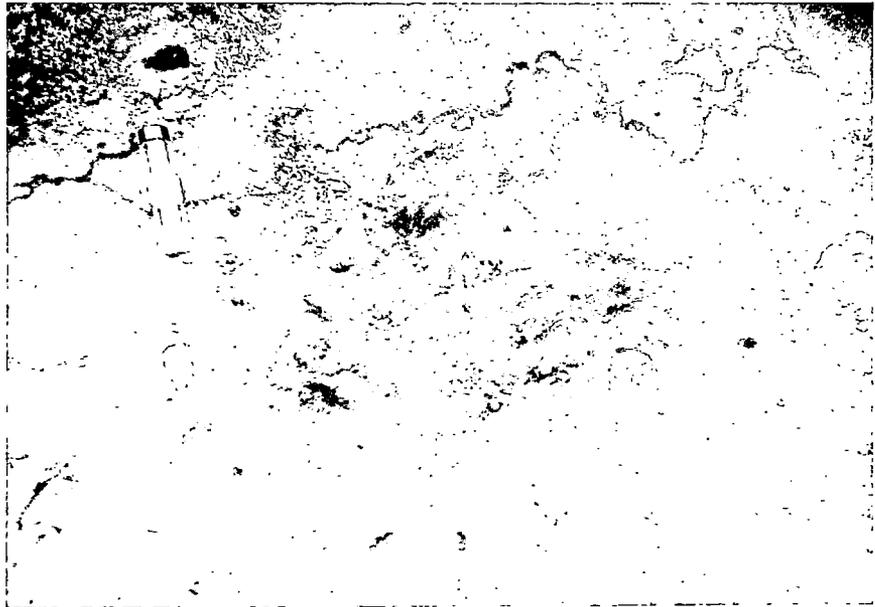
Plate 50

Hearths at the Halifax Level in Square 10L20

- a. Hearth 1 (left) and hearth 3 in square 10L20, 58 inch level, from which charcoal was collected to date the Halifax culture.
- b. Close-up of discolored area at hearth 1 in square 10L20 at the Halifax level (58 inches), from which charcoal was collected.



a



b

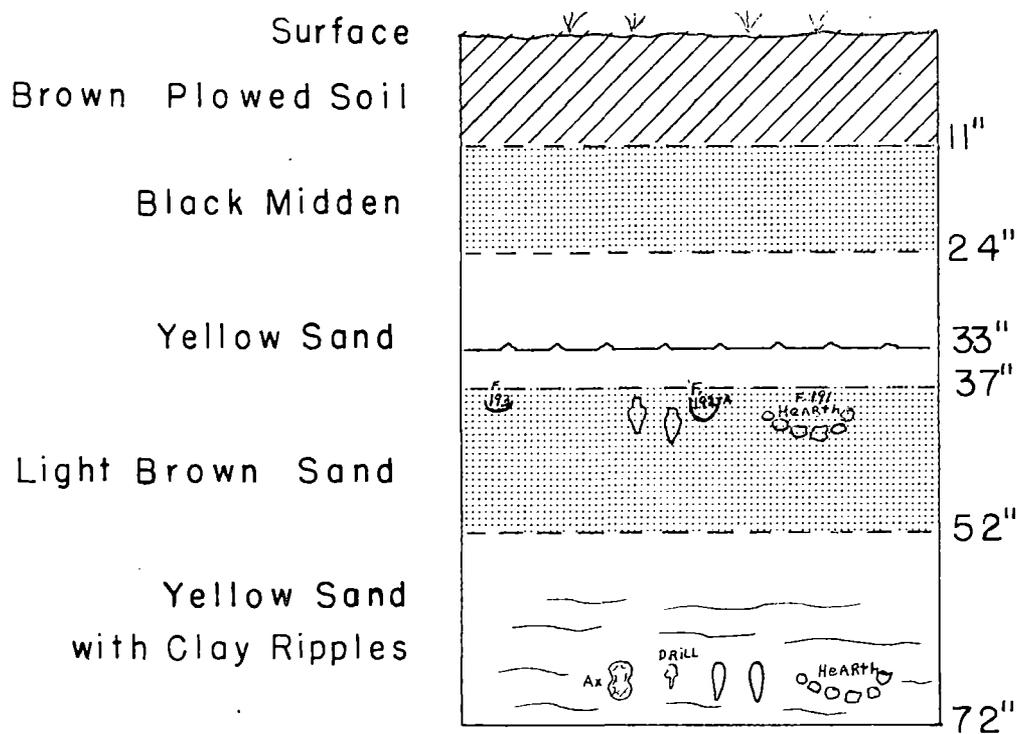
Hearths at the Halifax Level in Square 10L20
Plate 50

Excavation of square 60L10 (Figure 36). This square was bulldozed to a depth of thirty-three inches, and below this level there was four inches of sterile sand. At the forty-one inch level three dark pit outlines appeared as the square was being shoveled and sifted. These dark discolorations were assigned feature numbers. Feature 191, when excavated, proved to be a hearth composed of thirty-four stones. Charcoal from the area around the stones was collected for dating. A Large Savannah River type projectile point was found at the level of first appearance of the discoloration from the hearth, at the forty-one inch level.

Feature 192-A appeared to be a pit, eight inches deep and sixteen inches across. This feature contained nothing but the basal section of a Large Savannah River type projectile point, and charcoal fragments.

Feature 193 appeared to be a bottom of a postmold. It was three inches deep, and contained nothing but discolored soil. These features all appeared below the river deposited sterile sand, and were not seen until the forty-one inch level was reached.

After these features had been removed, the excavation of the square continued, and chips were found down to a depth of fifty-two inches. For four inches no more chips appeared; a few appeared again between the fifty-six and sixty inch level. Instead of quartzite and felsite and



- ◇ = Savannah River
- ◊ = Guilford
- ▤ = Visible Occupation Level
- = Bulldozed Depth

STRATIGRAPHIC RELATIONSHIP
of PROJECTILE POINTS
Sq. 60 L10 Hxv7

Figure 36

white quartz that had appeared in considerable numbers in the level between thirty-seven and fifty-two inches, the chips here were of a greenish slate, the same type material that 61 per cent of the Guilford type projectile points are made (Figure 40).

As excavation continued in the sixty to sixty-eight inch level, more of the green slate chips appeared, and at the sixty-eight inch level was found two Guilford type projectile points, a broken chipped ax, a stone drill, and a hearth. The hearth is shown in Plate 51b, and was at a depth of three feet below the bulldozed level of thirty-three inches. This hearth had three stones, and contained charcoal wood and hickory nut shells.

Figure 40 shows the chip and projectile point relationship by levels from this square. As can be seen from this chart, the slate chips did not continue below the sixty-eight inch level. The square was excavated to a depth of seventy-two inches.

Plate 51

- a. Hearth in square -60L60 at the thirty-six to forty-seven inch level, containing the base of a Savannah River projectile point.
- b. Hearth in square 60L10 at the sixty-nine inch level, at the same level with two Guilford projectile points.



a



a

Hearths in Squares -60L60 and 60L10 at Hx v7.
Plate 51

CHAPTER IV

THE INTERPRETIVE ANALYSIS OF THE GASTON SITE

I. THE METHOD OF THE CERAMIC SERIATION ANALYSIS OF THE FEATURES AT THE GASTON SITE

A seriation analysis of the features at the Gaston Site was conducted similar to that for the sites in the basin. There were two hundred features excavated, and most of these were pits into the subsoil at the ceramic level. There were a few features at the pre-ceramic levels, and of course, these were excluded from the present seriation. Some of these features contained no pottery, and others contained only a few sherds. These pits were not included in the seriation.

In the seriation of the sites, seventy sherds had been the criteria for selection of sites to be included. With the seriation of the features, two criteria were used. First, those features showing no intrusion from other pits were selected as being most likely to contain associated ceramic material (Figures 18-24). From these features showing no intrusion, those features containing more than fifty sherds were selected. These are the features included in the ceramic seriation shown in Figure 37. The assumptions and methodology of conducting a ceramic seriation is discussed in a previous section of this paper.

Serialized Pottery Type Sequence of the Features at the Gaston Site

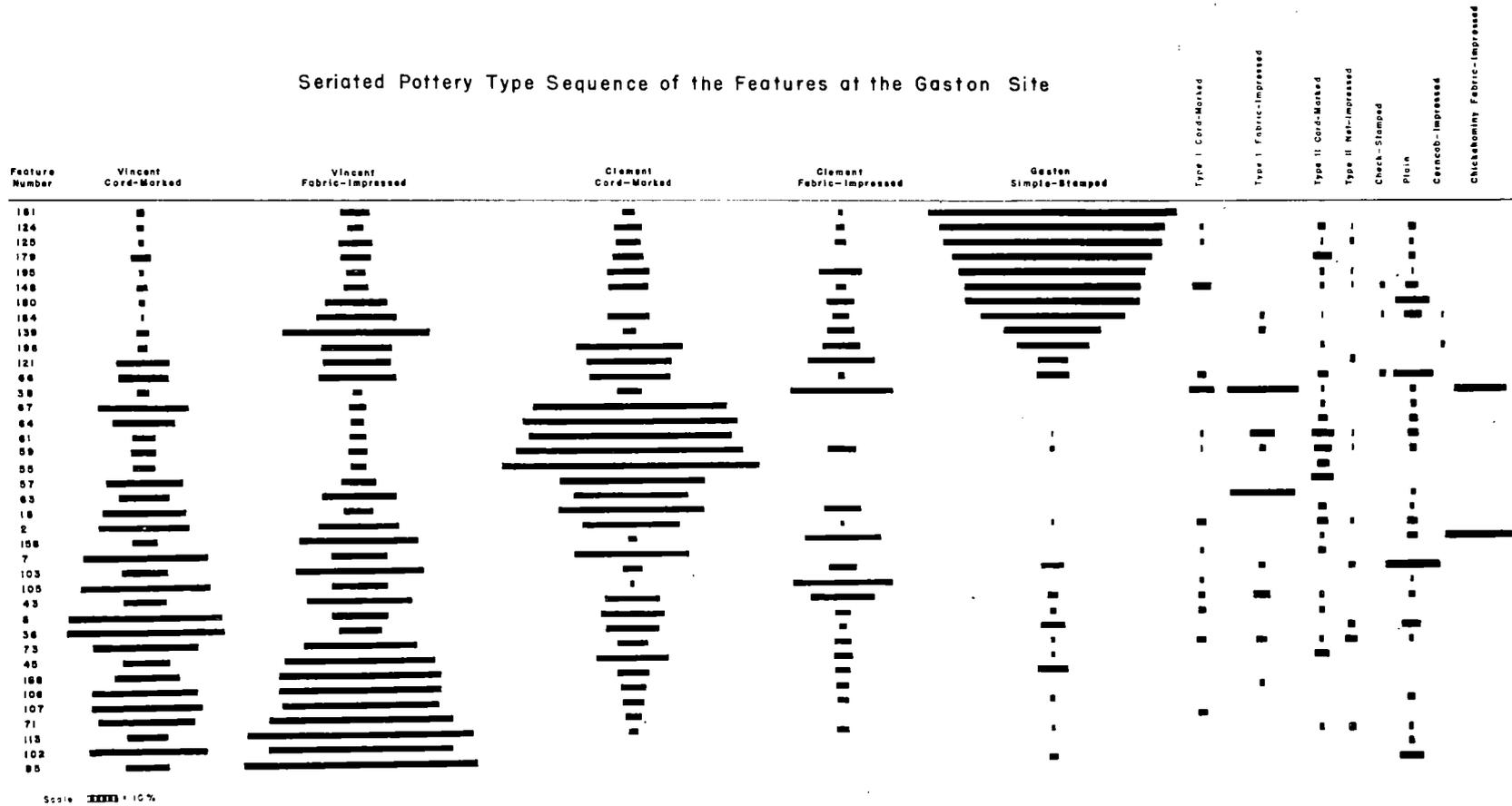


Figure 37

PERCENTAGE TOTALS FOR THE FEATURES IN THE CERAMIC SERIATION

Fea. No.	Shard Count	Vincent Cord	Vincent Fabric	Clement Cord	Clement Fabric	Gaston Simple Stamped	Type I Cord	Type I Fabric	Type II Cord	Net II	Check Stamped	Plain
181	173	2.3	8.7	4.0	1.7	83.3						
124	343	2.3	5.3	9.0	2.6	74.7	1.2		2.3	.6		2.0
125	229	1.3	10.9	7.9	3.4	73.4	.9		.4	.9		.9
179	50	6.0	10.0	10.0		66.0			6.0			2.0
195	209	1.4	5.7	14.4	14.4	62.1			1.0	.5		.5
148	1062	3.6	8.0	13.2	3.4	58.5	6.2		1.3	.1	1.8	3.9
180	55	1.8	20.0		9.1	58.2						10.9
184	225	.8	26.2	14.3	5.3	47.5		1.3	.4		.8	2.6
139	93	4.3	48.4	4.3	8.6	32.2		2.2				
196	99	3.0	23.2	35.4	12.1	24.3			1.0			
121	72	16.7	22.2	27.8	22.2	9.7				1.4		
66	219	16.0	24.7	26.5	1.8	10.5	2.7		3.2		1.8	12.8
38	119	4.2	2.5	8.4	34.5		8.4	22.7	.8			1.7
67	188	28.7	4.8	63.8					1.1			1.6
64	113	20.3	4.4	70.8					2.7			1.8
61	139	7.2	5.0	66.9		.7	.7	7.9	7.3	.7		3.6
59	196	8.2	6.2	64.8	9.2	1.0	.5	2.0	5.6	.5		2.0
55	138	7.2	5.1	84.8					2.9			
57	84	25.0	10.7	57.2					7.1			
63	106	16.0	24.5	37.8				20.8				.9
18	83	26.5	9.6	48.2	12.0				2.4			1.3
2	168	29.2	25.6	32.1	1.2	1.2	3.0		3.5	1.2		3.0
158	103	7.8	38.8	1.9	25.3				1.0			2.9
7	82	40.2	18.3	37.8			1.3		2.4			
103	53	15.1	41.5	5.7	9.4	7.5		1.9		1.9		17.0
105	238	42.4	17.6	1.9	37.0		.8					.8
43	143	14.0	33.6	17.5	21.0	3.4	2.1	4.9	1.4			2.1
8	56	50.0	17.9	21.4	5.5	1.8	1.8		1.8			
36	51	51.0	13.7	17.6	2.0	7.8				2.0		5.9
73	71	33.8	36.6	9.9	5.6	1.4	2.8	2.8	1.4	4.3		1.4
45	67	14.9	49.3	23.8	6.0	1.5			4.5			
188	57	21.1	52.6	10.5	5.3	10.5						
106	78	33.3	52.5	7.7	3.8			2.7				
107	158	36.1	50.6	7.0	3.2	1.3						1.8
71	71	31.0	60.6	5.6			2.7					
113	98	13.3	74.3	3.2	4.2	1.0			1.0	2.0		1.0
102	61	37.7	60.7									1.6
95	206	13.6	75.7			2.9						7.8

Total 5756

Table VIII

PERCENTAGE TOTALS FOR THE FEATURES IN THE CERAMIC SERIATION

Vincent Cord	Vincent Fabric	Clement Cord	Clement Fabric	Gaston Simple Stamped	Type I Cord	Type I Fabric	Type II Cord	Net II	Check Stamped	Plain	Corncob Impressed	Chickahominy Fabric	Total %
2.3	8.7	4.0	1.7	83.3									100.0
2.3	5.3	9.0	2.6	74.7	1.2		2.3	.6		2.0			100.0
1.3	10.9	7.9	3.4	73.4	.9		.4	.9		.9			100.0
5.0	10.0	10.0		66.0			6.0			2.0			100.0
1.4	5.7	14.4	14.4	62.1			1.0	.5		.5			100.0
3.6	8.0	13.2	3.4	58.5	6.2		1.3	.1	1.8	3.9			100.0
1.8	20.0		9.1	58.2						10.9			100.0
.8	26.2	14.3	5.3	47.5		1.3	.4		.8	2.6	.8		100.0
4.3	48.4	4.3	8.6	32.2		2.2							100.0
3.0	23.2	35.4	12.1	24.3			1.0				1.0		100.0
5.7	22.2	27.8	22.2	9.7				1.4					100.0
5.0	24.7	26.5	1.8	10.5	2.7		3.2		1.8	12.8			100.0
4.2	2.5	8.4	34.5		8.4	22.7	.8			1.7		16.8	100.0
3.7	4.8	63.8					1.1			1.6			100.0
0.3	4.4	70.8					2.7			1.8			100.0
7.2	5.0	66.9		.7	.7	7.9	7.3	.7		3.6			100.0
3.2	6.2	64.8	9.2	1.0	.5	2.0	5.6	.5		2.0			100.0
7.2	5.1	84.8					2.9						100.0
5.0	10.7	57.2					7.1						100.0
5.0	24.5	37.8				20.8							100.0
5.5	9.6	48.2	12.0				2.4			1.3			100.0
9.2	25.6	32.1	1.2	1.2	3.0		3.5	1.2		3.0			100.0
7.8	38.8	1.9	25.3				1.0			2.9		22.3	100.0
0.2	18.3	37.8			1.3		2.4						100.0
5.1	41.5	5.7	9.4	7.5		1.9		1.9		17.0			100.0
2.4	17.6	1.9	37.0		.8					.8			100.0
4.0	33.6	17.5	21.0	3.4	2.1	4.9	1.4			2.1			100.0
0.0	17.9	21.4	5.5	1.8	1.8		1.8						100.0
1.0	13.7	17.6	2.0	7.8				2.0		5.9			100.0
3.8	36.6	9.9	5.6	1.4	2.8	2.8	1.4	4.3		1.4			100.0
4.9	49.3	23.8	6.0	1.5			4.5						100.0
1.1	52.6	10.5	5.3	10.5									100.0
3.3	52.5	7.7	3.8			2.7							100.0
5.1	50.6	7.0	3.2	1.3						1.8			100.0
1.0	60.6	5.6			2.7								100.0
3.3	74.3	3.2	4.2	1.0			1.0	2.0		1.0			100.0
7.7	60.7									1.6			100.0
3.6	75.7			2.9						7.8			100.0

Table VIII

II. POTTERY TYPE RELATIONSHIPS FROM THE SERIATED SEQUENCE OF THE FEATURES AT THE GASTON SITE

Figure 37 shows the seriated pottery type sequence of the features at the Gaston site (Hx v7). As was true with the seriation of the sites in the basin, the Vincent series types fall at a lower level on the chart than do the Clement series types. As the Clement Cord-marked type reaches its peak of popularity, there seems to be a gap that appears in the bars of the Clement Fabric Impressed type. There is some stratigraphic evidence that tends to indicate that the Clement Fabric Impressed type is somewhat later than the Clement Cord-marked type, and perhaps this is represented in the gap in the Clement Fabric Impressed type bars. The Gaston Simple Stamped type occurs at the top, and evidently represented the last Indian occupation of the site. Type II Cord-marked appears to be associated with the Clement series as it did in the seriation of the sites.

The type Chickahominy Fabric Impressed is known to occur at the historic level, and therefore features 38 and 158 should perhaps be seriated much higher in the chart. However, the absence of any Gaston type sherds in the pits makes the placing of them lower than that level. The Check Stamped sherds again appear to be associated with the Gaston

ceramic material. Type I Fabric Impressed appeared in considerable quantity in feature 38 along with Chickahominy Fabric Impressed, which indicates further that this bar should be seriated at the late period, since Type I also appears late, being equated typologically with Clarksville ceramics.

Lewis Binford has reexamined the Vincent Fabric Impressed pottery from these features, and concludes that the bulge represented at the late period in the Vincent Fabric column is the result of the inclusion in the Vincent Fabric type of sherds very similar typologically, but related to a much later time period than the true Vincent Fabric Impressed ceramics.¹ This would account for the bulge at a late period. However, it is possible that this bulge is the result of intrusion or typing of Clement Series sherds as Vincent, since the distinction is often hard to detect.

III. STRATIGRAPHIC RELATIONSHIP OF THE POTTERY TYPES AT THE GASTON SITE

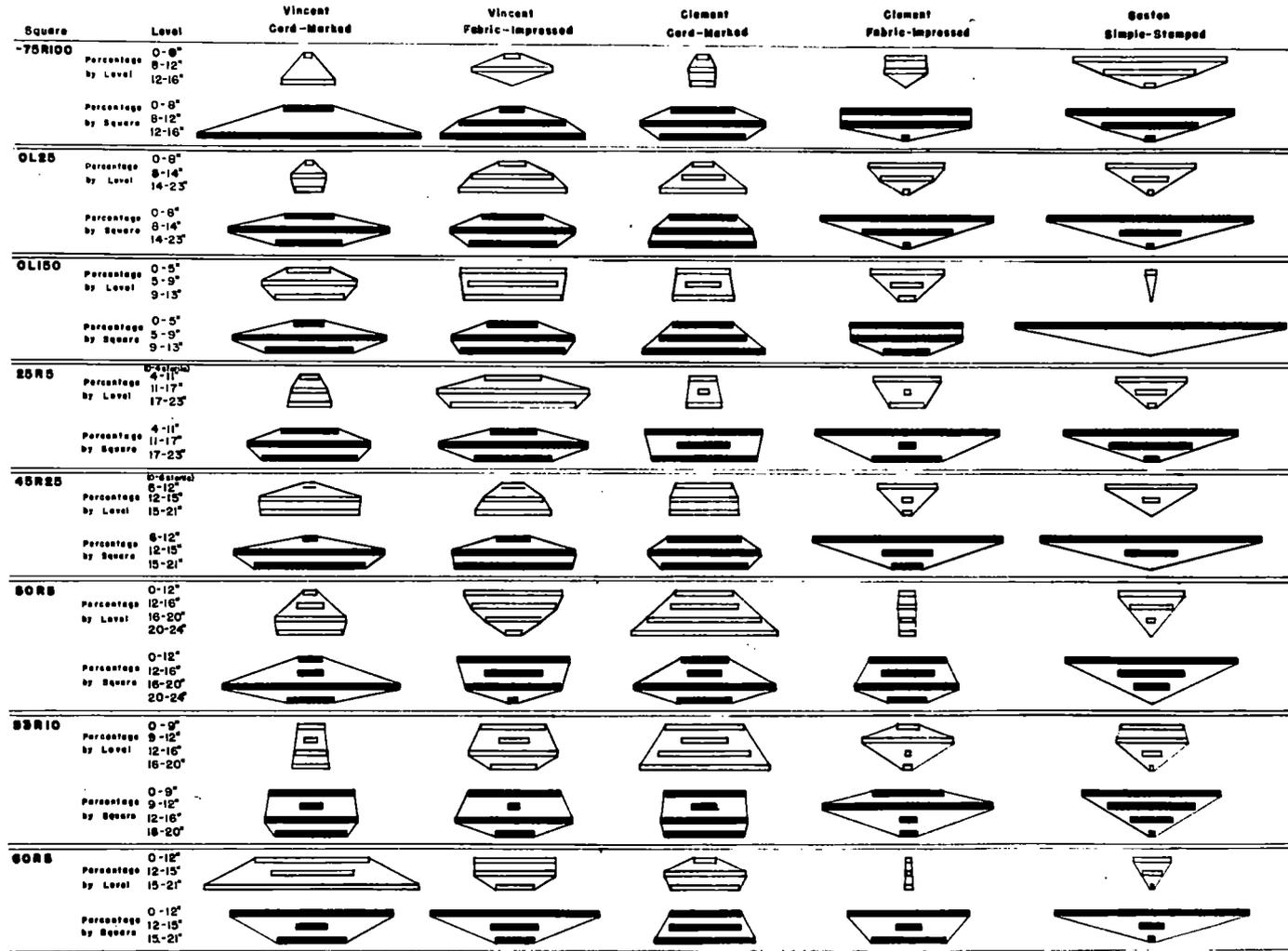
The eight squares whose pottery type percentages are shown in Figure 38, are those squares at the Gaston site that were deep enough to allow three levels to be excavated.

¹Lewis Binford, personal communication.

Since most of these squares had been disturbed to some extent, as evidenced by pits intruding into the subsoil, it must be assumed that these pits could have originated at the top of the ground. If this were true for all the squares, there would be such mixing of material that nothing significant could be seen between the percentage occurrence of the pottery types at the different levels. However, since this was all there was available, work proceeded as though no pitting had occurred, to see what the results would indicate.

The percentages were computed two ways, by level and by square according to type. In studying the chart (Figure 38), and the "percentage by level" bars, one should ask, "Of all the sherds found at this level, what percentage was of this particular type?" In studying the "Percentage by square" bars, one should ask, "Of all the sherds of this type found in this square, what percentage was found at this particular level?" The lines connecting the percentage bars were added to aid in visually interpreting the chart. The disturbed top soil was taken off in one level, and then a three inch level was taken off. Then the remainder was taken off in six inch levels, but in some squares four inch levels were used. (See method of excavating ceramic control squares). The levels vary on the graph, therefore this should be kept in mind.

Pottery Type Percentages from Squares at the Gaston Site



Scale: = 10%

Figure 38

One very obvious fact can be seen from this chart. This is the percentage occurrence of the Gaston type ceramic material in the top levels. This was very noticeable in the field also. This position of the Gaston type at the top levels was used as the indicator for determining which end of the seriation charts should be at the top.

The difference between the Clement and Vincent types is not so clear as the position of the Gaston type. However, there is some indication for the higher position of the Clement series. This apparent confusion of the relationship between these types in these squares at this site is seen as a result of considerable pitting of the site. This situation will be clarified somewhat by a look at the stratigraphic relationship of the pottery types at the Thelma site (Figure 43), at which virtually no Gaston sherds were found, only Clement and Vincent types. This absence of a major Gaston period occupation at the Thelma site resulted in less pitting, and a clearer picture of the relationship between the Clement and Vincent types.

The occurrence of other types in levels at the Gaston site in such small amounts resulted in their being left off the chart presented here, however, the county by type for each level is presented in Table IX.

SHERD COUNT BY TYPE FOR EACH LEVEL OF THE CERAMIC
CONTROL SQUARES AT THE GASTON SITE

Square	Level	Vincent Cord	Vincent Fabric	Clement Cord	Clement Fabric	Gaston Simple St.	Type I Cord	Type I Fabric	Type II Cord	Type II Fabric	Net I	Net II	Check Stamped	Plain	Corncob Impressed	Total
-75R100	0-8"	2	4	3	10	37		2						7	2	67
	8-12"		18	6	10	21		2						4		61
	12-16"	9	24	4	1	2	2	1	2							45
OL25	0-8"	3	12	8	29	34	2	2	1			1	1	11		104
	8-14"	10	23	12	15	10	2							5		77
	14-23"	4	16	13	1	1								5		40
OL150	0-5"	7	13	9	12	2	1	1								45
	5-9"	35	33	13	12				5					1		99
	9-13"	20	28	18	5			3	4							78
25R5	4-11"	6	18	9	22	23							1	9		88
	11-17"	13	57	4	2	11		7	3					4		101
	17-23"	10	29	8	8	2		1				2		3		63
45R25	6-12"	6	11	30	31	47							1	16		142
	12-15"	68	40	46	8	11			1					8		182
	15-21"	49	38	35	5				3					7		137
50R5	0-12"	5	38	22	6	26								9		106
	12-16"	6	19	15	4	10							1	6		61
	16-20"	41	32	66	8	5								4		158
	20-24"	11	3	25	3		2	1						1		45
53R10	0-9"	12	29	35	9	27								7		119
	9-12"	3	7	11	22	17								5		65
	12-16"	13	36	37	2	8	1		11					1		109
	16-20"	10	12	34	2	1	2		3			4		2		70
60R5	0-12"	90	64	17	5	31								5		212
	12-15"	17	17	17	1	4										56
	15-21"	37	14	24	3	1			16							95

Table IX

IV. THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE ARTIFACTS AND CERAMIC TYPES FROM THE FEATURES AT THE GASTON SITE

The seriation chart of the features (Figure 37), was used as the basis from which to begin the artifact analysis from the features. Table X shows those features near the top of the seriated ceramic sequence containing a high percentage of Gaston type sherds. The most predominate projectile point type associated with the Gaston pottery in these pits is the Clarksville point. The second most prevalent type is the Roanoke point. Eliminating the Savannah River and Halifax types as definitely pre-ceramic, and therefore known not to be associated with the Gaston material culturally, only the triangle types are represented outside of the "other" category. Other artifacts appearing significant in Table X are the clay pipes and bone awls. These objects are represented in sufficient numbers to indicate that they definitely are culturally associated with the Gaston ceramics.

Table XI illustrates the artifacts associated with those features containing a high percentage of Clement type pottery. This chart is remarkable in the total lack of Clarksville type projectile points. The Roanoke type projectile point, however, appears to be undoubtedly associated with the Clement type ceramics, since only one

pre-ceramic Halifax point is the only other point found in these pits outside of the Large Triangle type, which probably represents the upper limit of the Roanoke type. No other significant correlations can be seen on the basis of the limited number of artifacts represented in any category.

The Table XII represents the artifacts found in the features containing a high percentage of Vincent Series ceramics. The virtual absence of the Clarksville points again illustrate the lack of association of this type with the earlier ceramic types. The most predominate type again is the Roanoke point which, along with the Large Triangle type, represents the majority of points found in these pits. This is emphasized when it is known that the other types represented are mostly of the pre-ceramic type. One point that appears in these pits, but not in any of the Gaston or Clement pits is the Thelma Point, of which two specimens were found. This small stemmed point was found associated with Vincent type pottery at the Thelma site, and here it also appears in a Vincent associated context.

An increase in the amount of abraded and pecked stone is noticed associated with the Vincent type pits. Another significant artifact appearing in numbers for the first time in these charts is the Boatstone Atlatl Weight, of which five are represented from these Vincent pits.

ARTIFACTS FROM FEATURES AT THE GASTON SITE HAVING
A HIGH PERCENTAGE OF GASTON TYPE POTTERY

FEATURE NUMBER	181	124	125	179	195	148	180	184	139	Total
<u>Projectile Pts.</u>										
Clarksville	1		1			11	2	3		18
Roanoke		1	3		1	4		3		12
Large Triangle		1			1	1				3
Crude Triangle					2					2
Thelma										
Small Savannah R.						2*				2
Large Savannah R.										
Halifax						1		1		2
Guilford										
Morrow Mountain										
Small Oval Blade										
Large Oval Blade										
Other								2		2
Total	1	2	4		4	19	2	9		41
<u>Objects of Stone</u>										
Abraded Stone	4		2			6				12
Pecked Stone		1	2		1	1		1	3	9
Center Pkd. Stone										
Pitted Stone						1				1
Steatite Sherds			2		1	4	1			8
Drilled Pebble						1				1
Stone Drills						1				1
Grooved Stone					1			1		2
Celts					1			1		2
Pecked Ax		1								1
Ochre Fragments										
Boatstone Atlatl										
<u>Objects of Clay</u>										
Clay pipes & Frag. 1						10				11
Daub Fragments		2				1				3
Dirt Dauber Nest						2				2
<u>Objects of Bone</u>										
Bone Awls		1			5		3	1		10
Worked Antler Tip										
Bone Needle										
Deer Toe p. p.					1					1
Bone Beamer										

* One was found in the yellow sand in the side of the pit.

Table X

ARTIFACTS FROM FEATURES AT THE GASTON SITE HAVING

A HIGH PERCENTAGE OF CLEMENT SERIES POTTERY

FEATURE NUMBER	196	121	66	38	67	64	61	59	55	57	63	18	Total
<u>Projectile Pts.</u>													
<u>Clarksville</u>													
Roanoke	4		3	2	1	1	1						12
Large Triangle	1		1	1							2		5
Crude Triangle													
Thelma													
Small Savannah													
Large Savannah													
Halifax			1										1
Guilford													
Morrow Mountain													
Small Oval Blade													
Large Oval Blade													
Other													
Total	5	1	4	3	1	1	1				2		18
<u>Objects of Stone</u>													
Abraded Stone				2			1	1				2	6
Pecked Stone	1			5									6
Center Pkd. Stone				2									2
Pitted Stone				1									1
Steatite Sherds													
Drilled Pebble			1										1
Stone Drills		1		1									2
Grooved Stone													
Celts													
Pecked Ax													
Ochre Fragments													
Boatstone Atlatl	1												1
<u>Objects of Clay</u>													
Clay Pipes													
Daub Fragments		2											2
Dirt Dauber Nest													
<u>Objects of Bone</u>													
Bone Awls				6									6
Worked Antler Tip								1					1
Bone Needle													
Deer Toe P.P.				2									2
Bone Beamer				2									2

Table XI

ARTIFACTS FROM FEATURES AT THE GASTON SITE HAVING
A HIGH PERCENTAGE OF VINCENT SERIES POTTERY

FEATURE NUMBER	2	58	7	103	105	43	8	36	73	45	88	106	107	71	113	102	95	Total	
<u>Projectile Pts.</u>																			
Clarksville						1													1
Roanoke	1		1	3	3	2		1					3	1	5	1	2		23
Large Triangle	1			1									1				3		6
Crude Triangle																			
Thelma								1				1							2
Small Savannah																			
Large Savannah	1			2									1*						4
Halifax																			
Guilford				1												1	2		4
Morrow Mountain																			
Small Oval Blade					1														1
Large Oval Blade	1																		1
Other			1		1											1			3
Total	4	2	4	5	4	2	2	2	1	5	1	6	2	7	4	5	7	4	45
<u>Objects of Stone</u>																			
Abraded Stone	1			1	1			4				1	3	1	3	2			17
Pecked Stone	3	1		3							3		2		3	2			17
Center Pkd. Stone		1											1						2
Pitted Stone																			
Steatite Sherds				1								3				1			5
Drilled Pebble																			
Stone Drills	2																2		4
Grooved Stone																1			1
Celts																			
Pecked Ax																			
Ochre Fragments																			
Boatstone Atlatl					2	1	1	1											5
<u>Objects of Clay</u>																			
Clay Pipes																			
Daub Fragments					9											1			10
Dirt Dauber Nest																			
<u>Objects of Bone</u>																			
Bone Awls		1									1						1		3
Worked Antler	1																1		2
Bone Needle																			
Deer Toe P.P.																			
Bone Beamer																			

* Found in the yellow sand in the side of the pit.

Table XII

Only one such artifact was found in the Clement pits, and none in the Gaston dominated features.

Other features not included in the ceramic seriation because they contained less than fifty sherds, are shown in Table XIII. These features are also the ones having more than two projectile points, with the exception of feature 4, which was included because it contained a Boatstone Atlatl Weight. These features were found to contain Vincent-Clement type ceramics, with three having Gaston sherds present in small amounts. It is interesting to notice that two of these three also had the Clarksville type projectile point, indicating again the Clarksville-Gaston association. Since these features are predominately Vincent-Clement pits, it is not surprising that the Roanoke and Large Triangle type projectile points are again the most prevalent type. The decrease in the clay pipe fragment content of these pits is remarkable, indicating that perhaps the popularity of the clay smoking pipe was at a fairly late date in this area.

Table XIV illustrates the projectile point and blade types from the features according to the material from which they are made. White quartz appears to be the most popular material for the Clarksville and the Halifax points, while slate is the most popular material for the Roanoke points with white quartz second. The Large and Crude triangle types were mostly made of slate. Only one chert point was found.

ARTIFACTS FROM FEATURES NOT INCLUDED IN THE CERAMIC SERIATION

CHART AND CONTAINING CLEMENT-VINCENT TYPE POTTERY*

FEATURE NUMBER	4	9	14	26**	28	29	47	48	118	126	199**	200	Total
<u>Projectile Pts.</u>													
Clarksville				1		1					2		4
Roanoke	1	6	2	2	6	3	3	3		2		2	30
Large Triangle		4				2	1		2	2	1		12
Crude Triangle			1								1		2
Thelma											1		1
Small Savannah													
Large Savannah		1									1		2
Halifax													
Guilford													
Morrow Mountain									1				1
Small Oval Blade		3											3
Large Oval Blade			2										2
Other												1	1
Total	1	14	5	3	6	6	4	3	3	4	6	3	58
<u>Objects of Stone</u>													
Abraded Stone	3		2			1					1	1	8
Pecked Stone			4				1	2			2		9
Center Pkd. Stone		2						1					3
Pitted Stone	1									1			2
Steatite Sherds		1		1								1	3
Drilled Pebble													
Stone Drills	1												1
Grooved Stone													
Celts													
Pecked Ax													
Ochre Fragments													
Boatstone Atlatl	1												1
<u>Objects of Clay</u>													
Clay Pipes						1							1
Daub Fragments				1				1			1		3
Dirt Dauber Nest													
<u>Objects of Bone</u>													
Bone Awls					1	1		1			1		4
Worked Antler Tip		1				1							2
Bone Needle								1					1
Deer Toe P.P.													
Bone Beamer						1		1					2
Fish Hook		1											1

* Features included in this table have less than fifty sherds, and more than two projectile points, excepting feature 4.

** These features contained small amount of Gaston type pottery.

Table XIII

PROJECTILE POINTS FROM FEATURES AT THE GASTON
SITE ACCORDING TO THE TYPE OF STONE*

Material**	S	Q	W	C	F	Side of Pit	Total	
<u>Projectile Points</u>								
Clarksville	7	2	12	1			22	
Roanoke	52	9	31				92	
Large Triangle	21	5	7				33	
Crude Triangle	4	1	1				6	
Thelma	1		2				3	
Small Savannah R.						1 S	1	
Large Savannah R.		4	2		1	1 Q	8	
Halifax			3				3	
Guilford	1	1	2		1		5	
Morrow Mountain		1					1	
<u>Blades</u>								
Small Oval Blade	4		1				5	
Large Oval Blade			3			1 Q	4	
Other	1 chert	1	5				7	
<u>Total</u>	1	80	24	69	1	2	3	190

* This table represents the total projectile points from all features, at the Gaston Site.

** S = Slate, Q = Quartzite, W = White quartz, C = Crystal quartz, F = Felsite, Side of Pit = object in side of the pit not associated with the fill dirt in the pit.

Table XIV

This chert point is classified under "other". It is illustrated in Plate 25a.

Table XV illustrates the areal distribution of the features excavated on the Gaston Site according to the type of ceramic material in the pit. Nothing very conclusive can be stated on the basis of this analysis, but some trend appears to be evident. The location of pits containing different ceramic types on different areas of the site, may indicate a preference for this area of the site for occupation during the time that type of pottery was being made.

From Table XV it can be seen that almost 60 per cent of the Vincent type pits were located at the southern and western edges of the Gaston Site. This may indicate a preference for these areas during the earlier occupation of the site. It is notable that no features containing Clement or Gaston pottery in any large amounts were found in this particular area. Of the Clement type features 91 per cent were located at the northeastern edge of the site along the river, and the Gaston pits seem to be concentrated at the north-central and northeastern edge of the Gaston Site. It is interesting to note that 55 per cent of the Gaston type pits occur inside the area of the stockade wall at the north central part of the site. These trends may indicate settlement patterns, but they may be the result of the particular areas excavated.

AREAL DISTRIBUTION ON THE GASTON SITE OF THE SERIATED FEATURES
 ACCORDING TO THE CERAMIC TYPE PREDOMINATE IN THE FEATURE

Area	Gaston Type Features				Gaston Type Features	
	No. of features	%	No. of features	%	No. of features	%
Area D,E,F,G,H at South and Western edge of the site.	10	58.8	0		0	
Area A and A' at North-center edge of site.	1	5.9	1	8.4	5	55.5
Area B,I and C at North-eastern edge of site.	6	35.3	11	91.6	4	44.5
	17	100.0	12	100.0	9	100.0

Table XV

V. ANALYSIS OF BONE MATERIAL FROM FEATURES AT THE GASTON SITE

A detailed examination and identification of all bone material recovered during excavation of the Gaston site was undertaken by Dr. F. S. Barkalow, of the Zoology Department at North Carolina State College in Raleigh. Aided by students James R. Davis and Walter C. Biggs, Dr. Barkalow identified the mammal material according to the scientific and common names.²

A variety of animals was represented in the bone from the "garbage pits" at the Gaston site, from elk to moles. A complete report by Dr. Barkalow is presented in the Appendix. The following is a list of the animals by their common name that were represented by the bone material from the Gaston features. The numbers after the name indicate the number of times bones of this animal appeared in pits.

MAMMALS

Beaver	14	Turkey	25
Deer	57	Canadian Goose	3
Dog	20	Bird	8
Elk	5		
Fox Squirrel	2	FISH	
Gray Fox	3		
Gray Squirrel	5	Catfish	2
Mole	2	Garfish	1
Muskrat	25	Fish	22
Opossum	12		

²F. S. Barkalow, Appendix II.

Otter	11	Turtle	38
Rabbit	5		
Raccoon	23	Box Terrapin	1
Spotted Skunk	5		
Striped Skunk	2	Snails	
Woodchuck	4	Mussels	
		Marine Shell	

The most frequently appearing animal bones in the features were deer, dog, muskrat, raccoon, beaver, opossum, otter, and turkey and turtle.

The appearance of the dog in features might appear that it was a popular food item, however, half of the features containing dogs appeared to have been dog burials. These features are discussed in the section of this report describing the features from the Gaston Site.

In order to determine if there was any noticeable difference in the animals in pits at different time periods, a table (XVI) was made using the features included in the ceramic seriation of the features from the Gaston site (Figure 37). This table takes the features that are predominately of the Vincent series, Clement series, and Gaston type and compares the occurrence of the animals from the same features. If different type animals were utilized at the time of the popularity of Vincent type pottery, from that hunted at the time the Gaston pottery was popular, this should show up in the table. No apparent correlation between animal bone and ceramic type can be seen, however. A much

ANIMAL BONE FROM THE SERIATED FEATURES AT THE GASTON SITE
ACCORDING TO THE PREDOMINATE CERAMIC TYPE IN THE FEATURE

Fea. No.	Deer	Beaver	Woodchuck	Grey Squirrel	Rabbit	Muskrat	Raccoon	Opossum	Spotted Skunk	Elk	Fox Squirrel	Dog	Box Terrapin	Turtle	Goose	Turkey	Mole	Gar Fish	Fish	Bird	Cat Fish	Striped Skunk	Pottery Series Predominate in the Features	
181	x													x		x								
124				x	x																			
125																								
195	x			x	x	x							x			x					x			Gaston Series
148	x					x	x							x		x					x	x		
180	x			x	x		x	x				x		x							x	x		
184	x	x	x											x		x					x			
38	x					x								x	x						x			
67	x													x		x								
59	x											x												Clement Series
55	x											x									x			
57	x	x												x										
105	x	x				x	x	x	x	x		x				x	x				x	x		
158	x													x		x						x		
43	x	x				x	x	x	x					x		x					x	x		
8						x					x										x	x	x	
2	x	x	x				x	x						x		x					x			Vincent Series
36																x								
45	x															x					x	x		
102	x						x				x		x								x			
95	x						x						x		x						x	x		

Table XVI

higher percentage of the Vincent type features did not contain any bone than was the case with the Gaston type features.

From this table it would appear that all the animal types were perhaps hunted throughout the entire span of the ceramic history of the site. If there were major differences in animal life between the ceramic periods, it is not revealed in this study.

From the wide variety of animal bone represented in pits at the Gaston Site, it would appear that hunting constituted the major means of food getting. This is supported by the lack of evidence for the use of corn. The only evidence at all being in the presence of a few corncob impressed sherds, known to occur at a very late time horizon.

VI. INTERPRETIVE SUMMARY OF PROJECTILE POINT RELATIONSHIPS IN THE CERAMIC LEVELS AT THE GASTON SITE

Projectile point and blade relationships in this survey are of considerable importance as a result of excellent stratigraphic evidence recovered from excavation of the Gaston and Thelma sites. The interpretation of these relationships can best be accomplished by a discussion of each type and its relationship to the others.

Clarksville. Seventy-five per cent of the Clarksville type points occurred in the plowed soil in the excavated squares at the Gaston site (Table XVII), with the remainder, except one, being found in the second level. One Clarksville point was found in the fourth level, but from the position of the majority, this can be discounted as an intrusion. This occurrence in the top level of the excavated squares indicates a late time period for the occupation of the site by the makers of this small point. Several other factors combine to make this conclusion final. This point was definitely made by the last Indian occupants of the basin.

The association of the Clarksville points with the Gaston Simple Stamped pottery is conclusive. This is indicated in Figure 38 which shows the Gaston type pottery as falling stratigraphically in the top level of the excavated squares. This association is further illustrated in the Tables X-XIII which show a division of the artifacts from features at the Gaston site according to ceramic types that predominate in those features. From those features in which the Gaston type pottery predominates, there are eighteen Clarksville points. From those pits in which the Vincent and Clement ceramic types predominate there are no Clarksville points. Further evidence indicating the association of the Gaston pottery with the Clarksville

PROJECTILE POINTS FROM CERAMIC LEVELS AT THE GASTON SITE*

Material**	Level	S	Q	W	C	F	Total	Type %
Clarksville	1=0-11"	4		29	1		34	75.6
	2=11-16"			10			10	22.2
	3=16-20"						0	
	4=20-24"	1					1	2.2
Total		5		39	1		45	100.0
Roanoke	1	10	3	16			29	31.2
	2	10	2	19	3	1	35	37.6
	3	10		11			21	22.6
	4	4		4			8	8.6
Total		34	5	50	3	1	93	100.0
Large Triangle	1	3	1				4	44.4
	2	1					1	11.1
	3	3					3	33.3
	4	1					1	11.1
Total		8	1				9	99.9
Crude Triangle	1	2		3			5	62.5
	2	1		1			2	25.0
	3						0	
	4	1					1	12.5
Total		4		4			8	100.0
Small Stemmed (Thelma)	1						0	
	2	1					1	25.0
	3	1		1		1	3	75.0
	4						0	
Total		2		1		1	4	100.0
Halifax***	1	1					1	6.3
	2						0	
	3						0	
	4		1				1	6.3
Total		1	1				2	12.6
Large Oval*** Blade	1					1	1	7.1
	2						0	
	3						0	
	4		1				1	7.1
Total			1			1	2	14.2
Other	4			1			1	
	Total						1	

* See Figure 39 for chart abstracted from this data
 ** S=slate Q=quartzite W=white quartz C=crystal quartz F=felsite
 *** See Table XX for Halifax and Large Oval Blade distribution in pre-ceramic levels

Table XVII

points is shown in Table XXIII giving the projectile points from excavated levels at the Thelma site. None were found in the excavated squares, and if the association with Gaston pottery is valid, then no Gaston pottery should be present. Out of 3343 sherds from levels at the Thelma site only two were of the Gaston type. The almost complete absence of Gaston sherds and Clarksville points at the Thelma site, along with the other evidence cited, indicates conclusively the association between the latest ceramic type in the area and the Clarksville type projectile point.

Roanoke. The Roanoke type points were found in all four ceramic levels at the Gaston site, but the highest percentage was found in the second level (Table XVII). If the percentages for the bottom three levels at the Gaston site are totaled, it is seen that 68 per cent of the Roanoke points are found below the plowed soil, or level one. This is an inverse ratio of the Clarksville type points. From these figures it would seem that the association of the Roanoke type points is with the Clement-Vincent pottery. The tables X-XVIII, showing the artifacts from features at the Gaston site according to the predominating ceramic types in the features, indicate that half the Roanoke type points from the features used in the ceramic seriation were associated with Vincent type pottery. The conclusion that can be drawn

from this is that the Roanoke type point had a time span of popularity as the predominating type that extended from the first occupation of the sites in the basin by pottery making people, until it was joined by the Clarksville type point at a much later time.

This complete association of the triangle type projectile points with ceramic periods is being demonstrated time and again in careful archaeological studies, and it would seem that the time had come to cease trying to correlate collections of well known pre-ceramic projectile point types with obviously later collections of sherds that happened to be associated with them on the surface. More will be said of this matter later.

Joffre Coe has found the association of Roanoke type points with ceramic types predating the Clarksville type points in his work in the Clarksville area.³

Large triangle. The Large Triangle type does not appear in large enough numbers in any stratified context to enable many conclusions as to its position in relation to the other triangle types. However, since eleven out of the fourteen such points found in features were found either with Clement or Vincent type pottery features, they would

³Coe, 1938 Survey of Clarksville Area, personal communication.

seem to have a similar time span to the Roanoke type points.

The artifact table in Table XVIII illustrates the level at which the various other artifacts in the ceramic levels were found. The distribution of these types through all levels in small amounts prevents any significant conclusions being drawn from their position. The various abraded and pitted stone types apparently had a considerable time span, being found through all ceramic levels, and also in the pre-ceramic levels.

The Table XIX lists the artifacts found in squares containing levels three and four only, levels one and two having been removed by the bulldozer. In these levels it is notable that very few Clarksville type points were found, which supports the evidence previously cited for their appearance primarily in the plowed soil. The totals for the artifacts found "after scraper" while following the road scraper and bulldozer are presented in this table also, along with the total for the "slump off the bank" at sq. 6OR5 that was sifted as the approach trench to the site was dug.

VII. THE INTERPRETIVE SUMMARY OF THE ARTIFACT RELATIONSHIPS IN THE PRE-CERAMIC LEVELS AT THE GASTON SITE

The projectile points and blades found in a stratified pre-ceramic context at the Gaston site are shown in Fig. 39,

ARTIFACTS FROM CERAMIC LEVELS AT THE GASTON SITE

<u>Objects of Stone</u>	<u>Level</u>	<u>No.</u>	<u>Objects of Clay</u>	<u>Level</u>	<u>No.</u>
Abraded Stone	1= 0-11"	4	Clay Pipes and Fragments	1	6
	2=11-16"	10		2	2
	3=16-20"	7		3	2
	4=20-24"	1		<u>10</u>	
		<u>22</u>			
Pecked Stone	1	6	Daub Fragments	2	2
	2	8		4	<u>6</u>
	3	9			8
	4	4			
		<u>27</u>	<u>Objects of Bone</u>		
Center Pecked Stone	1	2	Bone Beamer	2	1
	3	<u>1</u>			
		3			
Pitted Stone	1	2			
Steatite Sherds	1	2			
	2	3			
	3	5			
	4	8			
		<u>18</u>			
Celts and Fragments	2	1			
	3	<u>1</u>			
		2			
Boatstones and Fragments	1	1			
	2	1			
	3	1			
	4	<u>1</u>			
		4			
Drilled Stone Gorget	2	2			
	3	<u>1</u>			
		3			
Pecked Ax	3	1			
Stone Pipe Fragments	2	1			

Table XVIII

ARTIFACTS FROM SQUARES WITH LEVELS 3 AND 4 ONLY AFTER SCRAPER,
AND SLUMP OFF THE BANK AT SQ. 60R5 AT THE GASTON SITE

Material*	Levels 3&4				After Scraper Bank at 60R5								
	S	Q	W	Ct.	Total	S	Q	W	Total	S	Q	W	Total
<u>Projectile Points and Blades</u>													
Clarksville	1		2		3			8	8			2	2
Roanoke	11	3	5	1	20	6	5	22	33	3	1	4	8
Large Triangle	1	3			4	2	1	1	4				
Crude Triangle						2		4	6			1	1
Small Stemmed(Thelma)						1			1	1			1
Halifax						1			1				
Morrow Mountain	1	1			2								
Small Oval Blade	4				4								
Large Oval Blade						2	2		4				
Other			2		2	2		3	5				
Total					35				62				12
<u>Objects of Stone</u>													
Abraded Stone					8				36				2
Pecked Stone					18				30				
Center Pecked Stone									16				
Pitted Stone					2				5				
Steatite Sherds					1				8				1
Celts and Fragments					1				8				
Atlatl Fragment					1				2				
Boatstones and Fragments					2				1				1
Stone Drills									1				
Pecked Stone Balls									2				
Sinue Stone									1				
Stone Platform Pipe									1				
Total					33				109				4
<u>Objects of Clay</u>													
Clay Pipes & Fragments					6				5				
European Trade Pipe Fragment													1

* S= slate Q= quartzite W= white quartz Ct.= chert

Table XIX

in their stratigraphic relationship. The section of this report dealing with the method of excavating the pre-ceramic levels at the Gaston site contains a series of figures illustrating the relative position of the projectile points and blades found in that particular square (Figures 29-36). Table XX shows the total percentage relationship by levels.

The discussion of the relationships of the projectile points and blades found in the stratified layers at the Gaston site can best be presented by a consideration of each level containing artifacts. The level will be referred to by the name of the type of projectile point found at that level.

The black sand, humus, midden, sherd and artifact bearing accumulation, representing the occupation of the Gaston site by pottery making people, seldomly exceeded twenty-four inches in depth. Near the bottom of this level the soil color changed from black to brown, as the yellow sand base upon which this accumulation was deposited, was reached. This clean yellow sand layer was free of any pebble, chip, or anything other than sand. This sterile layer extended to a depth of thirty-seven inches from the surface. At this point a brown sand layer, averaging ten inches in width, was found. See Plate 47 for photograph of

profile of the Gaston site. This layer formed a distinct darker layer between lighter sand on either side. The depth averaged from thirty-seven to forty-seven inches from the surface. This layer contained the Savannah River type projectile points and the Large Oval Blades, and is referred to as the Savannah River Level.

The Savannah River level. In the squares excavated, the Savannah River level contained a total of twelve Savannah River type projectile points, and ten of the Large Oval Blades. One Small Savannah River point was found in the deeper Halifax level, and could be the result of pitting into the Halifax level by the Savannah River people. Two Large Oval Blades were also found in the Halifax level. This may represent the upper range of the Small Oval Blade type that is associated with the Halifax points, or it may also represent intrusion into the lower level from above. It might appear that any intrusion from the Savannah River level into the Halifax level could be detected, but this was not the case. Although the Savannah River level was slightly darker than the levels on each side, it was not sufficiently dark enough to detect any pits out of it into the deeper levels, especially when the soil was damp. A detailed description of the method of excavating these squares is presented in the section on Method of Excavating

Pre-ceramic Levels at the Gaston Site. See Table XX showing the totals for the projectile points and blades from these levels. Figure 39 shows the stratigraphic relationship and percentages of types found at various levels at the Gaston site.

Also associated with the Savannah River level were ten Abraded Stones, one Pitted Stone, one Center Pecked Stone, and two hearths. The hearths were piles of stone which had a slightly darker soil color around them, and flecks of charcoal under and around the stones. The stones were water worn and were usually broken. Plate 51a is a photograph of a Savannah River Hearth. A base of a Savannah River projectile point was found among the stones in this hearth. Charcoal samples were collected from the hearths.

The Savannah River Focus as it is manifested in North Carolina has been excellently described by Joffre Coe.⁴ He points out that it did not extend into pottery making times in North Carolina as it did at Stallings Island, and this is certainly true for the Savannah River Focus as it was found in this excavation.

⁴Joffre L. Coe, "The Cultural Sequence of the Carolina Piedmont", Archaeology of the Eastern United States, James B. Griffin (ed.), (Chicago, 1952), p. 305.

PROJECTILE POINTS FROM PRE-CERAMIC LEVELS AT THE GASTON SITE*

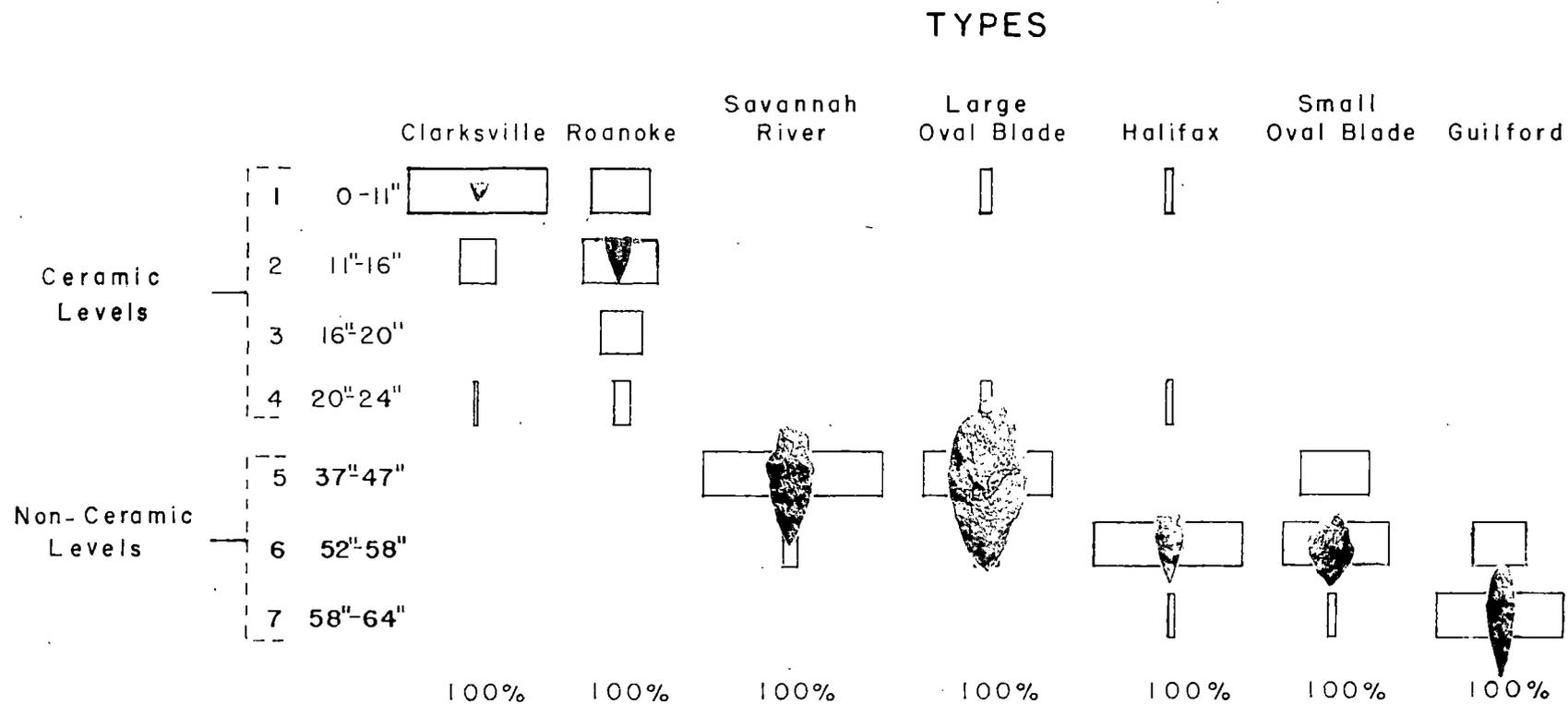
Material***	Level	S	Q	W	C	F	Total	Type %
Small Savannah River	5=37-47"	1	2				3	75.0
	6=52-58"			1			1	25.0
	7=58-64"						0	
Total		1	2	1			4	100.0
Large Savannah River	5	1	4	1	1	2	9	100.0
	6						0	
	7						0	
Total		1	4	1	1	2	9	100.0
Halifax***	5						0	
	6	1		12			13	81.3
	7				1		1	6.3
Total		1		12	1		14	87.6
Guilford	5						0	
	6	1	1	1		1	4	30.8
	7	7	2				9	69.2
Total		8	3	1		1	13	100.0
Large Oval*** Blade	5		8	2			10	71.4
	6			2			2	14.3
	7						0	
Total			8	4			12	85.7
Small Oval Blade	5	1	1	3			5	35.7
	6	4		3		1	8	57.1
	7	1					1	7.1
Total		6	1	6		1	14	99.9

* See Fig. 39 for graph abstracted from this data.

** S= slate Q= quartzite W= white quartz C= crystal quartz
F= felsite

*** See Table XVII for Halifax and Large Oval Blade distribution in ceramic levels.

Table XX



Scale for frequency ████████ = 25%

Scale for size ██████████ = 5 cm.

Percentage Occurrence of Projectile Point
and Blade Types from Squares

Figure 39

Hx v7

The angle formed at the junction of the stem with the blade on the points in this study was not the typical right angle described by Coe, but the basic typological form of the points is the same. The Savannah River type points found in the stratigraphic context in this survey are without a doubt the manifestation of the Savannah River Focus in the Northeast North Carolina and Southeast Virginia area.

The Savannah River Focus, especially in its pre-ceramic context as found in this excavation, is a manifestation of the Archaic period. Griffin in 1952 says that the remains from the Archaic period in New York and Kentucky give consistent Radiocarbon dates ranging from four thousand to five thousand years ago.⁵ When the charcoal from the two hearths from the Savannah River level at the Gaston site is dated, it is thought the date should fall somewhere within this range, but perhaps closer to four thousand years ago.⁶

For an average of five inches below the Savannah River level there was a layer of white sand in which some

⁵James B. Griffin, "Radiocarbon Dates for the Eastern United States," Archaeology of the Eastern United States, (Chicago, 1952), p. 368.

⁶Since the above estimate of the age of the Savannah River level was made, the dates have been found to be thirty-nine hundred years ago, plus or minus two hundred and fifty. A complete report of radiocarbon dates are presented in a later section.

chips were encountered, but no points were usually found until the fifty-three inch level. No visible soil change could be observed to indicate an occupation level, but the white quartz chip concentration increased, and in some squares several white quartz, side notched, ground base and notch, projectile points were found. These were usually at the same level with, and closely associated with, hearths. These projectile points have been named the Halifax type. Plate 49a and b shows a square excavated down to the Halifax level with a hearth, and two Halifax points in situ. The excavation of this square was begun after the bulldozers had removed the eighteen to twenty-four inches of pottery midden from the area where the square was excavated.

Most of the Halifax type points were found between the fifty-two and fifty-eight inch levels. This level is referred to as the Halifax level.

The Halifax level. The distribution of the Halifax points by levels is shown in Figure 39. There was a total of fourteen Halifax points found during the excavation of the pre-ceramic levels. Thirteen of these were found between fifty-two and fifty-eight inches deep. The other one was found at the sixty-three inch level associated with the Guilford type points. This association may be an intrusion from the Halifax level into the Guilford level. A discussion

of the Guilford-Halifax relationship is presented following the description of the Guilford level and point distribution.

Associated with the Halifax points at the same level were five stone hearths. These were piles of stones containing charcoal around and under them. The stones were usually broken water polished stones, and in one instance two mortar fragments were found with other stones in a hearth. One Pecked Stone, and one Pitted Stone with several pits, and one Center-Pecked Stone, were found at the Halifax level, all in hearths. Also found were seven abraded stones. Three Chipped, Notched Axes were also found at the Halifax level. Fifty-seven per cent of the Small Oval Blades were found at the Halifax level, and most of the others in the Savannah River level. Table XXI shows the tabulation of artifacts by levels, and Figure 39 shows the relationship of the Halifax point type.

Before the interpretation of the position of the Halifax point can be adequately made, the stratigraphic position of the Guilford type points should be described.

Below the Halifax level, beginning at the fifty-eight inch level and extending down to the sixty-four inch level, usually, there were found in several squares the long, thick, stemless projectile points known as the Guilford type. No soil change could be used to locate this level, it appearing much the same as the Halifax level, with white sand through

ARTIFACTS FROM PRE-CERAMIC LEVELS AT THE GASTON SITE

<u>Objects of Stone</u>	<u>Level</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
Abraded Stone	5=37-47"	10
	6=52-58"	7
	7=58-64"	3
		<u>20</u>
Pecked Stone	6	1
	7	6
		<u>7</u>
Pitted Stone	5	2
	7	1
		<u>3</u>
Pitted Stone (several pits)	6	1
Mortar	6	2
Stone Drill	7	1
Center-Pecked Stone	5	2
	6	1
		<u>3</u>
Chipped, Notched Ax	6	3
	7	2
		<u>5</u>
Worked Red Ochre	7	1
Hearths of Stones	5	2
	6	5
	7	1
		<u>8</u>

Table XXI

which horizontal rippled layers of clay were distributed. These ripples were evidently formed after the river deposited the sand on the site, and the percolating water carried small grains of clay down between the larger grains of sand, eventually re-depositing it as horizontal layers of clay through the sand. These ripples can be seen in several of the plates showing the Halifax hearths, and the profile of the site.

The Guilford level. Of the thirteen Guilford type points found in the pre-ceramic levels, nine of them were found at the depth of fifty-eight to sixty-four inches. The other four were found at the Halifax level of from fifty-two to fifty-eight inches. At the same level was also found a Chipped Stone Drill, three Abraded Stones, six Pecked Stones, one Pitted Stone, and two Chipped, Notched Axes. A small hearth was found containing a small quantity of charred nuts and wood. This charcoal is not thought to be a large enough amount for Radiocarbon dating. Plate 51b shows this hearth in the profile of a square at a depth of sixty-eight inches.

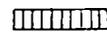
In order to better understand the relationship between the Halifax and the Guilford type points, it is necessary to look at Figure 40 and refer to it as necessary as the following explanation is made.

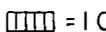
COMPARISON OF BLADE
AND PROJECTILE POINT
TYPE AND MATERIAL WITH
CHIP CONCENTRATION IN
FOUR TEN-FOOT SQUARES

Hx v7

Key For Point Types

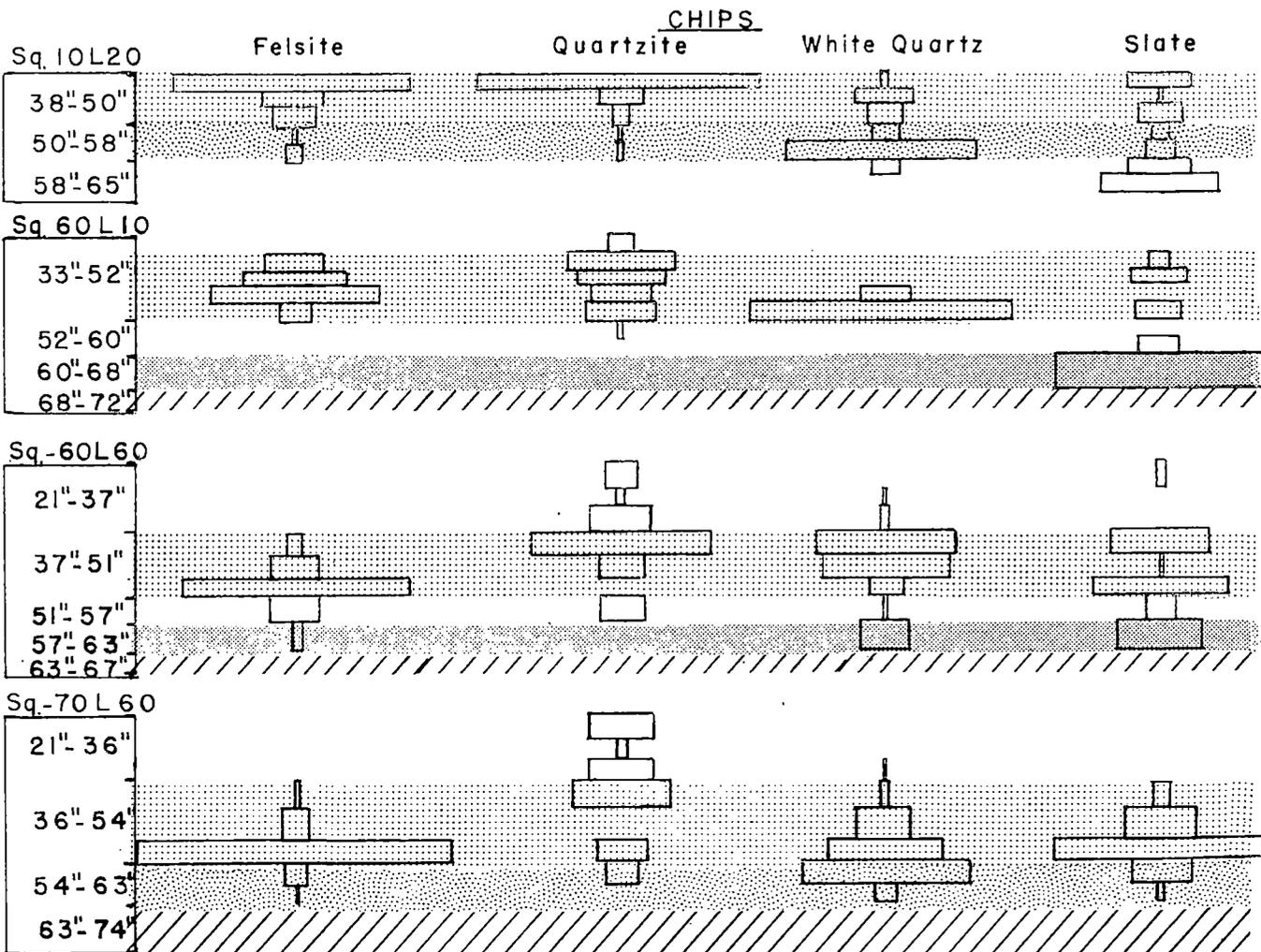
-  = Savannah River and Large Oval Blade
-  = Halifax and Small Oval Blade
-  = Guilford
-  = Chips Only
-  = Sterile

Bar Scale:  = 25%

Vertical Scale:  = 10"

PROJECTILE POINTS

- Savannah River
- Large Oval Blade
- Halifax
- Small Oval Blade
- Guilford



Clear Quartz

	Sq. 10L20	Sq. 60L10	Sq. 60L60	Sq. 70L60
Savannah River	7.7 %	15.4 %	46.1 %	15.4 %
Large Oval Blade			66.6	33.3
Halifax	7.1	7.1	7.1	85.8
Small Oval Blade		7.7	23.1	42.9
Guilford				7.7
				61.5

Figure 40

In the pre-ceramic levels everything that stayed in the screen was saved. The chips were later counted and typed by Lewis Binford according to material. It was thought at the time of excavation that some comparison between the material used in the manufacture of projectile points, and the chips found during excavation, could be made. This comparative chart is shown in Figure 40. As can be seen, there is a correlation between the type of material used for projectile points at a certain level, and the percentage of chips of that type material. The Savannah River type material used most for points (46.1 per cent quartzite), also constituted a high percentage of the chip material (shown by the bars) found in the Savannah River level. The use of quartzite for the Large Oval Blades also correlates with the level where high percentage of quartzite chips were found. The material used for the Halifax and Small Oval Blade types was predominately white quartz. In the sq. 10L20 and sq. -70L60 where Halifax type points were found, there is also a high percentage of white quartz chips, at the Halifax level. The Guilford points were primarily of slate (61.5 per cent) and in the squares where Guilford points were found, there was also a high concentration of slate chips at the Guilford level, particularly sq. 60L10. Notice that sq. 10L20 has a high concentration of slate chips at the level below the Halifax level, but unfortunately

no Guilford points were found there, as indicated by the lack of the Guilford shading on the graph. This indicates that chipping of Guilford points had been going on at this level, and at this particular spot, but none were left there to be found by the archaeologist. This is a significant factor in the interpretation of the relationship between the Halifax and the Guilford type points. The reason for this significance is seen when an examination of the individual square profiles, Figures 29-36 and the chart in Figure 40, is studied. It will be noticed from these figures that in no square was the Halifax level containing Halifax points directly above the Guilford level containing Guilford points. There was the Savannah River level stratigraphically above the Halifax level, and there was the Savannah River level stratigraphically above the Guilford level, but in no instance were the three levels stratigraphically one above the other with each containing points. Therefore, if, as is seen in the chip analysis chart in Figure 40, a high concentration of slate chips correlates with Guilford points as in sq. 60L10 and to some extent in sq. -60L60, and a high percentage of slate chips was found in sq. 10L20 at the Guilford level, though no points were found, it can be safely concluded that the Halifax level is stratigraphically above the Guilford level. This is further supported by the strong evidence of superposition of the Halifax type points

over the Guilford points. A look at the individual square profiles in Figures 29-36 will immediately show that the Halifax points in almost every case fall higher in the ground than the Guilford points. In only one instance was a Halifax point found associated with Guilford points at a depth of sixty-three inches. In all other cases they occur higher than the Guilford points. The presence of the four Guilford points at the Halifax level, then, can be attributed to pitting into the Guilford level by the later Halifax people.

It can be noticed from the chip analysis chart (Figure 40), that in sq. 60L10 and sq. -60L60, the level that is the Halifax level as far as the depth is concerned, though no Halifax points were found there, is also low in the percentage of white quartz chips of which the Halifax points and Small Oval Blades are made. In the case of the slate chips and Guilford point relationship in sq. 10L20, the presence of chips implied the presence of the points. In this case with the Halifax levels in sq. 60L10 and -60L60, the absence of chips implies the absence of Halifax points, which was actually the case. This situation, along with the slate chip and Guilford point situation in sq. 10L20, with the fact that in no square were Halifax points found directly above Guilford points, indicates that there was not a mantle of chips scattered evenly over the site at the Guilford

period or at the Halifax period. Rather, it indicates that there were comparatively small camp sites concentrated near hearths, around which the Guilford people sat and chipped points of slate, and at a later time the Halifax people had different hearths at a higher level around which they sat and chipped Halifax points of white quartz. In excavating the squares, it happened a spot was not dug where the Guilford and Halifax hearths were directly over one another, but in sq. 10L20 such a situation was apparently close, whereas, in sq. 60L10 and -60L60 the digging did come down on top of a Guilford chipping area.

When the archaeologist is excavating pre-ceramic sites where his artifact yield may be very low compared to the amount of digging he does, he should save every chip from the screen, and in so doing increase the amount of information he would otherwise get from the site.

The Guilford Focus was described by Coe in 1952 on the basis of a series of surface collections and the finding of Guilford materials in a stratified context.⁷ The excavation at Roanoke Rapids also found the Guilford materials overlaid by the Savannah River type materials, with the addition of the Halifax material lying between the Guilford and Savannah River levels.

⁷Coe, op. cit., p. 304.

When Coe wrote his Guilford description, he compared it typologically with the Yuma points from the Southwest, and classified it in the Paleo-Indian complex.⁸ No charcoal was recovered by Coe from the Guilford level, and at Roanoke Rapids only a small amount was recovered, not enough for a Radiocarbon date. However, the discovery of hearths at the Halifax level enabled the collection of sufficient charcoal from this level to give a date for this material. The charcoal has been sent to the University of Michigan for Radiocarbon dating.⁹

Since 1952, when the Guilford Focus was first described, Coe has found a variety of projectile point types in a stratified context underlying the Guilford Focus. This series of projectile point types extends back to a fluted type, which is the oldest so far discovered in the Carolina Piedmont.¹⁰

Taking four thousand years as the tentative date for the Savannah River Focus in North Carolina, it is thought that the Halifax charcoal should give a date between four and five thousand years ago, and the Guilford Focus between five

⁸Ibid.

⁹The radiocarbon dates have since been run, and are included in the next section of this report. The dates for the Halifax level were found to be 4280 and 5440 years ago, plus or minus 350.

¹⁰Coe, personal communication.

and six thousand years ago.

The pre-ceramic projectile point relationships as found in the Roanoke Rapids excavations, and described here, are not the first time such relationships have been found and described. With the exception of the Halifax type points, the others were described by Coe in 1952, and their pre-ceramic context was definitely established by then.¹¹ The Roanoke Rapids excavation verifies the pre-ceramic context of the Savannah River and Guilford type points. Therefore, when the Guilford, Halifax and Savannah River points are occasionally found in a ceramic pit, or in a level associated with pottery, the association can immediately be assumed to be a false one culturally, being based on later occupation of a pre-ceramic site by pottery making people. Therefore, when archaeologists as late as 1955 attempt to correlate known pre-ceramic type points with ceramic sequences, they are overlooking considerable data indicating that such a correlation did not exist culturally.

An example of this type approach is the study by Holland, of projectile point and blade types in Virginia.¹²

¹¹Joffre Coe, *Ibid.*, pp. 304-306.

¹²C.G. Holland, "An Analysis of Projectile Points and Large Blades," Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 160 (Washington, D. C., 1955).

VIII. A STATEMENT REGARDING THE RADIOACTIVE
CARBON (C^{14}) METHOD OF DATING CHARCOAL

The radiocarbon method of dating culturally associated charcoal, wood, and bone samples is widely accepted as a valid method of dating. A short summary of the theory involved is presented here for those who may be interested.

The development of this technique dates to 1931, when, at the University of Chicago, an unknown radioactivity was detected . . . this was identified as that of carbon 14 whose source lay in the high atmosphere, where cosmic radiation produces neutrons which are converted to radiocarbon by reaction with nitrogen according to the formula: neutron + N^{14} = proton + C^{14} . These carbon atoms unite with oxygen in the atmosphere to form carbon dioxide in the same manner as does ordinary carbon (C^{12}), and as such are circulated through the biosphere

The C-14 atoms have a half-life of $5,568 \pm 30$ years. In the life-process of oxygen exchange in plants and animals, the amount of radiocarbon uptake is sufficient to effect a level of equilibrium with that in the atmosphere. Thus organisms during life possess a specific activity of 15.6 disintegrations per minute per gram of carbon in their bodies. After life and C-14 intake cease and the equilibrium is halted, radioactive disintegration of the C-14 occurs, and after 5,568 years this activity will have decreased to 7.8 disintegrations per minute per gram of carbon.¹³

By computing the amount of radiation remaining in a sample of charcoal, the date can be computed, and is given with a plus or minus error of two to three hundred years

¹³Robert F. Heizer, "Long-Range Dating in Archaeology," Anthropology Today, A. L. Kroeber (ed.), The University of Chicago Press (Chicago, Illinois, 1955), p. 14.

in most cases.

IX. RADIOCARBON DATES FOR CERAMIC ASSOCIATED CHARCOAL
FROM FEATURES AT THE GASTON SITE

Soon after the cataloging of the excavated material from the basin was complete, charcoal from several features was selected to be sent to James B. Griffin at the Museum of Anthropology at the University of Michigan for radiocarbon dating. Since the ceramic types had not been established at that time, the samples were selected on the basis of association with certain ceramic types that gave indications of having future significance. For this reason, there was no selection of features to be dated in terms of Vincent, Clement, and Gaston types which were later proven to be popular styles at different periods of time. The selection of features to be dated was based on the appearance of the majority of the ceramic material in the feature. The sherds with simple-stamped surface finish, and folded rims, and incising on some of the body sherds looked "late". For this reason, feature 148 was selected for dating, since this feature had produced over a thousand sherds, many clay pipe fragments, and Clarksville type projectile points known to appear at the historic time period at Clarksville, Virginia, and Hillsboro, North Carolina.

Two other pits were sent, from one of which over

50 per cent of the sherds were a fine knotted-net impressed type, later described as Type Net II. Both pits were sent with the notation that the charcoal could be combined, since a net sherd from one pit fitted a sherd from the other pit. These pits were feature 117 and 119. It was thought that this charcoal should give a date for the net type pottery.

A third group of features were sent because the pottery appeared "early", i.e. it was impressed with large, coarse basket type fabric, and cord impressions on a paste that was hard and tempered with occasional large particles of crushed quartz. The rims were straight, and not decorated. This "early" appearing pottery was eventually called Vincent. The features of this type sent for dating were twenty, fifty-five, 102, and 105. It was thought that the charcoal from these features could be combined and would give a date for the early period of occupation in the basin. The dating of these features will be discussed in the order presented above, from most recent to the oldest.

The preceding sections of this thesis were written before the carbon 14 dates were known, and the estimates herein as to the dates for the various ceramic and pre-ceramic culture complexes, were made public in a display of the culture sequences at Roanoke Rapids at the State Museum

in Raleigh over a year before the radiocarbon dates were known. These estimates, and the actual radiocarbon dates are presented in Table XXII for comparison.

The position of feature 148 containing Gaston type pottery on the seriation chart in Figure 37 is well up near the top at the late period. The estimate for the Gaston occupation of the site was A. D. 1500-1700 which would be between two hundred and fifty and four hundred and fifty years ago, plus or minus two hundred. This actual date of 215 years would appear to be slightly more recent than the evidence indicates that the site was occupied.

No actual date had been suggested for the net impressed pottery in the basin, but it was known that net impressed ceramics on the Dan River dated between 1625 and 1675.¹⁴ It was thought that the net impressed pottery at Roanoke Rapids would be older than the net on the Dan River, since it was thought that the Gaston type pottery was the popular type at Roanoke Rapids during the seventeenth century, and the features 117 and 119 contained a high percentage of net, but no Gaston Simple Stamped sherds. Therefore, the net impressed pottery was thought to date sometime in the sixteenth century. The radiocarbon date for the combined charcoal from features 117 and 119,

¹⁴Coe and Lewis, op. cit.

and dating the net impressed type sherds, was 370 years ago, plus or minus two hundred. This would place the popularity of the net type ceramics in the latter part of the sixteenth century.

Other than giving a date for the Net II type pottery, this date is also significant in dating three other ceramic types described in this report. The total sherd count for both features was combined, and the percentages were as follows: Net II, 28.3 per cent; Type I, 24.5 per cent; the Clement Series, 35 per cent; Type II Cord-marked, 3.5 per cent; and the Vincent Series, 8.7 per cent. The total count for the combined features is fifty-seven.

The important types dated along with the Net II, are the Clement Series, and the Type I and Type II ceramic material. On the seriation chart in Figure 37, this combined percentage bar would fit slightly below the bulge for the Gaston type, fitting very well with the evidence previously cited for the association of Clement, Net II, and Type II ceramics as indicated by the seriation chart.

Since the major occupation of the basin appeared to have been during the time the "early" appearing pottery was being made, a long time span for this occupation was estimated. It was thought that the earliest ceramic period occupation of the basin probably occurred between A. D. 500 and A. D. 1500, when the style changes began to

bring the Gaston type ceramics into popularity. The radiocarbon date for the combined charcoal from features 20, 55, 102, and 105 was one thousand and forty years ago, plus or minus two hundred. By examining the seriation chart in Figure 37, it can be seen that features 102 and 105 contain a high percentage of Vincent type pottery, while feature fifty-five is the feature containing the highest percentage of Clement Cord-marked pottery. Feature twenty is not shown on the seriation chart, due to intrusion of other features on it (Figure 20). However, it contained a total of 482 sherds, 85 per cent being of the Clement Series.

It is evident, then, that the date of 1040 is a combined date for both the Clement and Vincent ceramic types. If only Vincent type features had been included, the date would probably have been nearer the previous estimate of fifteen hundred years ago, and if a separate date for the Clement type feature was taken, it would probably be nearer the five hundred year date. As it is, with the two combined, a date midway between these two estimated extremes was obtained.

From this, it can be seen that the chronological estimates previously made on the basis of comparative ceramic typology, were completely verified by the radiocarbon dates.

TABLE OF RADIOCARBON DATES FROM THE GASTON SITE

Michigan Catalog Number	N.C. Lab. Catalog Number	Square Number	Fea. No.	Depth of Sample	Material Dated	Previous Estimate, Years ago*	Carbon 14 Dates
M527	619eb1280	35R235	148	-	Gaston Clarksville	250-450	215 ± 200
M525	619eb1176 619eb1182	-90L50 -80L50	117 119	-	Clement Net II Type I Type II	300-400	370 ± 200
M526	619eb778 619eb927 619eb1104 619eb1126	35R125 35R185 -70L140 0L150	20 55 102 105	-	Vincent- Clement. Roanoke	450-1450	1040± 200
M524	619eb180 619eb181 619eb183	60L10 60L10 -60L60	191 192A hearth	42-47" 41-49" 38-43"	Savannah River	3-4,000	3900± 250
M522	619eb178 619eb179	55L25 55L25	hearth #1 hearth #2	63-68" 70-76"	Halifax ?	4-5,000	4280± 350
M523	619eb175 619eb176 619eb177 619eb184	10L20 10L20 10L20 -70L60	hearth #1 hearth #2 hearth #3 hearth	58-62" 58-62" 58-62" 54-58"	Halifax	4-5,000	5440± 350

*Estimates made in January, 1956, for a museum display at the State Museum in Raleigh, North Carolina. The radiocarbon dates were received from the Michigan Laboratory in July, 1957.

Table XXII

X. RADIOCARBON DATES FOR THE CHARCOAL FROM HEARTH
AT THE PRE-CERAMIC LEVELS AT THE GASTON SITE

On page 367 of this thesis, written over a year before the radiocarbon dates were known, this statement was made in regard to Griffin's statement referring to Archaic dates ranging from four thousand to five thousand years ago: "When the charcoal from the two hearths from the Savannah River level at the Gaston Site is dated, it is thought that the date should fall somewhere within this range, but perhaps closer to four thousand years ago."

Charcoal from the hearth, feature 191, at the Savannah River level in square 60L10 (Figure 36), was combined with charcoal from the pit, feature 192-A in the same square. Also added to this charcoal was the charcoal from the Savannah River level hearth in square -60L60, shown in Plate 51a, and Figure 32. In this hearth, the base of a Savannah River type projectile point was found, and in feature 192-A a Savannah River point base was also found. The charcoal from these hearths was kept separate until combined by the Michigan laboratory.

The date from the charcoal from these combined features was thirty nine hundred years ago, plus or minus 250, which fits very well with the estimated date.

Two dates were obtained for the Halifax level. One

of these dates was taken from the combined charcoal from hearths one and two in sq. 55L25 (Figure 30). On the page preceding this figure, the statement was made that it was thought that hearth number two should give a date for the Halifax material. Hearth number one was looked upon with some doubt because of its close association with the discolored Savannah River level, and might possibly represent a hearth of the Savannah River period, since the Halifax point and ax found at the same level were found further into the site than were the hearths, and not actually closely associated with it. It was assumed, however, that both hearths represented Halifax associated fires.

The combined date for these two hearths is 4280 years ago, plus or minus 350. The estimation for the Halifax culture of four to five thousand years ago fits very well with the radiocarbon date of 4280.

The second Halifax date was taken from charcoal from hearths one, two, and three at the 58-63 inch level of square 10L20, (Figure 35, Plate 50). In this square there was no doubt about the association of the Halifax projectile points with the hearths. Also combined with this charcoal was the charcoal from the hearth in square -70L60, Figure 33, Plate 49. The association of this hearth with Halifax projectile points was undeniable, since two Halifax points were lying beside the hearth (Plate 49b).

The radiocarbon date for these combined Halifax level hearths is 5440 years ago, plus or minus 350. The previous estimate of from four to five thousand years was somewhat conservative, but not very far from the carbon 14 date.

No enough charcoal could be collected from the only Guilford hearth found (Plate 51b), but the Halifax date of 5440 would place the Guilford estimates of five to six thousand years, in the correct relationship to the Halifax, since the Guildord Focus underlies the Halifax occupation layer.

XI. AN INTERPRETIVE SUMMARY OF THE ARCHAEOLOGICAL COMPLEXES AT THE GASTON SITE

The earliest evidence for the occupation of the Gaston Site by an Indian group is in the form of a few Morrow Mountain type Projectile points. These were not found in a stratigraphic context, so not much is known of how long the site was occupied by the people making this type point. This type is known, however, to occur at a very early level on other sites in North Carolina, predating the Guilford type material. From this typological information, the Morrow Mountain point is thought to be the oldest cultural material found on the Gaston Site.

Sometime after the occupation of the site by the

makers of the Morrow Mountain point, it was occupied by the carriers of the Guilford culture. The Guilford Complex at the Gaston Site is found at a depth of almost five feet from the surface of the ground, and is manifested in the presence of the typical long, fat, stemless projectile point, along with a chipped-notched ax. These projectile points were found associated with hearths, and a large number of flakes of the slate material used to make the Guilford points. Stone drills, and abraded stones are also characteristic of the Guilford Complex at the Gaston Site. Charcoal from a Guilford hearth was not sufficient to enable a radiocarbon date to be determined, but the Halifax Complex located stratigraphically above the Guilford material gave a date of 5440 years ago, indicating that the Guilford Complex at the site would probably date from five to six thousand years ago.

The Halifax complex, located several inches above the Guilford Complex, is characterized by white side-notched ^{projectile points.} Axes typical of the Guilford complex were also found associated with the Halifax projectile points. Hearths at the Halifax level of fifty-two to fifty-eight inches were composed of fire cracked stones, among which flecks of charcoal were seen, and collected for radiocarbon analysis. A small oval blade appeared to be associated with the Halifax points, and may represent the blanks from

which the points were made. The charcoal from the hearths at this Halifax level was analyzed, and two dates for the complex are known. One date is 4280, and the other 5440, placing the Halifax complex between four thousand and five thousand five hundred years ago.

Above the Halifax complex, stratigraphically separated from it by several inches of sterile sand, was found the Savannah River Complex as it is manifested in North Carolina. This complex is represented by stemmed projectile points varying from medium to large in size. These points usually have a stem blending in with the shoulder of the blade, giving the stem a blended look with the blade.

Hearths were also found at the Savannah River level of from thirty-six to forty-eight inches, and charcoal was collected from these hearths. A large oval blade type was typical of the Savannah River Complex at the Gaston Site, and may represent blanks for the projectile points, or knives. Basically this Savannah River complex contained the same series of material as the preceding complexes, with the exception of the chipped-notched axes. No axes of any kind were found at the Savannah River level, and no sherds of steatite, which may have been expected. A few pits were found small enough to have been postmolds, but they may have been small pits. Charcoal from these

pits, and from the hearths of fire-cracked stones, and a radiocarbon date of thirty-nine hundred was obtained for the Savannah River Complex at the Gaston Site.

Above the Savannah River level, separated from it stratigraphically by eighteen inches of sand free of cultural material, was the two foot mantle of midden accumulation of the ceramic period occupation of the site. Several ceramic types were defined and analyzed. Toward the bottom of the midden accumulation, and representing the earliest ceramic type to be made at the Gaston Site was the sand and quartz tempered, straight rim, pointed base, heavy fabric and cord-marked Vincent series pottery. This pottery series seriates at the bottom of the ceramic seriation, and is closely related to a type that succeeded it, the Clement Series pottery. Associated with this Vincent type ceramic material is a triangle type projectile point called the Roanoke projectile point. This medium sized triangle was used by the first ceramic making people to enter the basin, and represents the first introduction of the bow and arrow at the Gaston site. This type was also used by the later people who made the Clement pottery. Associated with the Vincent pottery was the boatstone atlatl weight. This weapon was evidently used to some extent by the earliest ceramic making people to enter the basin, but later gave it up in preference to the bow and arrow. It

may have been ceremonial in nature when it was used at the Gaston site. Abrading stones were characteristic of this complex as well as the earlier pre-ceramic complexes found on the site.

The hard, compact, crushed quartz and sand tempered pottery of the Vincent Complex was eventually replaced by the more popular Clement type pottery. This pottery had a finer temper, and the paste was more porous and broke easier. The bottoms of the vessels were rounded instead of pointed, and the rim began to flare slightly. The boatstone atlatl weight was given up by this time, and the main weapon was the bow and arrow, using medium sized triangular points of the Roanoke type. This Clement type pottery represents a later style preferred by the descendants of the earlier makers of Vincent ceramics.

One difference, apparently, between the Clement and Vincent occupations of the site is that all the burials found on the Gaston site appear to be either Clement or Gaston pottery associated burials. No Vincent burials were found on the Gaston Site. This would indicate a difference in burial patterns between the two time periods. The Clement burials were in round pits in a flexed position with no grave goods. Dogs were also buried, and in one instance a dog was buried over a fetus of a human. Charcoal from features containing Vincent and Clement type

ceramics was combined, and gave a date of 1040 years ago. A later date of 370 years ago was obtained from two pits containing Net Impressed, Type I, Type II, and Clement Series pottery, and a minor amount of Vincent type. This would indicate that these types were related at this 370 year time period. Since these features contained no Gaston Simple-stamped type pottery, it is thought that they are slightly earlier, however, the absence of Gaston sherds does not necessarily mean that the type could not have been made in small amounts at that time.

Associated in features with Vincent-Clement pottery was a large number of animal bones of various kinds. This high percentage of animal refuse in pits indicates that these Vincent-Clement people were primarily hunters, and the fact that no evidence for agriculture was found, further strengthens this conclusion. Bone awls and beamers indicate the working of skins for clothing.

The Vincent-Clement cultural tradition developed into what is referred to in this report as the Gaston period of occupation of the Gaston Site. This complex is characterized by an increase in simple stamped ceramics, with flaring rims, folded rims, incised necks, and incised stick-figure animals for decoration on the body of vessels. This elaboration of pottery styles appears to be reflected in other aspects of the complex. There is an increase in

bone awls, clay smoking pipes, and the presence of corncob impressed pottery indicates that they were depending somewhat on agriculture for their diet, however, they still threw many animal bones of various kinds in their garbage pits. Their Roanoke type projectile point for arrow heads developed into a very small equilateral triangle point, about half as large as the Roanoke point. This idea came from the same source as the elaboration of pottery ideas, since there is an almost perfect correlation between the Gaston pottery and the Clarksville point.

Abrading stones were still used at this time, and this tool represents one of the tools with the longest tradition without visible change of any type artifact studied in the basin.

Burials were still in an oval or round pit, and occasionally a polished stone pipe would be buried with the deceased, or some other prized possession. Dogs were buried, as they had been during the Clement period of occupation of the site.

Along with these new ideas influencing the people at the Gaston Site at this time, there came a fear of their enemies that they had not known before to such a degree. They built a stockade wall to protect their village, a thing they had not done before.

During the latest period of occupation of the

Gaston Site by the carriers of the Gaston culture, some contact with traders of European trade goods was had. The presence of one trade pipe stem on the site, along with rouletted pipe stem fragments that appear to be watch stem roulette, indicates a probable contact with the early colonists.

The influences on the pottery styles at the Gaston Site that were felt at this time, and the change from the Roanoke to the Clarksville type projectile point, indicate a considerable influence from the Piedmont Siouan Indian groups further west along the Roanoke. Whether or not this represents an actual migration to the Gaston site, is not known, but it is felt that the ideas diffused, and this diffusion of ideas had been going on for some time, since there is evidence in the form of the Type II pottery which is earlier than the Gaston type, and associated with the Roanoke type pottery from the Clarksville, Virginia, area, being associated with the Net II type in the dated pit at a period four hundred years ago.

The charcoal from a typical Gaston Complex feature has given the date of 215 years ago for the Gaston ceramics. This date is slightly more recent than the Gaston Site was occupied, due to the lack of trade goods on the site, but it is in the correct relative position in regard to the other ceramic types.

CHAPTER VII

THE EXCAVATION OF THE THELMA SITE

I. DESCRIPTION OF THE THELMA SITE

A very similar situation to that at the Gaston Site exists at site Hx v8, the Thelma Site. This site is two miles upstream from Hx v7 between an old railroad fill and a ridge of rock above the site. The ridge here does not seem to have afforded the complete protection for the site that was the case at Hx v7. The width of the site here was only about seventy-five feet between the edge of the bank and the swamp near the foot of the rim of the basin. The site extended downstream for about a hundred yards, however. The lack of protection here is evidenced by the fact that the site itself is located on a secondary levee, or higher bank above the present river bank and levee, and about one hundred feet from it. No cultural material was found on this lower levee.

A large number of sherds were found on the surface here and a large amount of shell midden was scattered throughout the site, where bulldozers had cleared underbrush. The soil is river deposited sand which is black from occupation and humus. The exposure of a human humerus, plus the amount of midden and potsherds were factors

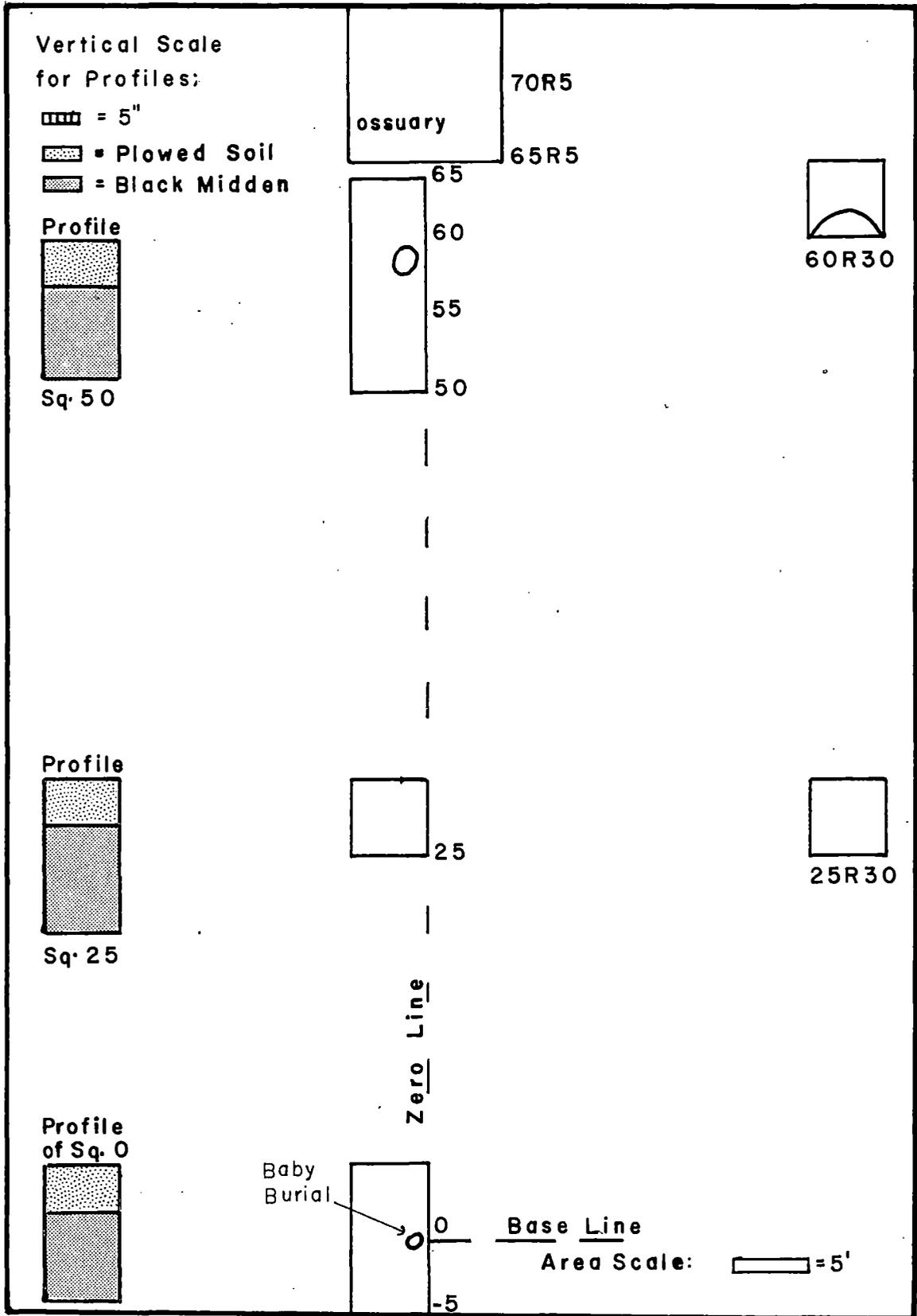
resulting in this site being selected for excavation.

II. THE METHOD OF EXCAVATING THE THELMA SITE (Hx v8)

Because of the midden deposit apparent on the Thelma site, it was chosen as the first site to be excavated. A burial was found on the edge of the high ridge upon which the site was located. This burial had been exposed by the bulldozers that cleared the site of underbrush. It was decided that several five foot squares should be taken out in the area in order to determine the depth of the midden deposit, and possibly obtain some stratigraphic relationships between the pottery types.

A line was drawn from a point near the exposed burial and a large tree at the foot of the high ridge to the south of the site. About twenty-five feet from this tree along the line, the first square was excavated. The soil was removed in six inch levels, and an average depth of eighteen inches was found for the midden. This square was numbered sq. 0. The adjoining square nearer the bank was taken out and called sq. -5. Other squares were taken out along the line at twenty-five, fifty, fifty-five, sixty, and sixty-five feet from the first square which was on the 0 line. Additional squares were taken out at 65R5, 70R5, and 25R30 (Figure 41).

All soil was sifted and all sherds, bone and shell



Excavated Squares at the Thelma Site
Figure 41

was saved, and placed in bags numbered with the square number and the level. A detailed description of the methodology of excavating squares is given under the section on method of excavation of squares at the Gaston site.

The site was surveyed by Lewis Binford, and his map of the site is shown in Map 8. A photograph of the site is shown in Plate 52a.

III. EXCAVATION OF FEATURES AT THE THELMA SITE

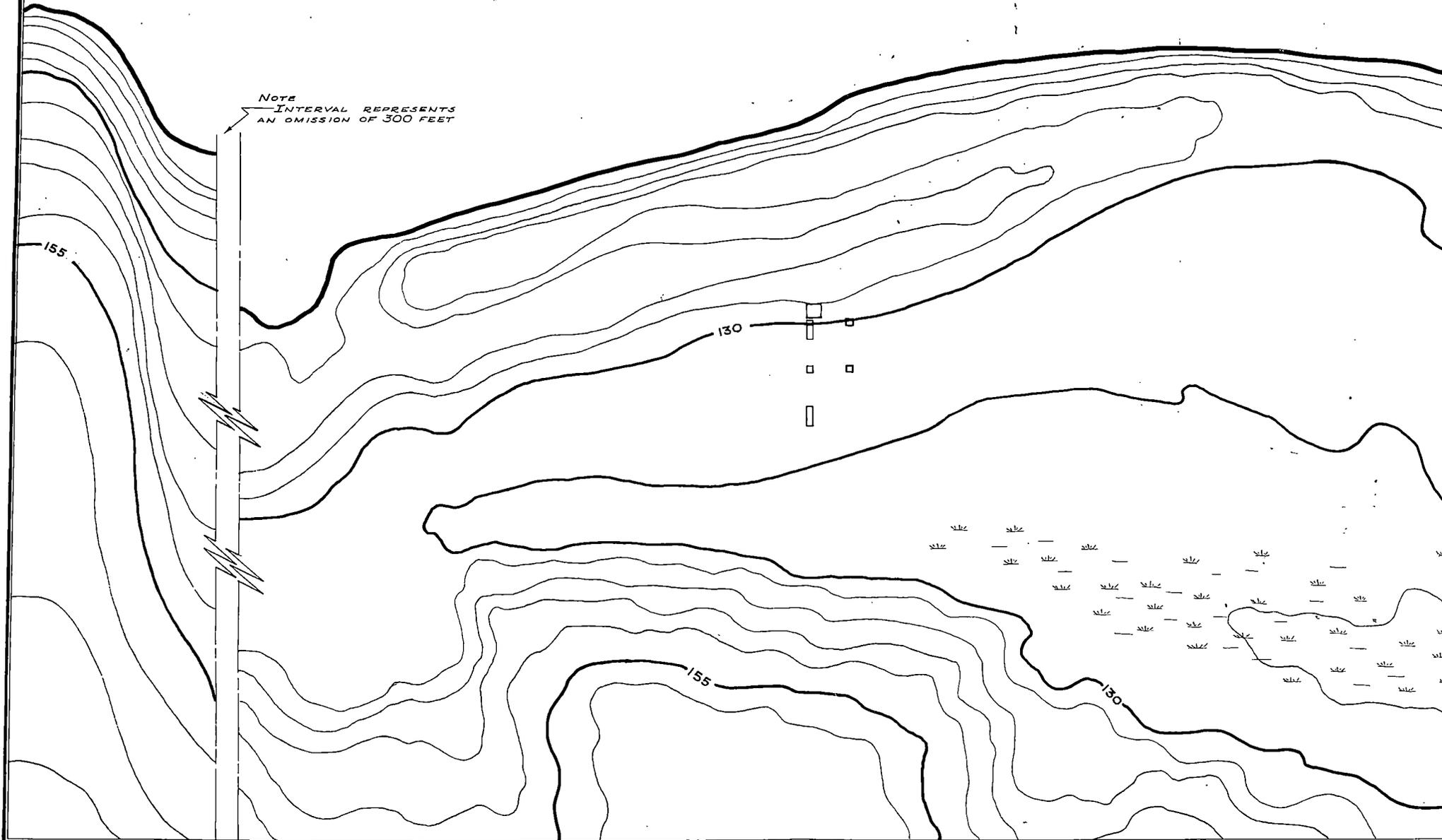
In sq. 0, three inches from the zero point in the south-eastern corner of the square, was a pit six inches in depth and eight inches across that contained four molars and a few bone fragments of an infant. No sherds were in the feature. Also in sq. 0 at the twelve to eighteen inch level, was found the only complete bone fish-hook found in the survey.

At the 60R30 position on the site a concentration of midden, shell, and bone had been disturbed by the bulldozer. A dark outline of a pit could be seen against lighter sand surrounding. This pit was profiled and a collection of bone and shell was taken from it.

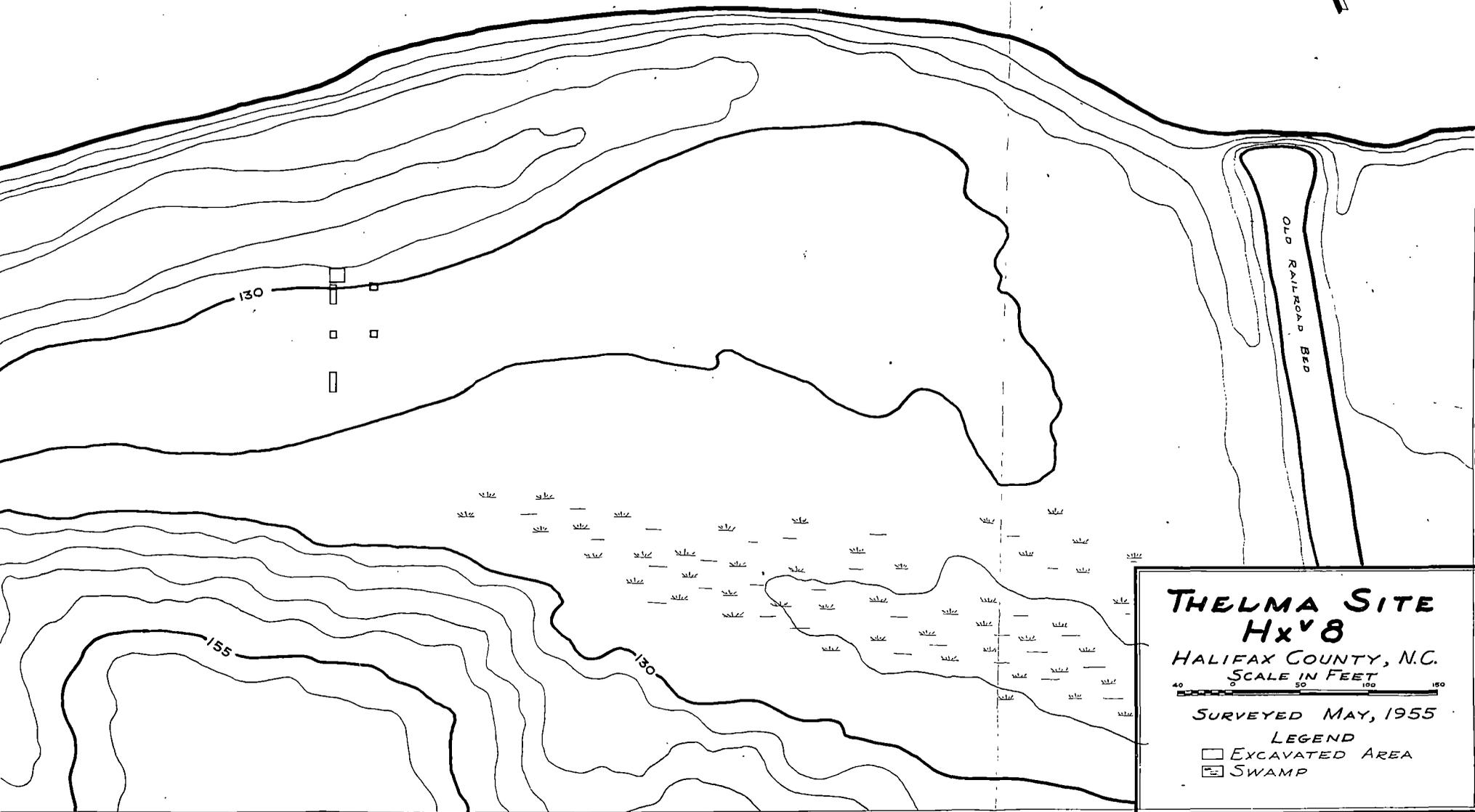
Other than the Ossuary and the flexed burial, these were the only other features located on the site, that are not reported elsewhere.

ROANOKE RIVER

NOTE
INTERVAL REPRESENTS
AN OMISSION OF 300 FEET



ANOKE RIVER



THELMA SITE
Hx^v8

HALIFAX COUNTY, N.C.
SCALE IN FEET



SURVEYED MAY, 1955

- LEGEND
- EXCAVATED AREA
 - ▣ SWAMP

Plate 52

- a. The Thelma Site looking east toward the dam.
The old Gaston railroad fill is to the right.
- b. Large pit or gulley at sq. 65 and 65R5 at the Thelma Site. Hole in profile to the right indicates the position where one of the skulls of the ossuary was removed.



a



b
The Thelma Site
Plate 52

In sq. 0, at the zero to twelve inch level, was found an unusual pottery vessel fragment of the type Vincent Fabric-Impressed. This vessel had a lip resembling a gravy boat. It was broken in half, so it is not known whether both sides had this lip, or whether the other side was rounded. The bottom was flat but joined the sides by a rounded corner. An illustration of this unusual vessel is shown in Plate 14.

IV. METHOD OF EXCAVATING THE FLEXED BURIAL AND OSSUARY IN SQUARE 65 AT THE THELMA SITE

At a depth of six inches under the plowed soil in sq. 65, a fully flexed burial was found with the skull oriented to the south. In the fill dirt near the feet of the burial was found several large fragments of a large pottery vessel of the type Vincent Fabric-Impressed, shown in Plate 13. The burial was removed and a change in the soil color was noticed after the square was trowelled below the burial. This level appeared to be the sterile sand subsoil, but a skull was found at the level of soil change from black to light brown sand. During excavation of this skull, several other bones were located along with other skulls. This concentration of skulls and bones appeared to be an ossuary that had been backfilled with clean sand. One sherd was found associated with the bones

of the ossuary. This sherd is of the type Vincent Fabric Impressed.

Eight skulls in all were found in the pile of bones. Plate 53 illustrates this ossuary in the process of excavation and after excavation was complete. As can be seen in this plate, the ossuary was left on a block of sand and the area around was cut out in order to get a clearer picture of the relationship of the ossuary to the surrounding soil profile. Part of the ossuary was left in the profile so that this relationship could be observed. Figure 42 shows a drawing of the ossuary and the relationship of it to the flexed burial above it.

The skulls from the ossuary were examined by Dr. Marshall Newman, and his report is included in the appendix. The skulls from the ossuary were somewhat longer headed than those from the Gaston site. Plate 54 illustrates the comparison of Gaston with Thelma site skulls.

The bulldozer had disturbed the bones on the edge of the bank, and there seemed to be a break between this group of disturbed bones and the ossuary bones. If this were the case, these disturbed bones may have been a flexed burial. However, it is thought this group of disturbed bones was perhaps a part of the ossuary, since two skulls were found slightly below the disturbed area. The relationship between these bones and the ossuary could not be established without doubt.



a

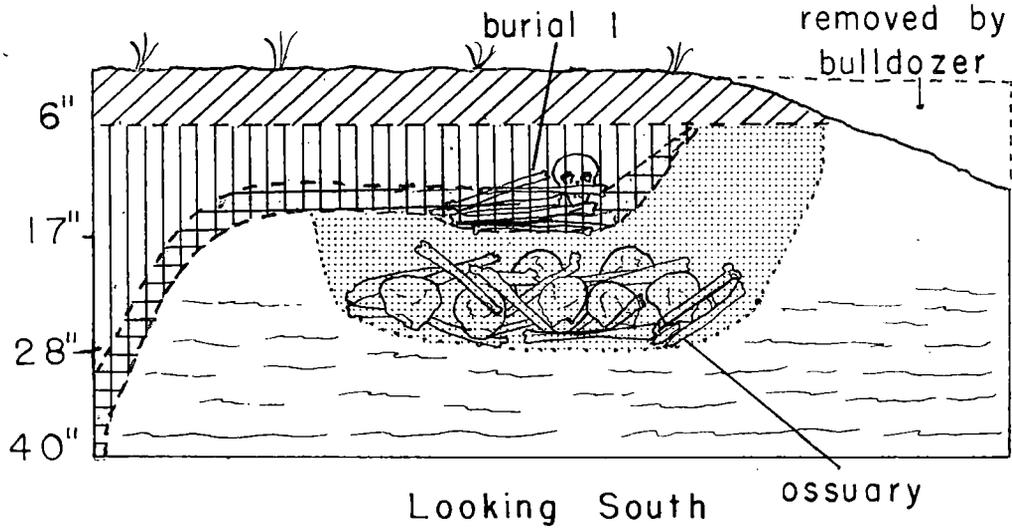
Excavating the Ossuary at the Thelma Site



b

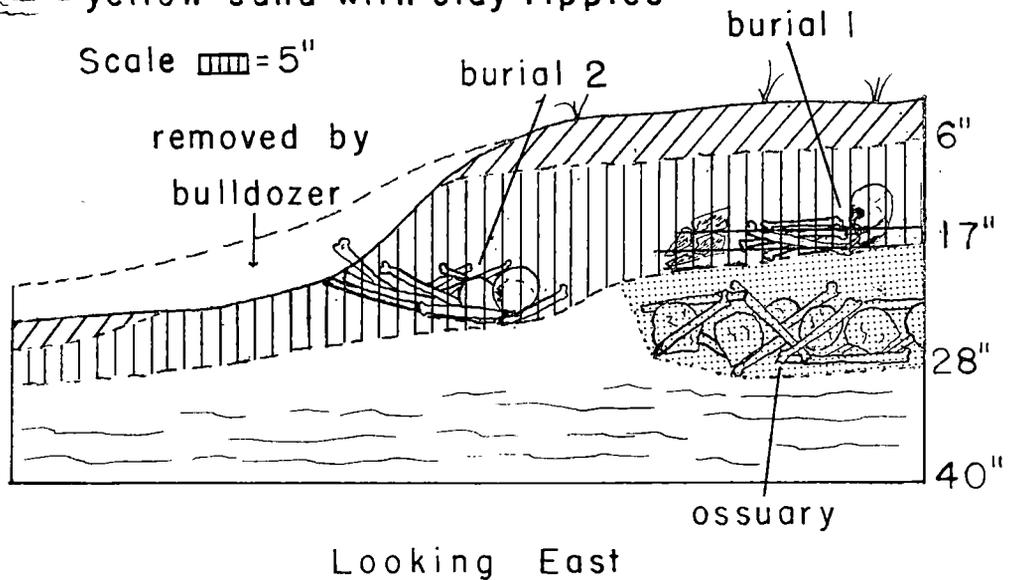
The Ossuary at the Thelma Site

Plate 53



- /// = dark brown disturbed soil
- ||| = black midden
- ▣ = dark brown shell midden
- ▤ = light brown soil
- ≡ = yellow sand with clay ripples

Scale = 5"

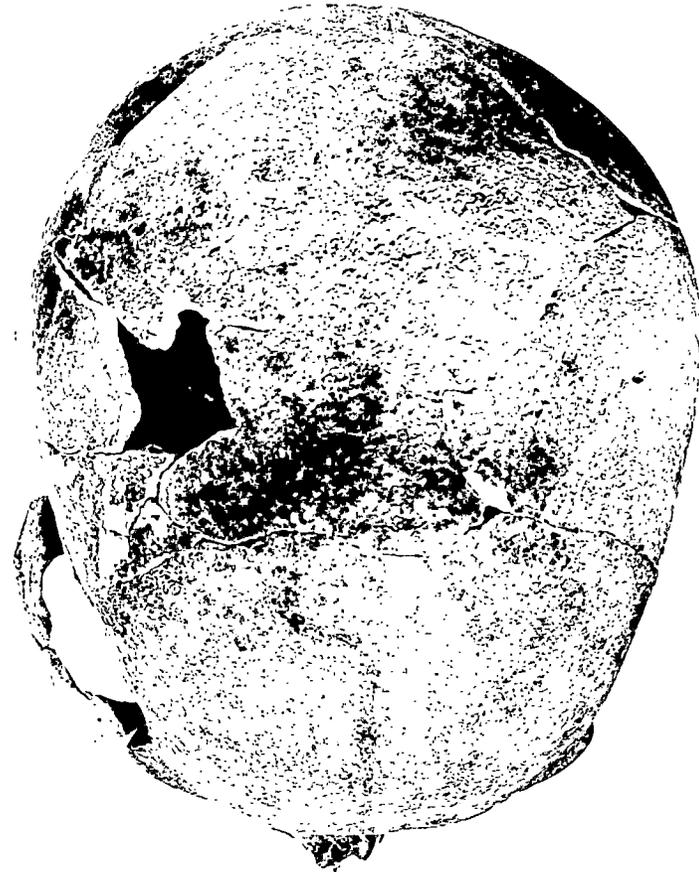
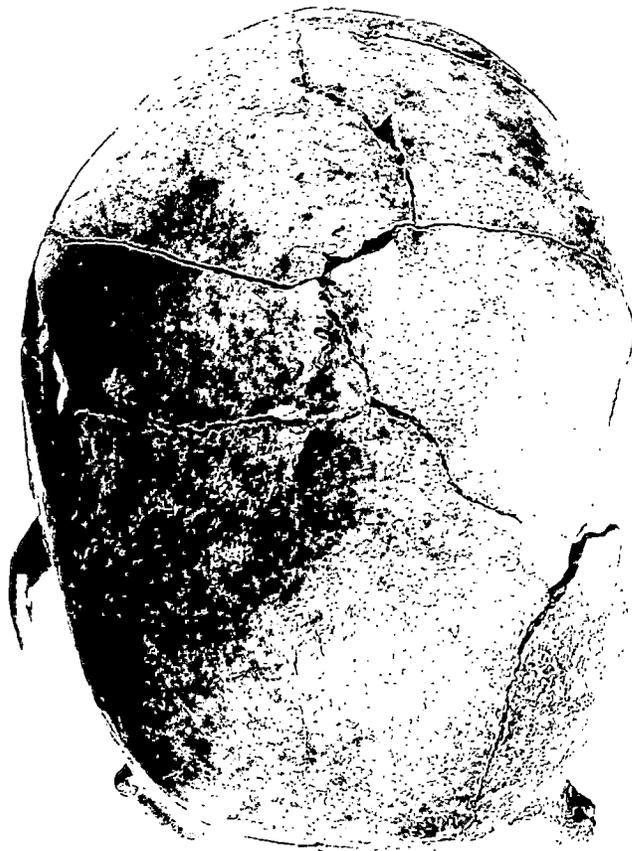


CROSS SECTIONS OF SQUARE 65

The Thelma Site

Hx v 8

Figure 42



Theima Site Skull

Gaston Site Skull

Comparison of Skulls from the Gaston and Theima Sites
Plate 54

Above the ossuary the black midden deposit became deeper toward the eastern edge of the square. For this reason, it was decided to excavate sq. 65R5 and determine why this midden declined toward the east. It was found to be what appeared to be a large pit, but it extended across the entire square toward the north. This indicated that it must have been an eroded gully at one time and had become filled with midden debris at a later time. A photograph of this gully profile is seen in Plate 52b. The ossuary has been removed from the area to the right, and a hole in the profile indicates where a skull was removed from the ossuary.

In the bottom of the gully was found a large fragment of a skull, that may have been washed from the ossuary, since the edge of the gully apparently cuts into the edge of the ossuary. However, this could have been washed from a burial further up the gully.

The contents of the gully were shell, bone, and pottery. The only type pottery from the gully was Vincent and Clement types. The type Vincent Cord-marked was the predominate type comprising 55 per cent of all sherds in the pit. Vincent Fabric Impressed comprised 28 per cent. It can be stated that the gully belongs to the Vincent type pottery period since 83 per cent of the sherds were of this type. A total of 295 sherds were found in the gully, and of these

only 17 per cent were of the Clement series types. Half of a small round bottomed bowl of the type Vincent Cord-marked was found in the gully, and is illustrated in Plate 7a.

V. THE ARTIFACT RELATIONSHIPS AT THE THELMA SITE

The Thelma projectile point. The Thelma point was so named because of the association of this type point with the Thelma site (Hx v8). Of the thirty-two points of this type found in the basin through surface surveying and excavation, half of them were found at the Thelma site. Four were found in the surface survey of the site, and twelve during excavation of levels (Table XXIII). Ten of these twelve were in the second and third levels. The association with the Vincent type pottery is quite apparent, although the type was not found in any large numbers in the survey. At the Gaston site the four Thelma points found during excavation of the levels were in the second and third levels, which would place them well below the Clarksville type, at least. In Table XII two Thelma points are shown associated with Vincent type sherds in features at the Gaston site.

All these associations are meager compared with evidence for some other types, but the indications all point to a Vincent type pottery association for the Thelma point.

PROJECTILE POINTS FROM CERAMIC LEVELS AT THE THELMA SITE (Hx v8)

Material*	Level	S	Q	W	F	Total	Type %
Clarksville						None	
Roanoke	1= 0-6"	2		1		3	75.0
	2= 6-12"			1		1	25.0
	3=12-18"					0	
Total		2		2		4	100.0
Large Triangle	1					0	
	2			1		1	100.0
	3					0	
Total				1		1	100.0
Small Stemmed (Thelma)	1			2		2	16.6
	2	3	1	4		8	66.6
	3	2				2	16.6
Total		5	1	6		12	99.8
Small Oval Blade**	1			1		1	33.3
	2			2		2	66.6
	3					0	
Total				3		3	99.9
Large Oval Blade**	1					0	
	2				1	1	100.0
	3					0	
Total					1	1	100.0
Savannah River***	1			1		1	100.0
	2					0	
	3					0	
Total				1		1	100.0
Halifax**	1	1		3		4	66.6
	2					0	
	3			2		2	33.3
Total		1		5		6	99.9
Guilford**	1				1	1	50.0
	2					0	
	3			1		1	50.0
Total				1	1	2	100.0

* S= slate Q= quartzite W= white quartz F= felsite

** See Table XX for Savannah River, Halifax, Guilford and Oval Blade distribution in pre-ceramic levels, at Gaston site(Hx v7)

Table XXIII

ARTIFACTS FROM CERAMIC LEVELS AT THE THELMA SITE (Hx v8)

<u>Objects of Stone</u>	<u>Level</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
Abraded Stone	1 = 0- 6"	0
	2 = 6-12"	1
	3 =12-18"	0
		<u>1</u>
Pecked Stone	1	3
	2	6
	3	2
		<u>11</u>
Center Pecked Stone	1	0
	2	0
	3	1
		<u>1</u>
Pitted Stone	1	0
	2	1
	3	0
		<u>1</u>
Steatite Sherds	1	1
	2	0
	3	0
		<u>1</u>
<u>Objects of Clay</u>		
Clay Pipe Fragment	2	1
Daub	1	0
	2	8
	3	0
		<u>8</u>
<u>Objects of Bone</u>		
Bone Awl	1	0
	2	1
	3	1
		<u>2</u>
Bone Fish-hook	3	1

Table XXIV

VI. STRATIGRAPHIC POTTERY TYPE RELATIONSHIPS
AT THE THELMA SITE

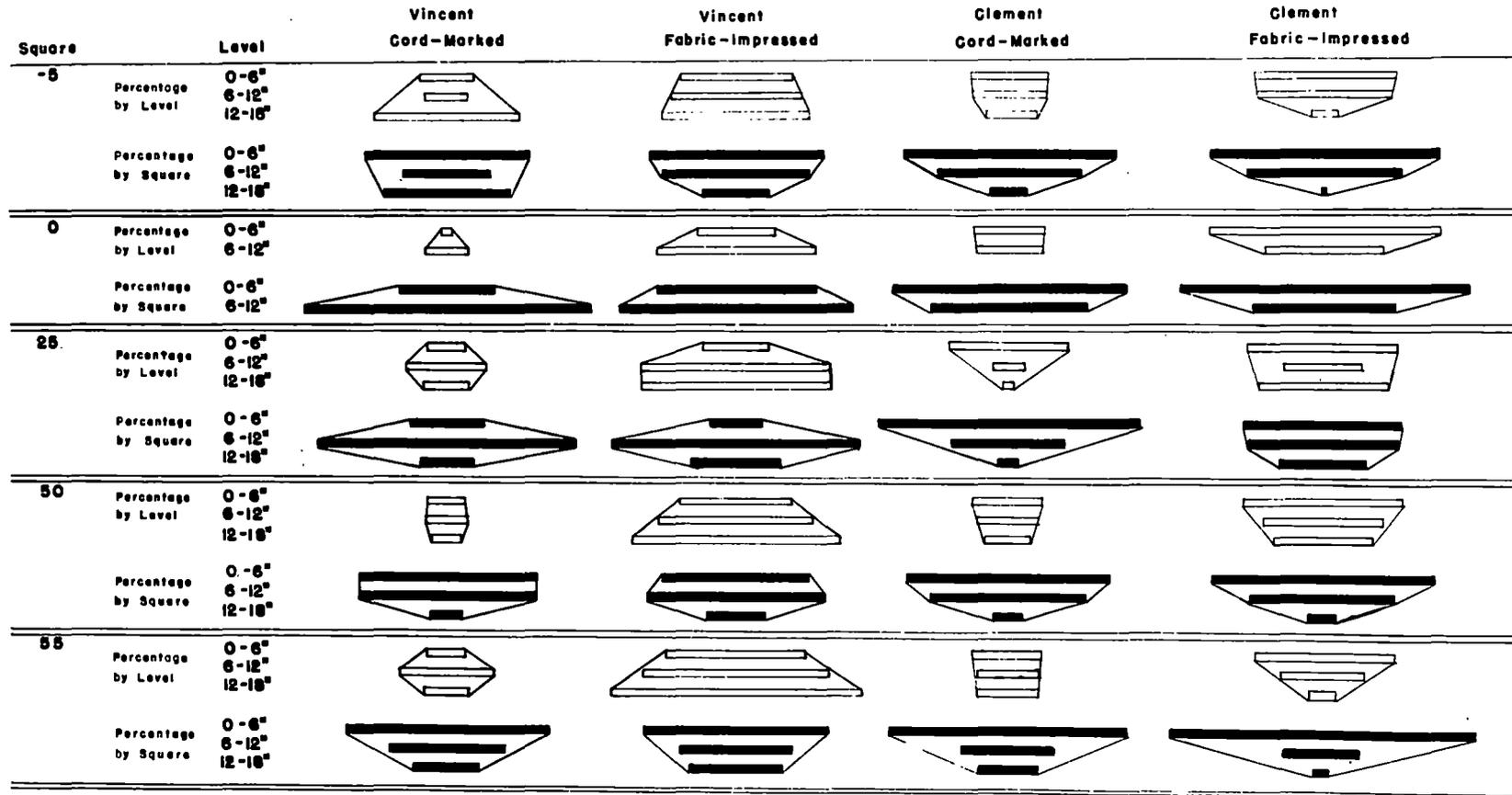
The squares at the Thelma site were excavated in six inch levels. Very little disturbance of the subsoil by pitting was present compared to the squares at the Gaston site. Since the ceramic material consisted almost entirely of the Clement and Vincent cord and fabric types, the very small percentage of Net Impressed, and other types were not plotted on the graph in Figure 43, but the count of these can be seen in Table XXV. Only two sherds of the Gaston Simple-Stamped type were found during excavation of the squares at this site.

In the five squares excavated, the percentage by level bars indicate clearly that the Clement series definitely occurred later than the Vincent series. This evidence supports the relationship between these series, found at the Gaston site.

VII. AN INTERPRETIVE SUMMARY OF THE ARCHAEOLOGICAL
COMPLEXES AT THE THELMA SITE

The earliest evidence for the occupation of the Thelma Site by an Indian group, is the presence of a Morrow Mountain type projectile point on the surface. This point is known to pre-date the Guilford type, as revealed

Pottery Type Percentages from Squares at the Thelma Site



Scale: = 10%

Figure 43

SHERD COUNT BY TYPE FOR EACH LEVEL OF THE CERAMIC
CONTROL SQUARES AT THE THELMA SITE

Square	Level	Vincent Cord	Vincent Fabric	Clement Cord	Clement Fabric	Type I Cord	Type I Fabric	Net I	Net II	Gaston S. Stamped	Total
-5	0- 6"	37	76	53	95			1			262
	6-12"	20	63	36	63	2	1	1			186
	12-18"	28	28	9	5			1	3		74
0	0- 6"	9	67	59	188				3		326
	6-12"	27	97	40	69						233
25	0- 6"	15	24	44	53	4			1		141
	6-12"	53	120	19	50	3			1		246
	12-18"	11	43	3	29				1		87
50	0- 6"	11	33	21	46					2	113
	6-12"	11	40	16	30				2		99
	12-18"	2	13	3	6						24
55	0- 6"	16	55	28	56						155
	6-12"	9	32	11	14						66
	12-18"	5	28	7	3						43

Table XXV

through excavations conducted by Joffre Coe at a site in piedmont North Carolina.¹ Little else is known of this early point, but it is thought to date perhaps as early as eight thousand years ago. Also found on the surface was a Guilford projectile point. This point is the only evidence for the presence of the Guilford Complex at the Thelma Site. Seven Halifax points were found on the surface at the Thelma Site, and represent an occupation of the site as early as five thousand years ago, as revealed by radio-carbon dates from the Gaston site.

Also found on the surface at the Thelma Site was one Large Oval Blade, and a Savannah River projectile point. The Savannah River Complex represented by these artifacts was dated at the Gaston Site as being four thousand years old.

None of these artifacts, representing early pre-ceramic occupations of the Thelma Site, were found stratigraphically at the Thelma Site. A small exploratory shaft was dug at the site in an attempt to locate a deeper layer of cultural material, but perhaps due to the smallness of the trench, no chips were found after digging to a depth of eight feet. Perhaps if a ten foot square had been excavated, stratigraphic cultural material could have been located.

In excavation of the midden accumulation of this site,

¹Joffre Coe, personal communication.

two predominating ceramic series were present. These were the Clement and the Vincent ceramic series. Only two sherds of the Gaston type were found. This lack of the Gaston type ceramics indicates that the site was occupied before the Gaston pottery became the popular type. The absence of all but one Clarksville type projectile point also indicates the close relationship between the Gaston pottery and this type arrowhead.

At this site the Clement type ceramics occurs higher in the ground than the Vincent type. This is seen in a much clearer manner than was seen on the Gaston Site where more pitting had taken place.

Associated with the Vincent type ceramics at the Thelma Site was the small-stemmed, Thelma projectile point, resembling a small Savannah River type, and may represent the continuation of the stemmed projectile point tradition into bow and arrow times.

An important aspect in the interpretation of the cultural complexes within the basin was revealed at the Thelma Site. This was the finding of the ossuary associated with Vincent type pottery. At the Gaston Site no Vincent associated burials were found, indicating some method of burial other than in pits on the Gaston Site. This could be in the form of scaffold burials with the collected bones being placed in an ossuary at periodic

intervals. And without the excavation at the Thelma Site, this would only have been a conjecture. As it is, however, it is now known that the makers of Vincent type pottery buried their dead in common ossuaries after their first having been exposed on scaffolds. The skeletal material from the ossuary at the Thelma site indicates that this was the case. Several skull fragments were found with old breaks, and several incomplete fragments of skulls were found in the ossuary.

The skulls from the ossuary were examined by Dr. Marshall Newmann at the Smithsonian Institution in Washington, and his report is included in the Appendix. He reports that the skulls from the Gaston Site and the Thelma Site are both of the same basic type, with the ossuary skulls from the Thelma Site being somewhat longer-headed. Both the Gaston and Thelma skulls are Newmann's Lenapid, or Hurdlicka's Algonkin variety. This is in agreement with the ceramic evidence which indicates that a continuous cultural tradition took place within the basin during pottery making times.

In summary, the evidence indicates that the Thelma Site was occupied during the Vincent period, and during the early part of the Clement period, and abandoned sometime before the Gaston pottery type became popular. This must have been sometime before five hundred years ago. From the

excavation at this site it is definitely known that during the Vincent ceramic period, one means of interment of the dead was by scaffold and ossuary. A small stemmed arrowhead was used during the Vincent period, and appears to be definitely associated with this type pottery.

Before the site was occupied by pottery making people, it was used at various times during the past eight thousand years as a camp site, as evidenced by four pre-ceramic projectile points representing four different archaeological complexes.

CHAPTER VIII

AN INTERPRETATION OF THE CULTURAL HISTORY OF THE ROANOKE RAPIDS BASIN

I. A COMPARATIVE SUMMARY OF THE ARCHAEOLOGICAL COMPLEXES IN THE ROANOKE RAPIDS BASIN

The earliest archaeological complex found in the Roanoke Rapids basin is represented by a fluted point of the Folsom type. This widely distributed projectile point type is known to date between eight and twelve thousand years ago in the southwestern part of the United States.¹ A point of this type made of crystal quartz, and ground along the basal edges, was found by a resident of the area, near the western boundary of the present survey. The typological similarity between this point and those found in the southwest, as well as in Georgia,² Tennessee,³

¹James B. Griffin, "Culture Periods in Eastern United States Archaeology," Archaeology of Eastern United States (Chicago: 1952), p. 353.

²Joseph R. Caldwell, "The Archaeology of Eastern Georgia and South Carolina," op. cit., p. 312.

³T. M. N. Lewis, "A Suggested Basis for Paleo-Indian Chronology in Tennessee and the Eastern United States," Southern Indian Studies, Vol. V, (1954), p. 11.

Virginia,⁴ and other eastern states,⁵ indicates that this point represents an early complex of wide spread distribution over the United States.

Also representing an early complex is the concave-base, side-notched, slightly fluted projectile point found associated with a fluted type in a stratigraphic context by Joffre Coe in Piedmont North Carolina.⁶ A point of this type was found on the surface at site Np v2, and is the earliest type actually found during the present survey. These fluted type projectile points, along with the Guilford type, represent a culture period usually referred to as the Paleo-Indian Period.⁷

The next oldest type complex represented in the basin is the Morrow Mountain projectile point. This point is known to pre-date the Guilford complex, and is thought to date between seven and eight thousand years ago.⁸ It was found on the surface of sites, but was not found stratigraphically in the present survey. The typological

⁴Ben C. McCary, "A Paleo-Indian Workshop Site in Dinwiddie County, Virginia," op. cit., p. 9.

⁵Douglas Byers, "Paleo-Indian in New England," op. cit., p. 5.

⁶Joffre Coe, personal communication.

⁷Griffin, op. cit., p. 353.

⁸Coe, personal communication.

similarity is with the early Western type known as Gypsum Cave.⁹

The Guilford Complex was found represented on the surface of several sites, and stratigraphically at the Gaston site. This projectile point is suggestive of the Yuma point of the Southwest, and later similar types.¹⁰ It was found stratigraphically below the Halifax, which would place it between five and six thousand years old.

The Halifax Complex was represented by several projectile points found on the surface of several sites, and stratigraphically above the Guilford at the Gaston site. Carbon 14 dates from hearths place it between four thousand and five thousand five hundred years ago. It resembles other early types in that it has a ground base, and the notches are ground. The type is often seen in surface collections along with the Guilford type.

The Savannah River Complex was found on a number of sites in the basin survey, and stratigraphically at the Gaston site, above the Halifax Complex. The carbon-14 date places this occupation of the basin four thousand years ago. This complex is related to types with a wide distribution

⁹Joffre Coe, "The Cultural Sequence of the Carolina Piedmont," The Archaeology of Eastern United States, James B. Griffin (ed.) (Chicago: 1952), p. 304.

¹⁰Ibid.

from Delaware to Alabama,¹¹ and is associated with the pre-ceramic phase of the culture period known as the Late Archaic period.¹² The same type was found at Stallings Island, Georgia, in a transitional context from pre-ceramic to early fiber-tempered pottery types,¹³ but in North Carolina it has only been found stratigraphically in a pre-ceramic context.¹⁴ There is some small evidence at the Gaston site indicating that an occupation by a people using the pecked-grooved ax, steatite pot, and Savannah River point, occurred at the bottom level of the midden accumulation of the pottery making occupation of the site. This was in the form of steatite sherds and a grooved ax being found in the yellow sand under the midden accumulation on the site, after the bulldozers had removed the midden. Otherwise, the Savannah River Complex did not contain steatite sherds as found in the stratified level.

The earliest ceramic material represented in the Middle Atlantic States is steatite-tempered ware characteristic at the Koens-Crispin, Salisbury, and Goose Island

¹¹Coe, ibid., p. 305.

¹²Griffin, op. cit., p. 354.

¹³Charles H. Fairbanks, "The Taxonomic Position of Stallings Island, Georgia," American Antiquity, Vol. 7, No. 3 (1942), p. 223-231.

¹⁴Coe, loc. cit.

sites in New Jersey, and the Selden Island site near Washington, D. C.¹⁵ These sites are thought to represent the transition from steatite to clay vessels, the crushed steatite fragments being the remains of steatite pots added to the clay paste.¹⁶

No steatite-tempered clay pottery was found in the present survey, indicating that such a transition from Archaic to Woodland culture periods did not take place in this manner in the Roanoke Rapids Basin.¹⁷

The earliest clay pottery types in Georgia¹⁸ and Florida¹⁹ and elsewhere in the Southeast, are fiber-tempered wares. It has been suggested that in this southern area where steatite vessels were not used in Archaic times to any great extent, perhaps the transition was from baskets to clay pottery tempered with fiber, as a symbolic basket substitute, rather than from steatite pots to clay pottery tempered with steatite. This type of early pottery is

¹⁵Karl Schmitt, "Archaeological Chronology of the Middle Atlantic States," Archaeology of the Eastern United States, James Griffin (ed.) (Chicago: 1952), p. 60.

¹⁶Coe, loc. cit.

¹⁷Griffin, op. cit., p. 356.

¹⁸Caldwell, op. cit., p. 313.

¹⁹John W. Griffin, "Prehistoric Florida: A Review," op. cit., p. 323.

thought to be the result of stimulus diffusion of the pottery making idea rather than a bodily introduction of clay pottery into the areas where it is found. This stimulus diffusion resulted in the fashioning of pots of clay in imitation of forms already existing in the receiving culture, and perhaps utilizing fragments of steatite or fiber, as the case may be, as symbolic substitutes for the familiar objects already existing in the culture.²⁰

No fiber-tempered or steatite-tempered clay pottery was found in the present survey, indicating that those early types known as Early Woodland were not developed in the Roanoke Rapids Basin.²¹ However, another type of pottery also known as Early Woodland does occur in the basin. This is a granular-tempered ware with a cord-marked or fabric impressed surface finish, a concoidal base, and represented in this report by the Vincent Series.

This Early Woodland pottery, it is now rather commonly believed, has come into the area from northeast Asia. In northern Asia this ware is associated with the same general type of burials and mound constructions that are found in the eastern United States.²²

The Early Woodland, Vincent Series pottery is a well developed type in form and method of manufacture, indicating

²⁰Coe, personal communication.

²¹James A. Griffin, op. cit., p. 356.

²²Ibid., p. 357.

that it was not a result of a slow development from stimulus diffusion, but diffused bodily into the area. The direction of this diffusion was from the north, and was the result of a tradition stemming from Asia.

It should be remembered that all change is not accounted for by migration, as is sometimes the tendency. However, since there is little evidence of a slow developmental transition from the Archaic to the Early Woodland Periods, it is thought that the Early Woodland culture, found in the Roanoke Rapids Basin, was a result of bodily diffusion of traits, through migration of people from the north. The only evidence of a possible transition is in the Thelma projectile point, which may represent a development from a stemmed spear point tradition to a triangle arrowhead tradition. Also associated with the Vincent ceramics at this early time period was the boatstone atlatl weight which indicates a transition from the use of the atlatl to the use of the bow and arrow as the primary weapon.

The Vincent pottery is typologically similar, except for the surface finish, to what Stephenson describes as Pope's Creek, which he places in a context similar to that for the Vincent ceramics.²³ Also similar to the Vincent

²³Robert L. Stephenson, "Accokeek: A Middle Atlantic Seaboard Culture Sequence," (unpublished Doctorial thesis, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill), p. 137.

type ceramics is Evans' Prince George Series, about which he says:

In Virginia, Maryland, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania, there is a widespread and early distribution of pottery varieties typified in Virginia by the fine, sand-tempered wares of the Stony Creek Series, and the round, gravel tempered wares of the Prince George Series. With all these types fitting into the earliest part of the Virginia, Maryland, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania sequences, there is a strong suggestion that this area had a common ceramic origin.²⁴

From this, it would appear that the Vincent Series is related to similar cord and fabric impressed wares to the north, at a similar time period. The time of the introduction of the Vincent Series into the basin indicated by Radiocarbon dates would be around A. D. 500.

The Clement Series, which developed out of the Vincent tradition, compares typologically to what Stephenson calls Accokeek Ware,²⁵ and places in the Middle Woodland period.²⁶ He says that it is related to the Stony Creek, Prince George and Albemarle Series described by Evans, and as has previously been stated, the Clement Series is typologically similar to the Stony Creek Series.²⁷

²⁴Evans, op. cit., p. 79.

²⁵Stephenson, op. cit., p. 144.

²⁶James A. Griffin, op. cit., p. 358.

²⁷Stephenson, op. cit., p. 145.

The Gaston pottery developed from a Vincent-Clement tradition, and was influenced by ceramic traditions from the south by way of the west. The flaring, folded rims, with notching, the decoration of the neck by smoothing, scraping, and incising have been pointed out as influences from the Clarksville, Virginia, area, and the Dan River area.²⁸ The Clarksville area lay in the main north-south trade path, and probably received the southern influences first. From there they were diffused down the river to the Roanoke Rapids area.

The simple-stamped surface finish on the Gaston type ceramics is similar to Hillsboro Simple Stamped pottery from the Occaneechi occupation at Hillsboro, North Carolina, in 1700-1725.²⁹ Before the Occaneechi moved to Hillsboro, they were living at Clarksville, and the two occupations are separated by only two generations. When they moved south, they abandoned their net impressed surface finish for pottery, and began using a carved simple stamped or check stamped paddle.³⁰ This indicates a southern origin

²⁸Joffre Coe, "The Cultural Sequence of the Carolina Piedmont," op. cit., pp. 309-311.

²⁹Joffre Coe, "Certain Eastern Siouan Pottery Types," Prehistoric Pottery of the Eastern United States, James B. Griffin(ed.) (University of Michigan: 1952), unpagged.

³⁰Coe, Archaeology of Eastern United States, op. cit., p. 311.

for the simple stamped, check stamped tradition. Since the Gaston Simple Stamped and the Check Stamped type is the latest ceramic style in the Roanoke Rapids Basin, this carved paddle tradition evidently entered the area of northern Piedmont North Carolina at a late date, from the South.

From where in the south did the stamping tradition come? Wauchope says in regard to simple-stamped pottery in northern Georgia: "This decoration occurs in all archaeological phases in northern Georgia."³¹ He says that along with the early fabric impressed pottery of central Georgia, there occurs Mossy Oak Simple Stamped pottery of Early Woodland times which later developed into Deptford Simple Stamped, then into Etowah Simple Stamped of Early Mississippi period. Then it developed into Lamar Simple Stamped of the Late Mississippi period.³² The check stamped tradition had a similar evolution.

The Lamar Simple and Check Stamped types are similar to the Gaston Simple Stamped and Check Stamped types. This long developmental sequence of simple stamped types does not

³¹Robert Wauchope, "The Evolution and Persistence of Ceramic Motifs in Northern Georgia," American Antiquity, Vol. 16, No. 1 (July, 1950), pp. 16-22.

³²Robert Wauchope, "The Ceramic Sequence in the Etowah Drainage, Northwest Georgia," American Antiquity, Vol. 13, No. 3 (January, 1948), pp. 201-209.

occur in the Roanoke Rapids Basin, indicating that the Lamar stamping tradition from the south was influencing the Roanoke Rapids area during the late proto-historic times.

This conclusion is in agreement with that of Coe who says that the Catawba-Lamar influence had become dominant in central North Carolina by 1700.³³ Evidently this influence was felt as far northeast as the Roanoke Rapids Basin where it is manifested in the Gaston Simple Stamped ceramics.

The folded rims and rounded base characteristic of the Gaston Series is also found on vessels of the Radford Series from western Virginia.³⁴ Since folded rims are seldom found in Piedmont North Carolina, and since the primary ceramic influences producing the Gaston Series pottery apparently come from the west, it is thought that the folded rim tradition moved east into the Roanoke Rapids Basin from the western Virginia area.

It is interesting to note that although simple stamping continued late in north Georgia, it was a minority type, the majority type being complicated stamping. It would appear that when the idea of simple stamping was

³³Coe, "Certain Eastern Siouan Pottery Types," op. cit., unpagged.

³⁴Evans, op. cit., p. 64.

introduced into the Roanoke Rapids area, the change from cord-wrapped paddle stamping to sinue wrapped, or carved paddle simple-stamping was an easier transition than to complicated stamping. Therefore, a minority type within the culture from which the ideas were diffusing, was more acceptable than the majority type, and was made the majority type in the receiving culture. Some experimentation with check-stamping was tried, but neither this nor complicated stamping had the appeal that the simple-stamp had for the women in the Roanoke Rapids Basin.

The origin of the changing rim form and surface finish on the Gaston ceramics during the late occupation in the basin is from the south, however, the similarity with the Clarksville area indicates that this southern influence came from the west, down the river from the Clarksville area. Since no complicated stamped sherds were found in the basin, the origin of this type surface finish on pottery is not a concern here, but Sears has pointed out pointed out that early complicated stamping of the Napier type, has a strong typological relationship to the earlier Mossy Oak Simple Stamped type.³⁵ If the ceramic history in the Roanoke Rapids basin had not been

³⁵William H. Sears, "Ceramic Development in the South Appalachian Province," American Antiquity, Vol. 18, No. 2, (October, 1952), p. 107.

suddenly interrupted by the invasion of the Europeans, it is conceivable that a complicated stamped type would have been adopted as the popular surface finish at a later time.

Another indication of influence from the south is the presence of pentagonal projectile points typical of the Pee Dee Focus in south-central North Carolina during the period between A.D. 1550 and A.D. 1650.³⁶

A type similar to the Gaston pottery is described by Stephenson, and called Potomac Creek Ware. This type is described as having flaring rims with an occasional rim fold, with semi-conical bases. Also present are smoothed neck areas with incising of neck and shoulder area.³⁷ Although this ware is cord-marked, the other typological resemblances are with the Gaston ceramics. Also described as part of the Potomac Creek Focus is the presence of stockaded walls, and clay pipes with rouletting, or what is called fine cord marked decorations in bands around the stem. These pipes Stephenson calls Potomac Cord Impressed pipes, and they are almost identical to fragments found on the Gaston Site.³⁸ This Potomac Creek

³⁶Coe, "The Cultural Sequence of the Carolina Piedmont," op. cit., p. 308.

³⁷Stephenson, op. cit., pp. 192-216.

³⁸Ibid., p. 240.

Focus is assigned to the Late Woodland period, which fits well with the ceramic styles present in the Roanoke Rapids Basin at the same time.

From this evidence it would appear that some influence from the north was also present during the Gaston occupation of the basin.

In summarizing the Accokeek ware, which is the ceramic material from the Accokeek Site on the Potomac River relating to the Clement Series, Stephenson says that it is related to a "wide-spread ceramic tradition with generalized affiliations over a large portion of the northern United States."³⁹

In summarizing the Stony Creek and Prince George Series in the Southeastern Virginia area, which relate to the Vincent-Clement tradition, Evans says:

This ceramic picture suggests the occupation of southeastern Virginia by one cultural group, rather free from external influences, but undergoing internal cultural changes, all of which were reflected by shifts in popularity of certain pottery types.⁴⁰

In summarizing the Vincent-Clement-Gaston ceramic tradition, it can be said that it probably had its origin along with other similar traditions, toward the north, originally in Asia, and that it developed along much the

³⁹Stephenson, op. cit., p. 384.

⁴⁰Evans, op. cit., p. 142.

same lines as these related ceramic traditions. During the last part of the developmental sequence, certain ceramic styles from the south and west began to influence the potters in the Roanoke Rapids Basin, by way of contact with the Siouan groups up the river to the west. No sudden movement into the area of a different people is postulated to explain the new elements appearing on Gaston type pottery, as Evans does to explain the differences between the Clarksville and an earlier series called by Coe the Roanoke Series,⁴¹ and later referred to by Evans as an "Unclassified Series".⁴² The changes in ceramics can be explained through diffusion of ideas into the area, resulting in certain changes in pottery design and form. The source of these influences has been discussed in this section.

In the introductory section of this thesis, three questions were asked in regard to the prehistory of the Roanoke Rapids Basin. These questions were:

1. What culture complexes had once existed in the area?
2. What was their relative and absolute chronology?
3. How do they fit into the overall picture of aboriginal cultural development in the area?

These questions have been answered in the foregoing

⁴¹Coe, personal communication.

⁴²Evans, op. cit., p. 112.

sections, however, one question in mind when the survey began was the secondary question of historic Algonquian-Siouan relationships in the Roanoke Rapids Basin.

In dealing with language families, it should be remembered, as Coe has pointed out, "there is no necessary relationship between the language a people spoke and the other elements of their culture."⁴³ For this reason, and since there is no historical information citing the type of language spoken by the occupants of the basin, the answer as to whether they were Algonquin, Siouan, or Iroquoian speaking people can not be answered. However, the cultural remains, as has been pointed out in this report, show a strong influence from the Siouan cultures to the west, during the late period, extending into historic times. These influences are in the form of ceramic and projectile point forms, which diffuse much faster than do traits of social organization and religion. Therefore, the people occupying the Roanoke Rapids Basin during historic times may have been Algonquian speaking people with Algonquian type social organization, worshiping Algonquian gods, and making pottery and using arrowheads typical of the Siouan speaking people in the Piedmont. They could have

⁴³Coe, "The Cultural Sequence of the Carolina Piedmont," op. cit., p. 301.

been the Iroquoian speaking Tuscarora with a Tuscarora society and religion, and making Gaston type pottery. They could have also been a Siouan speaking group making pottery similar to their cousins further up the river. The answer to this question will never be known with certainty. We can know what their culture was like from such an analysis as has been presented in this survey, and we now know that the culture of the people living in the Roanoke Rapids Basin during the latest period of Indian occupation, was influenced by, and was very similar to the culture of the Siouan speaking Indians living up the river to the west, near the present Clarksville, Virginia.

II. AN INFERENTIAL SUMMARY OF THE PREHISTORIC CULTURES IN THE ROANOKE RAPIDS BASIN

The archaeologist is an anthropologist who prefers to study culture through an analysis of the remains of prehistoric groups, and arrive at a picture of the culture of these groups from the clues they have left.

The surface survey, the excavation, the analysis and interpretation of the data through archaeological methods, are designed to reveal to the anthropologist the way of life of the people whose cultural remains he is studying.

Walter Taylor has appealed to the archaeologists to place more stress on the construction of the cultural

context of the people represented by the artifacts they are studying.⁴⁴ This appeal was needed, since many archaeological manuscripts were purely descriptive in nature, with no conclusions as to the cultural significance or relationships of the data presented. The method he suggests of taking the "Outline of Cultural Materials", and going through it step by step and comparing each category with the archaeological data, and inferring something of the social organization, religious practices, kinship system, and such, of the culture represented by his archaeological assemblage, seems to be a more detailed method of inference or speculation than most monographs can support.⁴⁵ Such a detailed inferential analysis of the data was not attempted here, as it is felt, along with Ford, that:

If traces of ancient political ideas, religious practices, or forms of social organization were preserved, and could be sampled and classified, then archaeologists certainly would take advantage of such material. Unfortunately, these are not available to us, and we are forced by circumstances to rely on more durable cultural equipment.⁴⁶

⁴⁴Walter Taylor, "A Study of Archaeology," Memoir No. 69, American Anthropological Association, (Menasha: 1948).

⁴⁵G. P. Murdock, et al., "Outline of Cultural Materials," Yale Anthropological Studies, Vol. II, (1945).

⁴⁶James A. Ford, "Measurements of Some Prehistoric Design Developments in the Southeastern States," Anthropological Papers, American Museum of Natural History, Vol. 44, Part 3, (New York: 1952).

Some speculative statements inferred from the data are made in the summary to follow. In this inferential summary, the early fluted complexes, the Guilford Complex, the Halifax Complex, and the Savannah River Complex, usually referred to as the Paleo-Indian and Archaic periods, will be called the Early Hunters.⁴⁷ The cultures represented by the Vincent-Clement-Gaston Complexes, which would traditionally be placed as belonging to the Middle and Late Woodland period, will be called the Late Hunters.⁴⁸ Although during the Gaston period agriculture was probably a major source of food, the evidence is small compared to the large amounts of animal bone associated with garbage pits containing Gaston cultural material. For this reason, the Gaston Complex was also included in this Late Hunter classification.

The description of the way of life of these hunters is a speculative summary based on evidence found during the present survey, and by extension and analogy with living groups whose economy results in the production of culture traits similar to those traits found in an archaeological context. By analogy with these groups, and a knowledge of

⁴⁷James A. Griffin, Archaeology of Eastern United States, op. cit., pp. 353-356.

⁴⁸Ibid., pp. 358-364.

the general evolutionary development of cultures, it is possible to convert archaeological complexes into a speculative picture of the culture that produced the artifacts found by the archaeologist. The following picture of the Early and Late Hunters who occupied the Roanoke Rapids Basin, is such a speculative reconstruction, based on inference.

The Early Hunters. Because of the limited distribution and scarcity of cultural remains on the sites of these Early Hunters, it is thought that they traveled in small family groups. They probably spent most of their time procuring food, which they hunted with spears thrown by hand, or perhaps by use of a spear thrower, or atlatl. However, no atlatl weights of stone were found in the present survey in an Early Hunter context. The animals they hunted are thought to have been large herding animals such as the bison and the elk, though no identifiable bone fragments were found at the Early Hunter levels in the present study. They supplemented this diet of meat by gathering nuts, roots, and perhaps a few wild plant foods, as evidenced by the presence of nuts in the oldest hearth found during the excavation of the Gaston site, and by the presence of shallow stone mortars in the Halifax Complex. They cooked their meat on hearths of stones, found in

quantity in the Halifax Complex. The presence of fire-cracked stones indicates that stone boiling may have been one means of cooking, since no pottery of any kind is associated with these Early Hunter Complexes. Some groups of Early Hunters preferred stemless projectile points, and others made spear points with stems or notches, to aid in fastening to the shaft. These stone points were chipped by pressure flaking or by percussion with another stone. Another weapon and tool was a chipped-notched ax with which they could kill an enemy, or cut down a tree. Along with whatever wooden tools and weapons they may have had, these spears and axes served as adequate tools for several thousand years.

Occasionally the river along which they were hunting and camping would rise in a flood, burying their hearths, axes and spears under layers of sand, while they fled to higher ground. After the flood subsided, later groups of hunters would choose the same site for camping at periodic times, until another flood, and the pattern was repeated.

These Early Hunters probably moved a lot in search of good hunting grounds where food was plentiful. The absence of any evidence for houses indicates that they probably had temporary shelters or lean-tos made of a few poles and covered with hides of animals.

This way of life was not conducive to the gathering of

large groups into towns and villages, perhaps because the methods of hunting were more successful when comparatively small groups stalked the animals. Too, a lot of territory was needed for hunting purposes by a small group, therefore, a large settlement could not be supported by a small territory around the village. For this reason, this way of life would continue for thousands of years, until a more efficient means of utilizing the energy resources in plants and animals was found. ⁴⁹

This pattern of life has been found represented in complexes in various parts of North and South America during these years of the Early Hunters. These Early Hunting people lived in the Roanoke Basin until about the time of Christ, and then around A. D. 500, some changes began to take place in the way of life in the basin. New means of utilizing the plant and animal energy resources were introduced. Several new ideas seem to have developed or been introduced together. These new sources of power were the bow and arrow, the knowledge of agriculture, and the knowledge of how to make clay pottery.⁵⁰ The remains of

⁴⁹For a discussion of the relationship between the growth of civilization and amount of energy harnessed per capita per year, see Leslie White, "Energy and the Development of Civilization," Serving Through Science, Radio Talk sponsored by United States Rubber Co. (New York: 1947).

⁵⁰Griffin, op. cit., pp. 358-361.

the cultures in which these new ideas were used have been described in this report as the Vincent, the Clement, and the Gaston Complexes.

Since little evidence for a transition between the Early Hunter cultures and these later cultures was found in the basin, it is thought that these new ideas were possibly brought into the area along with a new group of people. During the period of over a thousand years when these later ideas dominated the cultures in the basin, a number of changes took place, but basically these people were hunters just as the Early hunters had been, except they were able to kill a wider variety of animals for food with much less effort than had the Early Hunters. The way of life of these later hunters will be described as the Late Hunter culture period in the basin.

The Late Hunters. When the Late Hunters lived in the area around the Roanoke River, they were excellent potters. They made straight sided, pointed base, cord and fabric marked pottery to use for storing food, and for cooking. Although they may have grown some crops such as corn, beans and squash, it is doubtful that this activity was of any great importance. Hunting was the main means of getting food, and with the bow and arrow as their main weapon, they could hunt and kill much more game, and a

wider variety than the Early Hunters. They chipped small stemmed arrowheads along with a triangle type, from slate and white quartz. They also had the atlatl, and fastened a hemispherical hollowed stone on the shaft of the atlatl by means of a groove around the stone. This weapon was abandoned later for a complete reliance on the bow and arrow.

Animals hunted and used for food were the deer, elk, coon, turkey, turtle, fox, goose, beaver, woodchuck, muskrat, opossum, skunk, and fox squirrel. From the river mussels were taken, and fishhooks of bone were used to catch fish.

These people brought the dog with them when they came into the basin, and had such an attachment for them that they buried them in graves, especially during their later period of living in the basin.

These people still collected nuts and wild plants for food to supplement what little plants they were growing. They still ground these plants, and meat, by using grinding stones made of a rock picked up from the bank of the river.

They probably had clothing made of fibers of wild hemp and flax, and from bark of trees. They also, no doubt, used skin clothing as had the Early Hunters. They used bone needles to sew these fabrics, and bone awls to

pierce holes in leather.

To aid in working wood, and as a weapon they used a polished stone celt fastened into a hole in a wooden handle. Some of the later Early Hunters had made axes with a pecked groove extending around the stone, in order to seat the handle properly. This type was not used by these Late Hunters.

These people, because they had a surplus of food due to the increased food-getting power of the bow and arrow, lived in larger groups in villages. These villages contained several hundred people living in houses constructed of poles fastened in the ground and pulled together and tied at the top. These domes were then covered with skins and bark, and during the later period may have been plastered with mud daub.

They buried their dead by placing them on a scaffold and then at a later time, they would collect the bones and bury them in a common pit or ossuary. At a later period they began burying in round or oval pits in a flexed position.

These people were of the physical type that later developed into the historic Algonquian Indian groups. The earliest group had somewhat longer heads than their descendants a thousand years later.

The pottery style gradually changed from a pointed

base to a slightly rounded base with a slightly flaring rim. The paste was not so hard as the early pottery had been, and the pots probably broke more frequently. At a still later period, the style developed into a more elaborately decorated and incised pottery with flaring and folded rims. These new changes were evidently brought about as a result of contact with the piedmont groups further up the river to the west, where this type of pottery was also popular.

At the later period of the occupation of the site, there was an increase in the making of smoking pipes of clay. This indicates that tobacco was being raised in some quantity by this time, and corn was probably also being grown much more, and beginning to take an important place in the economy of the people.

During this last period of occupation of the basin, the arrowhead style changed from a medium sized isosceles triangle to a small equilateral triangle point that was also popular among the Siouan groups to the west at the same time. Some contact with the coastal groups was had on occasion by the people living in the basin, and the idea of tempering pottery with shell was experimented with, but the main influence on the pottery styles at this later period was from the piedmont Siouans.

European trade pipe fragments in the basin indicate

that the Late Hunting groups lived in the basin until contact was made with the European invaders.

During this last period the people in the basin began to feel afraid of attack from enemies, and built stockade walls around their villages to insure their safety. This was not enough to prevent the almost total annihilation of the Indian groups in the area by disease and bullets from the invading Europeans. Just what happened to this last group who lived in the basin is not known, but it is assumed that their fate was the same as the other Indian tribes in the Virginia-North Carolina area.

This concludes the archaeological probing into the culture history of the Indians who once lived in the Roanoke Rapids basin. It is thought that the presentation of this data, and the conclusions drawn from it have answered, to some extent at least, the questions asked before the study was begun. It is hoped that it can prove of value to students of culture, in comparative studies of the Indian cultures occupying the North Carolina-Virginia areas, during the past ten thousand years.

APPENDIXES

APPENDIX A

REPORT OF THE SKELETAL MATERIAL

The report of Marshall T. Newman, Associate Curator of Physical Anthropology at the Smithsonian Institution, Washington, D. C., on the Skeletal Material from the Gaston (Hx v7), and Thelma (Hx v8) Sites in the Roanoke Rapids Basin, Roanoke Rapids, North Carolina, June 17, 1957.

Skulls from the Thelma Site (Hx v8)

Burial 1 - Posterior calva and mandible lacking condyles:

sex - ?, possibly male; age - + - 30; maximum breadth 139; low occiput; type - probably Neumann's Lenapid.

Burial 2a- Restored calva and most of mandible;

sex - male; age - 40-50; glabello-occipital length - 192; maximum breadth 131 ? (warping and incompleteness); auricular height-115 ?; low pinched occiput; type - Neumann's Lenapid.

Burial 2b- Warped calva and right half of mandible;

sex - male; age - 20-25; minimal frontal diameter - 93; unmeasurable but patently long-headed; small parietal losses: flat temporals; type - Neumann's Lenapid.

Skull 3 from ossuary - Part of frontal and anterior parietals; sex - ?; age - 35+. No other data.

Burials from the Gaston Site (Hx v7)

Burial 1 - Complete restored calvarium (skull and mandible): sex - male; age - 40-45; glabello-occipital length - 178, maximum breadth - 139, ba-bregma height - 144, minimum frontal diameter - 92, total facial height - 120*, upper facial height - 70, bizygomatic diameter - 144, nasal height - 51, nasal breadth - 26; type - Neumann's Lenapid.
* 4 mm. added for tooth wear.

Burial 2 - Fragmentary incomplete calva and mandible: sex - female; age - 35-45 or more; maximum breadth - 139?, bigonial breadth - 75; low slightly pinched occiput; type - probably Neumann's Lenapid.

Burial 4 - Fragmentary incomplete calva and mandible; sex - female; age - adult (young?); glabello-occipital length +- 195 mm; low pinched occiput; type - probably Neumann's Lenapid.

Burial 6 - Very fragmentary and incomplete calva: sex - ?; age - 30 or more; type indisting-

uishable; pathology - small perforations in tabla interna of frontal and parietals, in one case penetrating completely through diploe and tabla externa.

Burial 9 - Very incomplete calva; sex - female?; age - 35 or more; minimum frontal diameter 90, vault appears rather broad; type - indistinguishable.

Comparison of Gaston and Thelma Skulls

There is no decided contrast between the two groups of skulls. If there were, the samples are so small it would be a matter of sheer conjecture whether the differences extended to the parent populations.

As near as I can tell, all skulls are Neumann's Lenapid (or Hrdlicka's Algonkin) variety. The only possible difference may be that the Gaston Site skulls are somewhat rounder, and the Thelma Site skulls somewhat longer-headed. This is the same situation, still within one variety, that pertained at the N. Alabama Archaic site of Lu⁰25. There the upper stratum skulls were rounder-headed than those of the lower stratum. The dividing line between strata was roughly pre-ceramic-early ceramic.

APPENDIX B

REPORT OF THE ANIMAL BONE

The report of Dr. F. S. Barkalow, head of the Zoology Department at North Carolina State College in Raleigh, North Carolina, on the mammal bone material from the Gaston and Thelma Sites in the Roanoke Rapids Basin at Roanoke Rapids, North Carolina.

Gaston Site (Hx v7)

Feature Number or Square and Level	Catalog Number	Name	Common Name
#2	619b693	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Castor canadensis</u>	Beaver
		<u>Procyon lotor</u>	Coon
		<u>Didelphis marsupialis</u>	Opossum
		<u>Marmota monax</u>	Woodchuck
		<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
			Fish Turtles
#8	619b728	<u>Ondatra zibethicus</u>	Muskrat
		<u>Sciurus niger</u>	Fox Squirrel
			Gar scales Catfish Fish bones
#9	619b739	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog
			Bird Fish Turtle
#14	619b751	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer Turtle

#19	619a768	<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
	619b769	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Procyon lotor</u>	Coon
		<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog
		<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
#20	619b777	<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog
		<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Ondatra Zibethicus</u>	Muskrat
		<u>Castor canadensis</u>	Beaver
		<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
		<u>Procyon lotor</u>	Coon Turtle
#26	619b795	<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
		<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Procyon lotor</u>	Coon
		<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog Turtle Bird
#27	619b803	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer Turtle
#28	619b809	<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
		<u>Didelphis marsupialis</u>	Opossum
		<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Canis familiaris ?</u>	Dog Turtle Bird
#29	619b819	<u>Spilogale putorius</u>	Spotted skunk
		<u>Ondatra zibethicus</u>	Muskrat
		<u>Didelphis marsupialis</u>	Opossum
#36	619b839	<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey Vertebra
#38	619a847	<u>Branta (?)</u>	Goose wing
	619b851	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Ondatra zibethicus</u>	Muskrat Turtle Bird
#40	619b857	<u>Canis familiaris</u> <u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Dog Deer Turtle

#43	619b865	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Didelphis marsupialis</u>	Opossum
		<u>Castor canadensis</u>	Beaver
		<u>Spilogale putorius</u>	Spotted skunk
		<u>Procyon lotor</u>	Coon
		<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
		<u>Ondatra zibethicus</u>	Muskrat
		Bird	
		Turtle	
#45	619b874	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
			Fish
#47	619b883	<u>Sciurus niger</u>	Fox squirrel
		<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
		<u>Branta sp.</u>	Goose
		<u>Castor canadensis</u>	Beaver
		<u>Procyon lotor</u>	Coone
		<u>Ondatra zibethicus</u>	Muskrat
			Turtle
	Fish		
		Large deer or Elk	
#48	619a891	<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
	619a892		
	619b894	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Didelphis marsupialis</u>	Opussum
		<u>Urocyon cinereoargenteus</u>	Gray fox
		<u>Ondatra zibethica</u>	Muskrat
		<u>Procyon lotor</u>	Coon
		<u>Spilogale putorius</u>	Spotted skunk
		<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
			Turtle
		Bird	
#53	619b915	<u>Procyon lotor</u>	Coon
		<u>Ondatra zibethicus</u>	Muskrat
#54	619b921	<u>Ondatra zibethicus</u>	Muskrat
#55	619b924	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog
			Bird

#57	619b933	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u> <u>Castor canadensis</u>	Deer Beaver tooth Turtle
#59	619a939 619b940	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u> <u>Canis familiaris</u>	Deer Dog
#60	619b949	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u> <u>Castor canadensis</u> <u>Ondatra zibethicus</u> <u>Mephitis mephitis</u> <u>Lutra canadensis</u>	Deer Beaver Muskrat Striped skunk Otter Turtle Mussel shells
#62	619b959	<u>Odocoileus</u> or <u>Cervus</u>	Large deer or Elk
#67	619b990	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u> <u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Deer Turkey Turtle
#77	619b1028	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
#83	619b1037	<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog
#93	619b1066	<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog
#94	619b1067	<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog
#95	619b1076	<u>Procyon lotor</u> <u>Odocoileus virginianus</u> <u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Coon Deer Turkey Turtle Fish Bird
#99	619b1089	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
#102	619b1103	<u>Canis familiaris</u> <u>Procyon lotor</u> <u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Dog Coon Deer Turtle Fish
#105	619b1123	<u>Cervus americanus</u> <u>Odocoileus virginianus</u> <u>Procyon lotor</u>	Elk Deer Coon

		<u>Spilogale putorius</u>	Spotted skunk
		<u>Castor canadensis</u>	Beaver
		<u>Didelphis marsupialis</u>	Opossum
		<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
		<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog
		<u>Scalops aquaticus</u>	Mole
			Fish
#124	619b1205	<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
		<u>Sciurus carolinensis</u>	Gray squirrel
		<u>Sylvilagus sp.</u>	Rabbit
#125	619b1212	<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
#134	619b1232	<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog
#148	619b1282	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Ondatra zibethicus</u>	Muskrat
		<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
		<u>Procyon lotor</u>	Coon
			Turtle
			Bird
			Fish
#150	619b1287	<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog
#151	619b1287	<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog
		<u>Homo sapiens</u>	Human infant
#156	619b1305	<u>Procyon lotor</u>	Coon
		<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog
		<u>Sciurus carolinensis</u>	Gray squirrel
			Turtle
			Fish
			Bird
#157	619b1311	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer toe
#158	619b1316	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
			Bird
			Turtle
#161	619b1334	<u>Odocoileus</u> or <u>Cervus</u>	Deer or Elk
#180	619b1382	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Sciurus carolinensis</u>	Gray squirrel
		<u>Procyon lotor</u>	Coon
		<u>Canis familiaris</u>	Dog
		<u>Sylvilagus floridanus</u>	
		or <u>transitionalis</u>	Rabbit

		<u>Didelphis marsupialis</u>	Opossum
		<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
			Bird
			Fish
			Turtle
#181	619b1390	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
			Bird
			Turtle
#184	619b1399	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Mephitis mephitis</u>	Striped skunk
		<u>Castor canadensis</u>	Beaver
		<u>Marmota monax</u>	Woodchuck
		<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
			Fish
			Turtle
#190	619b1422	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Procyon lotor</u>	Coon
			Turtle
			Fish
			Bird
#195	619a1438 619a1439	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
	619b1440	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Sylvilagus sp.</u>	Rabbit
		<u>Sciurus carolinensis</u>	Gray squirrel
		<u>Ondatra zibethica</u>	Muskrat
		<u>Meleagris gallopavo</u>	Turkey
		<u>Terrapene carolinensis</u>	Box terrapin
			Turtle
			Fish
			Bird
#198	619b1453	<u>Castor canadensis</u>	Beaver
		<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Procyon lotor</u>	Coon
	619b1457		Catfish spine
			Snails
			Mussels
#199	619b1463	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
		<u>Ondatra zibethicus</u>	Muskrat
			Turtle
			Bird

#200	619b1473	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u> <u>Didelphis marsupialis</u> <u>Procyon lotor</u>	Deer Opossum Coon Turtle Bird
Sq. 55L25 20"-32"	619b448	<u>Ondatra zibethicus</u> <u>Odocoileus virginianus</u> <u>Canis familiaris</u>	Muskrat Deer Dog
Thelma Site (Hx v8)			
Square and Level	Catalog Number	Name	Common Name
Sq. 65	620b108	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u> <u>Ondatra zibethicus</u> <u>Procyon lotor</u>	Deer Muskrat Coon Turtle Bird
Sq. 70R5 6"-12"	620b131	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u> <u>Urocyon cinereoargenteus</u> <u>Didelphis marsupialis</u> <u>Ondatra zibethicus</u> <u>Procyon lotor</u>	Deer Gray fox Opossum Muskrat Coon Turtle Unknown vertebra
Sq. 0 6"-12"	620b31	<u>Ondatra zibethicus</u> <u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Muskrat Deer Bird Turtle
Sq. 60 6"-12"	620b92	<u>Ondatra zibethicus</u> <u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Muskrat Deer Fish Turtle
Sq. 25 12"-18"	620a53 620b55	<u>Sciurus carolinensis</u> <u>Sylvilagus sp.</u> <u>Scalops aquaticus</u> <u>Odocoileus virginianus</u> <u>Marmota monax</u> <u>Ondatra zibethicus</u>	Worked fish(?) spine Gray squirrel Rabbit Mole Deer Woodchuck Muskrat

			Fish Turtle Bird
	620m56		Marine shell
Sq. 60R30 Pit	620b97	<u>Procyon lotor</u> <u>Ondatra zibethicus</u> <u>Cervus canadensis</u>	Coon Muskrat Elk

Site Np v2

Square and Level	Catalog Number	Name	Common Name
Sq. 3 0"-7"	623b24	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer Turtle
Sq. 2 0"-14"	623b20	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u> <u>Ondatra zibethicus</u> <u>Castor canadensis</u>	Deer Muskrat Beaver Turtle Fish
Sq. 3 fea.#2	623b33	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer
Sq. 3 fea.#3	623b36	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u> <u>Ondatra zibethicus</u> <u>Urocyon cinereocargenteus</u>	Deer Muskrat Gray fox Turtle shell

Site Np v24

Sq. 2 0"-8"	646b15	<u>Odocoileus virginianus</u>	Deer Woodchuck?
-------------	--------	-------------------------------	--------------------

BIBLIOGRAPHY

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Alvord, Clarence W., and Lee Bidgood. "The Discovery of New Britaine," The First Exploration of the Trans-Allegheny Region By the Virginians. Cleveland: Arthur H. Clark Co., 1912.
- Blaker, Margaret C. "Roanoke Simple Stamped," American Antiquity, XVII, No. 3. 1952.
- Byers, Douglas. "Paleo-Indian in New England," southern Indian Studies, V. Chapel Hill: 1954.
- Caldwell, Joseph R. "The Archaeology of Eastern Georgia and South Carolina," Archaeology of the Eastern United States. Edited by James B. Griffin. Chicago: 1952.
- Claflin, William H., Jr. "The Stalling's Island Mound, Columbia County, Georgia." Papers of the Peabody Museum of American Archaeology and Ethnology, XIV, No.1. Cambridge: 1931.
- Coe, Joffre L. "The Cultural Sequence of the Carolina Piedmont," Archaeology of the Eastern United States. Edited by James B. Griffin. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1952.
- _____. "Time and the Indian Relic," News Letter. Archaeological Society of North Carolina, No. 30. Chapel Hill, 1955.
- _____ and Ernest Lewis. "Certain Eastern Siouan Pottery Types," Prehistoric Pottery of the Eastern United States. Edited by James B. Griffin. Ann Arbor: Museum of Anthropology, University of Michigan.
- Colton, Harold Sellers, and Lyndon Lane Gargrave. Handbook of Northern Arizona Pottery Wares, Bulletin 11. Flagstaff: Museum of Northern Arizona.
- Evans, Clifford. "A Ceramic Study of Virginia Archaeology," Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 160. Washington: Printing Office, 1955.
- Fairbanks, Charles H. "The Taxonomic Position of Stalling's Island, Georgia," American Antiquity, VII, No. 3. 1942.

- Fairbanks, Charles H. "The Taxonomic Position of Stallings Island, Georgia," American Antiquity, XI, No. 4. Menasha: 1942.
- Ford, James A. "Measurements of Some Prehistoric Design Developments in the Southeastern States," Anthropological Papers, XLIV. American Museum of Natural History, 1952.
- Griffin, James B. "Culture Periods in Eastern United States Archaeology," Archaeology of the Eastern United States. Edited by James B. Griffin. Chicago: 1952.
- _____. "Radiocarbon Dates for the Eastern United States," Archaeology of the Eastern United States. Edited by James B. Griffin. Chicago: 1952.
- Griffin, John W. "Prehistoric Florida: A Review," Archaeology of the Eastern United States. Edited by James B. Griffin. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press, 1952.
- Harrington, J. C. "Dating Stem Fragments of Seventeenth and Eighteenth Century Clay Tobacco Pipes," Quarterly Bulletin, Vol. 9, No. 1. Archaeological Society of Virginia. 1954.
- Heizer, Robert F. "Long-Range Dating in Archaeology," Anthropology Today. Edited by A. L. Kroeber. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press, 1955.
- Holland, C. G. "An Analysis of Projectile Points and Large Blades," Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 160. Washington: 1955.
- Krieger, Alex. "The Typological Concept," American Antiquity, IX. 1944.
- Lewis, Ernest. "The Sara Indians, 1540-1768, An Ethno-Archaeological Study." Unpublished Master's thesis, Sociology Library, University of North Carolina, 1951.
- Lewis, T. M. N. "A Suggested Basis for Paleo-Indian Chronology in Tennessee and the Eastern United States," Southern Indian Studies, V. Chapel Hill: 1954.
- McCary, Ben C. "A Paleo-Indian Workshop Site in Dinwiddie, Virginia," Southern Indian Studies, V. Chapel Hill: 1954.
- Murdock, G. P., et al. "Outline of Cultural Materials," Yale Anthropological Studies, II. 1945.

- Paschal, Herbert R., Jr. "The Tuscarora Indians in North Carolina." Unpublished Master's thesis, Sociology Library, University of North Carolina. Chapel Hill.
- Phillips, Phillip, and James A. Ford. "Archaeological Survey in the Lower Mississippi Alluvial Valley, 1940-1947," Papers of the Peabody Museum of Archaeology and Ethnology, XXV. Cambridge: 1951.
- Schmitt, Karl. "Archaeological Chronology of the Middle Atlantic States," Archaeology of the Eastern United States. Chicago: 1952.
- Sears, William H. "Ceramic Development in the South Appalachian Province," American Antiquity, XVIII, No.2. 1952.
- _____ and James B. Griffin. "Fiber-Tempered Pottery of the Southeast," Prehistoric Pottery of the Eastern United States. Museum of Anthropology, University of Michigan. Ann Arbor: 1950.
- Setzler, Frank M., and Jesse D. Jennings. "Peachtree Mound and Village Site, Cherokee County, North Carolina," Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 131. Washington: 1941.
- Shepherd, Anna O. Ceramics for the Archaeologist. Carnegie Institution of Washington, Publications, No. 609. Washington, 1956.
- South, Stanley A. "Evolutionary Theory in Archaeology," Southern Indian Studies, VII. 1957.
- Stephenson, Robert L. "Accokeek: A Middle Atlantic Seaboard Culture Sequence." Unpublished Doctorial thesis, Research Laboratory of Anthropology, University of North Carolina. Chapel Hill.
- Taylor, Walter. "A Study of Archaeology," Memoir No. 69. American Anthropological Association. Menash: 1948.
- Wauchope, Robert. "The Ceramic Sequence in the Etowah Drainage, Northwest Georgia," American Antiquity, XIII, 1948.
- _____. "The Evolution and Persistence of Ceramic Motifs in Northern Georgia," American Antiquity, XVI, No.1. 1950.

Webb, William S. "Indian Knoll, Site Oh 2, Ohio County, Kentucky," The University of Kentucky Reports in Anthropology and Archaeology, IV, No. 3, Pt. 1. Lexington: 1946.

White, Leslie A. "Diffusion vs. Evolution: An Anti-Evolutionist Fallacy," American Anthropologist, XLVII. 1945.

_____. "Energy and the Development of Civilization," Serving Through Science. Radio Talk Sponsored by United States Rubber Company. New York: 1947.

_____. "The Individual and the Culture Process," Centennial. American Association for the Advancement of Science, 1948.